

# English Vocabulary in Use

pre-intermediate  
& intermediate

**Stuart Redman**

*100 units of vocabulary reference and practice*

*self-study and classroom use*

---

CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# **English Vocabulary in Use**

**pre-intermediate and intermediate**

***Stuart Redman***

 **CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS



PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE  
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge CB2 1RP, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS  
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, United Kingdom  
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA  
10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia

© Cambridge University Press 1997

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1997  
Third printing 1997

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN 0 521 55737 2

# Contents

Introduction	4
--------------	---

## Learning

- 1 Learning and revising with this book
- 2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook
- 3 Using a dictionary
- 4 English language words
- 5 Problems with pronunciation
- 6 Classroom language

## Examples

uncountable noun, prefix, main stress  
rough, through, island, necessary  
board pen, swap places, rub sth. out

## Word formation

- 7 Prefixes
- 8 Noun suffixes
- 9 Adjective suffixes
- 10 Zero affixation
- 11 Compound nouns
- 12 Compound adjectives

un-, in-, dis-, im-, re-  
-tion, -ity, -ness, -ment  
-ive, -y, -able, -ful, -less  
to stay / a stay; a look / to look  
alarm clock; credit card; baby-sitter  
easy-going, good-looking, well-paid

## Phrase building

- 13 Collocation (word partners)
- 14 Verb or adjective + preposition
- 15 Preposition + noun
- 16 Phrasal verbs: form and meaning
- 17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style
- 18 Idioms and fixed expressions
- 19 Make, do, have, take
- 20 Give, keep, break, catch, see
- 21 Get: uses and expressions
- 22 Go: uses and expressions
- 23 Apologies, excuses and thanks
- 24 Requests, invitations and suggestions
- 25 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing
- 26 Specific situations and special occasions

a strong accent, miss the bus  
listen (to), keen (on), good (at)  
on holiday, by mistake, on TV  
lie down, get over sth., take off  
put on, get by, make sth. up  
never mind, take a short cut, What's up?  
make progress, do homework, have a rest  
keep a record, break the law, catch a bus  
get a job, get married, get up  
go deaf, go for a drink, have a go  
sorry I'm late, I got held up, thanks a lot  
could you ...?, I'd love to, how about ...?  
what do you think of ...? personally, according to  
hi, good luck, nice to meet you, happy birthday

## Parts of speech (special problems)

- 27 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns
- 28 Verbs + -ing form or infinitive
- 29 Verb patterns
- 30 Adjectives
- 31 Prepositions: place
- 32 Adverbs: frequency and degree

information (U), trousers (pl)  
enjoy, can't stand, refuse  
verb + object, verb + 'that' clause  
big vs. huge, boring vs. bored  
on the table, next to the church  
hardly ever, quite, almost

## Connecting and linking

- 33 Time and sequence
- 34 Addition and contrast
- 35 Similarities, differences and conditions
- 36 Reason, purpose and result

when, while, after, first of all, finally  
in addition, although, in spite of  
similar to, compared with/to, unless  
as, so, because (of), as a result

## Topics

### *The world around us*

- 37 The physical world
- 38 Weather
- 39 Using the land
- 40 Animals and insects
- 41 Countries, nationalities and language

oceans, mountains, deserts, hurricane  
showers, cloudy, fog, pour with rain  
plants, agriculture, mining, gold  
lion, wild, spider, rabbit  
Sweden, Swiss, Arabic

### *People*

- 42 The body and what it does
- 43 Describing people's appearance
- 44 Describing character
- 45 Human feelings and actions
- 46 Family and friends
- 47 Ages and stages

bend your knees, bite your nails  
tall and blond with broad shoulders  
shy, friendly, unpleasant  
pride, jealous (of), stare, whisper  
niece, relatives, surname, best friend  
teenager, grow up, adult, pregnant

### *Daily life*

- 48 Daily routines
- 49 Homes and buildings
- 50 Around the home 1
- 51 Around the home 2
- 52 Everyday problems
- 53 Money
- 54 Health: illness and disease
- 55 Health: injuries
- 56 Clothes
- 57 Shops and shopping
- 58 Food
- 59 Cooking and restaurants
- 60 Town and country
- 61 On the road
- 62 Transport

get up, leave home, go to sleep  
flat, on the ground floor, roof  
lounge, on the sofa, food mixer  
washbasin, tidy, Hoover, polish  
it's not working, drop, break  
coins, borrow, I can't afford it  
flu, sore throat, sneezing  
twist my ankle, bleeding, bruise  
shirt, trousers, take off, get dressed  
chemist, shop assistant, I'm being served  
carrot, peach, lamb  
fry, salty, main course, book a table  
suburbs, noisy, fields  
turn left, traffic lights, accident  
coach, bus stop, platform, get off

### *Work*

- 63 Work: duties, conditions and pay
- 64 Jobs
- 65 The career ladder
- 66 In the office and in the factory
- 67 Business and finance
- 68 Sales and marketing

What do you do?, salary, do overtime  
dentist, lawyer, plumber  
be promoted, resign, unemployed  
show sb. around, assembly line, goods  
turnover, make a profit, rise and fall  
market share, competitors, image

### *Leisure and entertainment*

- 69 Hobbies
- 70 Sport 1: games, people and places
- 71 Sport 2: winning, losing and scoring
- 72 Cinema and theatre
- 73 Music, art and literature

photography, play cards, spare time  
tennis court, racket, goal, referee  
win, draw, latest score, half-time  
audience, actor, a thriller  
orchestra, composer, painting, novelist



### *Communication and technology*

- 74 Newspapers
- 75 Television
- 76 On the phone
- 77 Computers

journalist, headline, article  
programme, turn on, soap opera  
engaged, operator, Is that ...?  
screen, software, save, data

### *Social concerns*

- 78 Education: school
- 79 Education: university
- 80 Law and order
- 81 Crime
- 82 Politics
- 83 Bureaucracy
- 84 War and peace
- 85 Pollution and the environment

primary school, subject, term  
do a degree, do research, lecture  
court, trial, arrest, guilty  
murder, commit a crime, steal  
political party, democracy, elect  
fill in a form, driving licence, signature  
peace talks, attack, terrorism, invade  
protect, destroy, recycle, waste

### *Tourism*

- 86 Air travel
- 87 Hotels
- 88 A sightseeing holiday
- 89 On the beach and in the country

flight, take off, passport control  
bill, single room, book, in advance  
guidebook, castle, souvenir, take photos  
sand, sunbathe, hiking, picnic

## **Notional concepts**

- 90 Time
- 91 Numbers
- 92 Distance and dimension
- 93 Shapes, colours and patterns
- 94 Partitives
- 95 The senses

for ages, at, on, during, last, recently  
two and a half, divide, nought point six  
is it far? a long way, deep, width  
round, square, pattern, grey, greenish  
piece of cake, group of people  
smells fresh, tastes like ..., see vs. watch

## **Varieties of English**

- 96 Notices and warnings
- 97 Vague language
- 98 American English
- 99 Formal and informal English
- 100 Abbreviations and abbreviated words

mind your head, beware of pickpockets  
sort of ..., things, stuff  
sidewalk, vacation, elevator  
purchase/buy, children/kids  
MP, UN, VAT, phone, bike, fridge

Answer key	206
Phonetic symbols	246
Pronunciation problems	247
Index	248
Acknowledgements	266

# Introduction

## Who is this book for?

*English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate and intermediate)* has been written to help learners at this level to improve their English. It has been designed for students who are studying on their own, but it can also be used by a teacher in the classroom with groups of students.

## How is the book organised?

The book has 100 two-page units. The left-hand page explains new words and expressions (most units contain approximately 25 new words or phrases), and the right-hand page gives you a chance to check your understanding through a series of exercises which practise the new vocabulary. In a very limited number of units e.g. Units 18 and 71, the right-hand page also includes a few new words and phrases which are not explained on the left-hand page.

There is an answer key at the back of the book. This not only gives *correct* answers to exercises with 'right' or 'wrong' solutions, but also *possible answers* and *sample answers* for exercises which do not have 'right' or 'wrong' solutions.

There is also an index at the back of the book. This lists all the new words and phrases introduced in the book and refers you to the unit or units where these words appear. The index also includes a phonemic transcription for many of the words, and on page 247 you are given special help with the pronunciation of approximately 200 words which present particular problems for many learners of English.

## The left-hand page

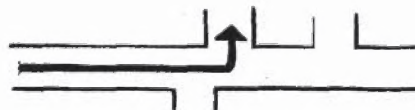
This is the page that introduces the new vocabulary for each topic or area of language. First of all, the vocabulary is divided into a number of sections (A, B, C, etc.) with simple clear titles; and then within each section, new words are explained using a number of different techniques:

- A short definition. The definition follows directly after the word, or comes at the end of the phrase or sentence; it is in brackets and introduced by the symbol =.  
e.g. **unemployed** (= without a job); **feel like** (= want or desire *informal*)  
The abbreviations *fml* or *informal* tell you if a word is either 'formal' or 'informal'.
- A short explanation. This will be a complete sentence which often includes the new word, e.g. **effective**. (If something is **effective**, it works well and produces good results.)
- A synonym or opposite, e.g. **terrific** (= fantastic); **dirty** (≠ clean)
- In a situation. Some words are difficult to define and it is easier to see their meaning when they are put in context. The following is from a text about a motoring accident.  
e.g. 'The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was **badly injured**, and both cars were **badly damaged**.'
- A picture or diagram. This seems the obvious way to explain a large number of concrete nouns and verbs.

e.g.



carrot



go along here and **turn left**.



For many of the new words there are also sentence examples which show the words in context in order to consolidate their meaning and illustrate any special syntactic features.

My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.

The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.

He **admitted** stealing the woman's money. (admit + -ing)

We were very busy but we **managed** to finish by 6 o'clock. (manage + inf.)

Finally, a big effort has been made to introduce new words alongside other words that often appear with them (this is called 'collocation').

e.g. miss the bus; a strong accent; the car broke down; it's vitally important; fasten your seat belt; go on holiday; give someone a hand; to a certain extent, a terrible pain, etc.

## The right-hand page

This page contains the exercises to practise the new vocabulary presented on the left-hand page. In general the first exercise practises the form of some of the new words, and then there are further exercises which focus on the meaning. In most units there is at least one exercise which gives learners a chance to think about and practise new vocabulary in relation to their own lives, and/or a task which invites learners to do something with the vocabulary outside of the book (e.g. 11.4, 14.4, etc.). And in every unit, there is a range of exercise types to help maintain your interest.

## Using the book

The first five units (or first six units if you go to an English class) teach you some important vocabulary, but they also help you with useful ideas and techniques for vocabulary learning. Do these units first, and then work through the book studying the units which interest you.

### Summary of abbreviations and symbols used in the book

*n* noun  
*v* verb  
*adj* adjective

*infml* informal word or expression  
*fml* formal word or expression

*pl* word only used in the plural

(U) uncountable word  
(C) countable word

≠ opposite

AmEng American English word or expression

[NOT ~~lost the bus~~] indicates that a word or expression is wrong



# Learning and revising with this book

Look at Exercise 1 on the next page before you read this page.

## A Establish a routine

A **routine** means doing certain things regularly in the same way. And if you are using this book for **self-study** (= to study alone), it helps to have a routine. Decide how much time you can spend on the book each day or each week. If you are studying a unit for the first time, try to give yourself at least (= a minimum of) half an hour or forty-five minutes; if you are **revising** (= looking through a unit a second or third time), five or ten minutes each time is very useful. So, plan longer periods for new units, and shorter periods for revision.

## B Working through the book

Do different things to **maintain your interest**. (= keep your interest high). For example:

- Don't work through the units **in sequence** (= in the order they appear in the book): look through the units and choose ones that interest you.
- When you do a unit, you can:
  - read the whole of the left-hand page, then do the exercises.
  - read part of the left-hand page, then do one or two exercises.
  - try the exercises first, then use the left-hand page when you have a problem.
- Be **active** when you are learning. For example:
  - While you are reading the left-hand page, use a **highlighter** pen to mark new or interesting vocabulary.
  - Practise saying the words **silently** in your head (= without a noise), and also **out loud** (= making a noise, so it is possible for others to hear), to see if you can pronounce them.
  - Put new words in your own notebook using some of the ideas from Unit 2 to do it **effectively**. (If something is effective, it works well and produces good results.)

## C Revision

It is common to learn a word one day, then find you cannot remember it a day later. If you revise regularly (just for short periods), it helps you to remember words and make them part of your 'active' vocabulary. Here are some ideas for revising with this book.

- Do exercises in pencil. Check your answers when you have finished, then **rub them out** (= remove them using a rubber/eraser). Later, come back and do the exercises again, and just use the left-hand page if you cannot remember something.
- When you read a left-hand page for a second time, have a piece of card with you. When you reach a new word in **bold** which has a definition/explanation after it in **brackets** ( ), cover the definition quickly and try to say what it is. Then uncover it to see if you were right.
- Revise for short periods but do it often. Five minutes a day is probably better than half an hour a week; but half an hour a week is probably better than two hours a month.
- As with learning, be **active** when you revise. Look for different ways to revise: test yourself, create games for yourself; **set goals/targets** (= decide on things you want to be able to do by a particular time); decide when to work on something, e.g. meaning on Sunday, pronunciation on Monday, etc.

## Exercises

### 1.1 Think about these questions. On the opposite page you will find some answers. Do you agree with them?

- 1 Is it better to plan regular self-study, or is it better just to study when you think you've got some free time?
- 2 Do you think you should work through the units in the same order as they appear in the book?
- 3 Do you think it's a good idea to write down new words in a notebook while you are studying a unit?
- 4 Is it necessary to revise vocabulary?
- 5 Is it better to revise vocabulary occasionally for long periods of time, or is it better to revise regularly for short periods of time?

### 1.2 Finding your way round the book.

Turn to the Topic units in the Contents on pages 1–3. Take a blank piece of paper and cover the right-hand side of the page giving the examples. Now read down the list of unit titles. For each one, try to write down your own examples – one or two for each unit. Are there any unit titles you don't understand? Are there any units where you can't think of examples? If so, turn to that unit and find out what it is about.

You could use similar titles in your own vocabulary notebook. (See Unit 2)

### 1.3 True or False? If the sentence is *false*, rewrite it to make it *true*. Write your answers in pencil.

- 1 In this book, new words are often shown in **bold** print.
- 2 Definitions/explanations of new words are often in **brackets** after the word.
- 3 A **routine** means doing certain things in a different way each time.
- 4 If you **maintain** something at a level, it means you keep it at the same level.
- 5 If something, e.g. a way of learning, is **effective**, it doesn't work very well.
- 6 **At least** 50 people means a maximum of 50 people.
- 7 If you write something then **rub it out**, you remove it from the page.
- 8 If you do something **silently**, you do it without making a noise.
- 9 **Revision** means studying something for the first time.
- 10 If you have a **goal** or **target**, you have something you want to be able to do or achieve by a particular point in the future.

Now check your answers on the opposite page and look at any wrong answers carefully. Then rub out your answers and come back to this exercise again tomorrow or within the next two or three days. Find out how much you can remember.

### 1.4 Planning your self-study.

Now start making your own plans to use this book. Decide how much time you can spend each week, plan some longer periods to study units for the first time, but also some shorter periods for revision. The first five units will teach you some important vocabulary; give you ideas on keeping a notebook; and give you help with pronunciation. After that, continue with the units that interest you most.

Good luck.




## 2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook

### A Organising your notebook

Give each page or double page a title, e.g. sport, education, phrasal verbs, etc. Then, as you learn new words, record each one on a suitable page. You could also have a general index in the back of your book, with a space for each letter. Then, as you learn new words, you enter them alphabetically with the title of the topic in brackets.

### B What do I need to record?

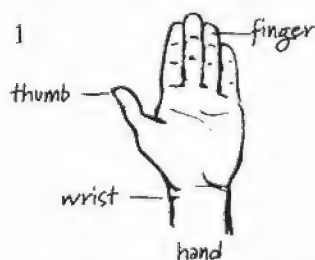
These things are important but you won't need to record all of them for every word.

What?	How?	Example
Meaning	a translation	<b>lembrar</b> = to remember (Portuguese)
	b definition/explanation	A <b>pond</b> is an area of water smaller than a lake.
	c synonym or opposite	<b>awful</b> (= terrible); <b>ugly</b> (≠ beautiful)
	d picture	<b>saucepan</b> 
Pronunciation	e example sentences phonetic symbols or your own system	My hands were cold so I <b>put</b> on my gloves. <b>ache</b> /eɪk/ ache (like 'make')
Part of speech	(n), (v), (adj), etc.	gloves (n); remember (v); careful (adj), ache (n, v)
Grammar	make a note + example sentence	<b>enjoy</b> + -ing form; I enjoy going to parties. <b>weather</b> (U); We had lovely <b>weather</b> in Italy.
Common partners	phrase or sentence	<b>make a mistake</b> ; <b>make a decision</b> ; <b>make a mess</b>
Special style	make a note	<b>purchase</b> ( <i>fml</i> ); <b>kids</b> ( <i>infml</i> )

*Note:* You won't learn everything about a word when you first record it, so always leave space in your notebook, then you can come back and add more information later.

### C Organising words on the page

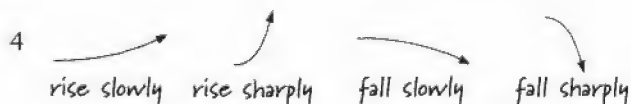
Certain words often appear together (common partners), so it is a good idea to record them together, and not just write lists of words on their own. You can do this in different ways:



don't pronounce the 'w' in wrist or the 'b' in thumb



3 smile (v, n)  
e.g. She smiled at me yesterday.  
He gave me a big smile.  
She's got a lovely smile.



Note both verbs are irregular: rise/rose/risen; fall/fell/fallen



## Exercises

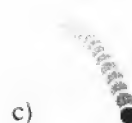
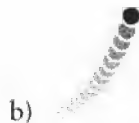
- 2.1** Organise this list of words into three groups and give each one a title.

tie      put on      fare      blouse      homeless      train      get on  
 painful      scarf      jumper      jacket      journey      careful      station  
 helpful      jeans      platform      thoughtless      ticket      useless

Find the units in this book which may include these words and add more examples.

- 2.2** Underline the correct answer or answers.

- 1 A pond is:  
 a) bigger than a lake      b) smaller than a lake      c) the same size
- 2 I really enjoy:  
 a) play tennis      b) to play tennis      c) playing tennis
- 3 When we were on holiday we had:  
 a) lovely weathers      b) lovely weather      c) a lovely weather
- 4 The underlined letters in ache are pronounced the same as in:  
 a) machine      b) catch      c) chemist
- 5 She gave me a ..... smile.  
 a) strong      b) big      c) large
- 6 The past tense of fall is:  
 a) fell      b) felt      c) falled
- 7 You can put on:  
 a) gloves      b) a decision      c) shoes
- 8 Rise sharply means:



- 2.3** Look again at the list a–e in B. Which would be the best way(s) to record the meaning of each word in the list below? What other information would be useful to record with this word (e.g. pronunciation, part of speech, grammar, common partners, etc.)? Use a dictionary to help you.

dream      concentrate      beard      nearly  
 empty      forget      rescue      knife

- 2.4** Fill the gaps with common partners for these verbs, then start a page in your own notebook for more examples. Turn to Unit 19 to help you.

take	a picture	make	a mistake
	.....		.....
	.....		.....
do	your homework	have	a rest
	.....		.....
	.....		.....

### 3 Using a dictionary

#### A What dictionaries do I need?

If possible, you should buy two dictionaries: a good bilingual dictionary and a good English–English dictionary. The bilingual dictionary is quicker and easier for you to understand; the English–English dictionary may give you more information about a word or phrase, and it is also a good idea for you to work in English as much as possible. Here are some current recommended English–English dictionaries:

##### Large dictionaries

Cambridge International Dictionary of English  
Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English  
Collins COBUILD English Dictionary  
Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary

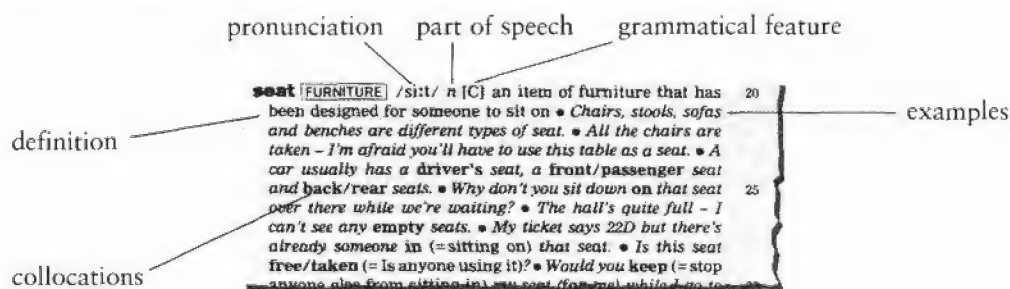
##### Medium-sized dictionaries

Collins COBUILD Essential Dictionary  
Oxford Wordpower Dictionary  
Longman Active Study Dictionary

#### B What information does a dictionary give me?

- the meaning, e.g. **homesick** = unhappy when you are away from home for a long time
- the pronunciation, e.g. **chaos** /keɪs/, **dreadful** /dredfʊl/, **island** /aɪlənd/
- the part of speech, e.g. **dirty** *adj* (= adjective), **lose** *v* (= verb), **law** *n* (= noun)
- any special grammatical features, e.g. **advice** (U) (= uncountable)
- common collocations (word partners), e.g. you **do** homework [NOT ~~you make homework~~]
- example phrases or sentences, e.g. It was such a big menu, I didn't know what to **choose**.
- opposites (where they exist), e.g. **polite** (≠ **impolite/rude**)

*Note:* In most English–English dictionaries for foreign learners, collocations are usually shown in **bold** or *italics*, or they are included in the examples given after the definition.



#### C How should I use my dictionary?

Here are some ideas to help you.

- When you look up a word, put a ✓ next to it. Each time you return to a page with a ✓ look at it quickly to check that you remember the word.
- If you see an English word in a text, first try to guess the meaning, and carry on reading to see if your guess seems correct. Use your dictionary to check the meaning.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get several different words in your own language, look up the word in your monolingual dictionary. This should help you to decide which word in your own language is the nearest translation in this context.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning, and the first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. Read through the different meanings.

## Exercises

If you find these exercises difficult, it may mean that you need to practise using a dictionary more often, or you need to buy yourself a better dictionary.

### 3.1 Use a dictionary to find/check the answers to these questions. (They are all based on words from the opposite page.)

- 1 What does **dreadful** mean?
- 2 How do you pronounce **lose**? (Is it the same as 'choose' or 'chose'?)
- 3 What part of speech is **choose**?
- 4 What part of speech is **homesick**?
- 5 **Homework** and **chaos** are both nouns, but what type of noun are they?
- 6 What adjectives are often used before **chaos**? (Give two.)
- 7 What two prepositions are often used after **choose**?
- 8 Write down a sentence example of **choose** used with a preposition.

### 3.2 When you look up a word, you can also use your dictionary to increase your vocabulary by learning related words and phrases. Find out if your dictionary helps you to answer these questions, also about words from the opposite page.

- 1 **Choose** is a verb, but what is the noun with the same meaning?
- 2 **Advice** is a noun, but what is the verb with the same meaning?
- 3 **Advice** is also uncountable, but you can make it countable using another word. Can you complete this sentence: 'He gave me a very useful ..... of advice.'
- 4 What adjective is formed from **chaos**?
- 5 What is the opposite of **dirty**?
- 6 What is the difference between **homework** and **housework**?
- 7 What is the opposite of **lose a game**?
- 8 What is the opposite of **lose weight**?
- 9 **Law** often appears in the phrase **law and .....** What is the missing word?
- 10 If you want to sit at a table in a cafe and you see that one person is sitting there already, but another **seat** is empty, what can you say to the person sitting down?

### 3.3 In the word 'island' /aɪlənd/, the letter 's' is silent (= not pronounced). Use the pronunciation guide in your dictionary to find the silent letters in each of these words. (Do not include the letter 'e' at the end of a word.)

knife bomb psychology receipt castle doubt wrist calm

*Note:* Students often ask if the letter 't' is pronounced in 'often'. Some people pronounce it, others don't. What does your dictionary say?

### 3.4 Look at the entry for **suit** on the right, then match the definitions with the sentences on the left.

- 1 I'm afraid black doesn't **suit** me – my hair is the wrong colour.
- 2 A: I'm not going, so don't ask me again.  
B: OK. **Suit** yourself.
- 3 If we have the meeting this afternoon, would 2.30 **suit** you?

**suit**<sup>2</sup> *v* [T] 1 to be acceptable or CONVENIENT for a particular person or in a particular situation: *Finding a date that suits us all is very difficult.* | *Buy a database program to suit your needs.* | **suit sb** (fine) *spoken* (=be completely acceptable) "Eight o'clock?" "That suits me fine." | **suit sb down to the ground** (=be exactly right for someone) *Yup, this little car suits me down to the ground.* 2 [not in passive] to make someone look attractive: *That coat really suits Paul.* | *Red suits you.* —see FIT<sup>1</sup> (USAGE) 3 **well/best/ideally suited** to have the right qualities to do something: *Dirk would be ideally suited to the job.* 4 **suit yourself** *spoken* used to tell someone they can do whatever they want to, even though it annoys you: "I don't really feel like going out after all." "Suit yourself." 5 **suit sb's book** *BrE informal* to fit well into someone's



## 4 English language words

### A Parts of speech

nouns	e.g. chair, information, happiness
verbs	e.g. choose, tell, complain
adjectives	e.g. happy, tall, dangerous
adverbs	e.g. slowly, carefully, often
prepositions	e.g. in, at, on
pronouns	e.g. me, you, him, we, it, she
articles	e.g. definite article (the); indefinite article (a/an)

### B Special terms

**Uncountable noun:** (U) a noun which has no plural form and cannot be used with the indefinite article, e.g. information. See Unit 27.

**Plural noun:** (pl) a noun which only has a plural form and cannot be used with the indefinite article, e.g. trousers. See Unit 27.

**Infinitive:** the base form of a verb, e.g. (to) work, (to) stop, (to) be.

**Phrasal verb:** a verb + adverb and/or preposition, e.g. turn on (verb + adverb), look after (verb + preposition), give up (verb + adverb), put up with (verb + adverb + preposition). See Units 16 and 17.

**Idiom:** a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, e.g. never mind, hang on, a short cut, keep an eye on something.

**Transitive verb:** a verb which needs a **direct object**, e.g. Police caught the man ('the man' is the direct object of the verb 'caught'). See Unit 17.

**Intransitive verb:** a verb which does not need a direct object, e.g. The books arrived on time. (There is no direct object after arrive.) See Unit 17.

### C Word building

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a **prefix**, *comfort* is a **root**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include: *re-*, *in-*, and *dis-*; common suffixes include: *-ity*, *-ment*, and *-ive*. Many words also have **synonyms**, which are words with the same meaning. For example, 'big' is a synonym of 'large'. The **opposite** is 'small'.

### D Pronunciation

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonetic symbols**, e.g. book /bʊk/, before /brɪ'fɔː/, cinema /'sɪnəmə/, and so on.

Each word contains one or more **syllables**: 'book' has one syllable; 'before' has two syllables (be-fore); 'cinema' has three syllables (ci-ne-ma); 'education' has four syllables (e-du-ca-tion); and so on.

For pronunciation, it is important to know which syllable has the main **stress**. On 'before' it is the second syllable (before); on 'cinema' it is the first (ciinema); and on 'education' it is the third (education).

*Note:* Dictionaries mark stress in different ways: in bold (return); or a ' before the main syllable (re'turn). Make sure you understand how your dictionary shows it.

### E Punctuation

full stop .    comma ,    brackets ( )    hyphen -    question mark ?

## Exercises

- 4.1** There is one word missing in each line of this text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? And what type of word is it (noun, verb, etc.)? Look at the example first.

Last year I went to ~~for~~ my holiday. I spent the first Spain (noun).....  
 week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and .....  
 then I took a train to Barcelona where spent another .....  
 ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous .....  
 time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but .....  
 I didn't mind spending a lot money because it is a .....  
 wonderful and also very convenient. My brother was .....  
 the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot .....  
 and he stays anywhere else. ....

- 4.2** In the dialogue below, can you find at least one example of the following: an uncountable noun; a plural noun; a phrasal verb; an idiom?

A: What's the time?  
 B: 8 o'clock, so we'd better get a move on if we're going to meet your sister at the airport.  
 A: That's alright. Her flight doesn't arrive until 8.30.  
 B: Yeah, but it'll take us an hour to get there – you know what the traffic is like.  
 A: OK. I'll just go and get changed.  
 B: What's wrong with those shorts?  
 A: I don't like driving in shorts. I'm going to put some jeans on.

- 4.3** Look at the underlined verbs in these sentences. Which are transitive, which are intransitive?

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1 She <u>broke</u> her leg.        | 4 <u>Take off</u> your jacket.          |
| 2 I <u>got up</u> at seven thirty. | 5 She doesn't <u>like</u> Chinese food. |
| 3 We <u>arrived</u> late.          | 6 He told me to <u>sit down</u> .       |

- 4.4** How many syllables are there in each of the words in the box?

English	noun	informal	education
understand	adjective	decide	pronunciation
before	opposite	preposition	comfortable

Now mark the main stress on each of the above words.

- 4.5** Look at these words, then answer the questions below.

happy    correct    lucky    sure    possible

- What part of speech are these words?
- Change each one into an adverb.
- Can you write down a synonym for at least three of the words?
- Which prefix do you need to form the opposite of each word? (three different ones)
- Which word has the main stress on the second syllable?

## 5 Problems with pronunciation

### A Phonetics

With many languages you can look at a word and know (more or less) how to pronounce it. With English this is not true: it is often very difficult to know the pronunciation from looking at a word. For example:

cough (pronounced like 'off') enough (like 'stuff') through (like 'too') and dough (like 'so')

The only way you can be sure about the pronunciation is to learn some phonetic symbols which tell you the pronunciation. Dictionaries use them, and there is a table of phonetic symbols, with examples, on page 246. Phonetic symbols are used next to many words in the index, and there is a special list of words on page 247, which cause pronunciation problems for speakers from different countries.

### B Word stress

When a word has two or more syllables, one of them has the main stress. In these examples, the main stress follows the symbol ':

'accent    pre'fer    edu'cation    'necessary    Ja'pan    Japa'nese

If you put the stress on the wrong syllable, it may be difficult for listeners to understand what you are saying.

### C /ə/

Probably the most important sound in English because it is often the pronunciation of the letters 'a', 'o' and 'e' if they are not part of a stressed syllable.

ma'chine /mə'ʃi:n/    'mother /'mʌðə/    po'tato /pə'teɪtəʊ/    'cinema /'sɪnəmə/

### D Key letters and sounds

A common problem is that a single letter or combination of letters has more than one pronunciation, e.g. -ough in section A. Here are some more examples:

the letter 'o' is often /ɒ/, e.g. hot; or /ʌ/, e.g. some; or /əʊ/, e.g. no

the letter 'a' is often /æ/, e.g. hat; or /eɪ/, e.g. same; or /aɪ/, e.g. fast

the letter 'u' is often /ʌ/, e.g. run; or /ʊ/, e.g. put

the letter 'i' is often /ɪ/, e.g. sit; or /aɪ/, e.g. side

### E Silent letters and short syllables

There are many words in English where a letter is not pronounced:

fasten    plumber    calm    knee    wrong    comb

There are also many words where we almost 'eat' one of the syllables, and as a result a vowel sound almost disappears and a word, for example, with three written syllables may be two (or two and a half) in spoken English. For example:

interested /ɪntrə'stɪd/    fattening /fæt'nɪŋ/    vegetable /vedʒtəbl/

*Note:* The exercises on the next page practise some words with difficult pronunciation.

## Exercises

- 5.1** Try using some phonetic symbols. Using your dictionary or the index, fill in the pronunciation of these words (put the symbols between the / /). Then practise saying the words and make sure you can see and hear the difference in the pronunciation of the words in each pair.



1 row /       /       cow /       /       2 back /       /       bacon /       /



3 soup /       /       soap /       /       4 vase /       /       razor /       /

- 5.2** Look at the underlined letters in these words. Which one is the odd one out in each case?

- 1 bread      dream      spread      dead
- 2 spoon      room      flood      choose
- 3 fast      phrase      blame      sunbathe
- 4 cousin      wound (n)      rough      trouble
- 5 virus      pilot      diet      since
- 6 hyphen      symptom      type      psychology

- 5.3** Which syllable has the main stress in these words? Put them in the correct column.

cathedral      policy      palace  
opposite      police      understand  
advertisement      desert (n)  
competition      organise  
assistance      education

<i>first</i>	<i>second</i>	<i>third</i>

Now look at the words again. How many examples of the /ə/ sound can you find?

- 5.4** Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different?

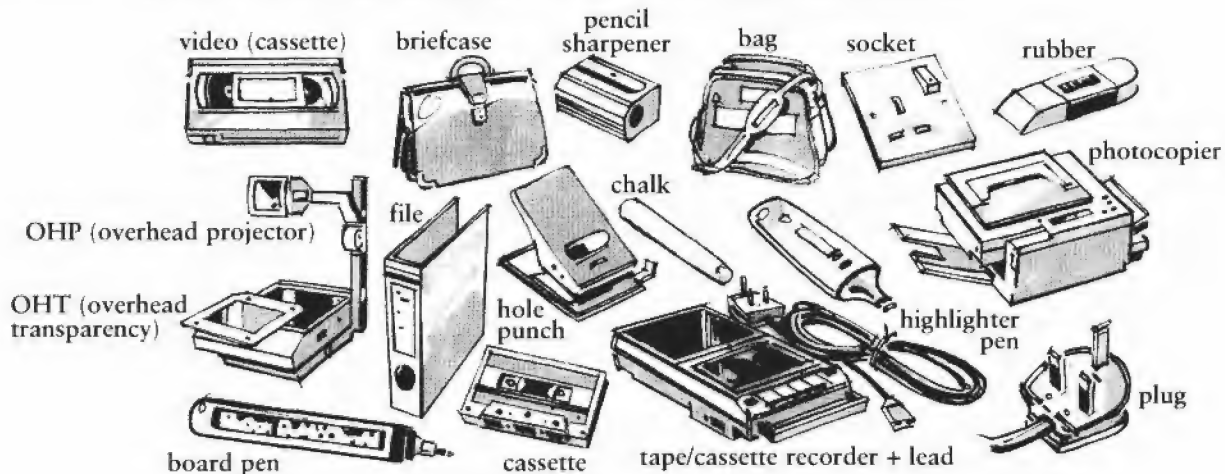
know / <u>k</u> nife	muscle / scissors
island / I <u>s</u> lam	climb / bo <u>m</u> b
listen / we <u>s</u> tern	<u>h</u> onest / <u>h</u> ope
aisle / Chri <u>s</u> tmas	wro <u>n</u> g / wri <u>s</u> t
hand / hand <u>s</u> ome	cal <u>f</u> / cal <u>m</u>



## 6 Classroom language

### A Equipment

These are some of the things you may use in your classroom or school.



*Note:* We can use some of these nouns as verbs with little or no change: **to video** (= to record a programme on video), **to photocopy** (= to use the photocopier), **to highlight** and **to file** (= to put things in a file)

### B Classroom activities

Here are some classroom activities. Look carefully at the verbs in bold.

Things you do in the classroom:

**Look up** a word if you don't understand it. (= find the meaning of a word in a dictionary)

**Borrow** someone's dictionary or rubber. (= use it and then return it)

**Rub out** mistakes in your notebook. (= erase mistakes / remove them using a rubber)

Things the teacher may do in the classroom:

**Plug in** the tape recorder. (= put the plug in the socket and turn on the electricity)

**Turn up** the tape recorder (= increase the volume) if the students can't hear it.

**Rub** things off the board. (= remove writing from the board)

**Correct** students' English. (= give the correct English if students make mistakes)

Things your teacher may ask you to do in the classroom:

Could you **clean** the board, Carlos? (= remove all the writing from the board)

**Write** these words **down**. (= write these words on a piece of paper / in a notebook)

Enrique, could you **swap** places (= exchange places) with Lorena?

**Repeat** this sentence (= say it again) after me.

### C Questions about vocabulary

What does X mean? [NOT ~~what means X?~~]

How do you pronounce it?

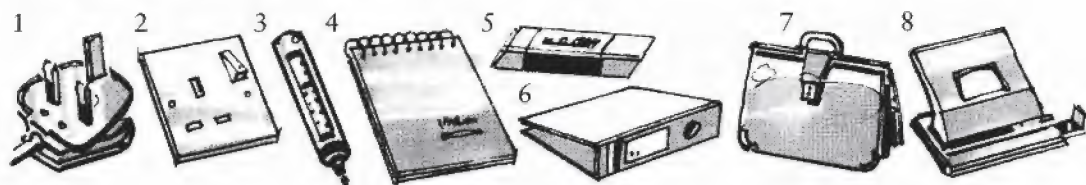
How do you spell 'bicycle'?

How do you use 'anyway' in a sentence?

What's the difference between X and Y?

## Exercises

**6.1** Label these pictures then check your answers on the opposite page.



**6.2** Answer these questions.

- 1 What do you rub off the board?
- 2 What do you put in a tape recorder?
- 3 What do you put on an OHP?
- 4 What do you keep in a file?
- 5 What do you put in a briefcase?
- 6 What do you put in a socket?
- 7 What do you use a dictionary for?
- 8 What do you use a rubber for?
- 9 What do you use a photocopier for?
- 10 Why do you turn up a tape recorder?

**6.3** Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right.

- |           |                   |
|-----------|-------------------|
| 1 clean   | places            |
| 2 turn up | a word            |
| 3 borrow  | mistakes          |
| 4 swap    | the board         |
| 5 video   | a dictionary      |
| 6 do      | the OHP           |
| 7 correct | the tape recorder |
| 8 look up | a programme       |
| 9 plug in | an exercise       |

**6.4** Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things?

- |                  |                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| clean the board  | swap places with someone           |
| use a rubber     | look up a word                     |
| borrow something | make a mistake                     |
| watch a video    | write something down in a notebook |

**6.5** Here are some answers. What are the possible questions?

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| A: ..... | B: It means to exchange places.                                   |
| A: ..... | B: /swɒp/ Like 'cop' or 'stop'.                                   |
| A: ..... | B: S-W-A-P.   |
| A: ..... | B: I can't see the board from here. Will you swap places with me? |

# 7 Prefixes

## A With the meaning 'not'

Prefixes (**un-**, **in-**, **il-**, **ir-**, and **dis-**) are often used to give adjectives (and some verbs and nouns) a negative meaning. Here are common examples:

happy	unhappy	like (v)	dislike (v)
possible	impossible	legal	illegal (= against the law)
correct	incorrect	regular	irregular, e.g. irregular verbs

**un-** is used with many different words, e.g. **unfriendly**, **unable**, **unemployed** (= without a job), **untidy** (= not in order; **in a mess**)

**im-** is used before some words beginning with **m** or **p**, e.g. **impolite** (= **rude**), **impatient** (somebody who is **impatient** wants things to happen now; they cannot wait for things)

**il-** is used before some words beginning with **l**, e.g. **illegible** (= cannot be read because the writing is very bad)

**ir-** is only used before some words beginning with **r**, e.g. **irresponsible**

**dis-** is used before some adjectives, e.g. **dishonest**, and a few verbs, e.g. **dislike**, **disagree**

**in-** is used before a limited number of words, e.g. **invisible** (= cannot be seen)

*Note:* A prefix does not normally change word stress, e.g. happy/unhappy; possible/impossible. But the stress may change if you want to emphasise the negative or opposite:

A: Was he happy about the change?

B: No, he was very unhappy about it.

## B Verb prefixes: un- and dis-

These prefixes have two meanings: they can have a negative meaning (as above), but they can also mean 'the opposite of an action' or 'to reverse an action'. This meaning is used with certain verbs.

I **locked** the door when I left, but I lost the key, so I couldn't **unlock** it when I got back.

I had to **pack** my suitcase (= put everything in it) very quickly, so when I **unpacked** (= took everything out) at the hotel, most of my clothes looked terrible.

The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.

In the morning you **get dressed** (= put on your clothes); when you go to bed you **get undressed** (= take off your clothes).

## C Other verb prefixes with specific meanings

<b>re-</b> (= again)	My homework was terrible, so I had to <b>redo</b> it. The shop closed down but will <b>reopen</b> next month. I failed my exam but I can <b>retake</b> (or <b>redo/resit</b> ) it next year.
<b>over-</b> (= too much)	I think my boss is <b>overdoing</b> it at the moment. (= working too hard; also <b>overwork</b> ) I went to bed very late and I <b>overslept</b> (= slept too long) this morning. The shop assistant <b>overcharged</b> me. (= asked me for too much money)
<b>mis-</b> (= badly or incorrectly)	I'm afraid I <b>misunderstood</b> what he said. Two of the students <b>misread</b> the first question.



## Exercises

- 7.1** Which prefix forms the opposite of these words? (The bottom line are all verbs, the rest are adjectives.)

.....happy	.....patient	.....polite	.....legal
.....correct	.....regular	.....visible	.....possible
.....legible	.....friendly	.....employed	.....honest
.....pack	.....lock	.....agree	.....like

- 7.2** Agree with these statements, using words from the left-hand page which have the same meaning as the underlined words.

*Example:* A: He doesn't have a job, does he?

B: No, he's unemployed.

- 1 It's against the law, isn't it?  
Oh yes, .....
- 2 His room is always in a mess, isn't it?  
Yes, .....
- 3 He took off his clothes!  
Yes, .....
- 4 This handwriting is impossible to read.  
Yes I know, .....
- 5 She can never wait for five minutes, can she?  
No, .....
- 6 I thought it was rude, didn't you?  
Yes, it was very .....

- 7.3** Complete the verbs in these sentences.

- 1 I'm sorry, I mis..... her message completely.
- 2 We un..... as soon as we got to the hotel, then went out for a walk.
- 3 She was here a minute ago, but then she dis..... I'm afraid I don't know where she is now.
- 4 We normally have similar opinions but I dis..... with him totally on the subject of drugs.
- 5 My homework was so bad that I'll have to re..... it.
- 6 Apparently her alarm clock didn't ring and she over.....
- 7 She finally managed to un..... the door and we were able to go inside.
- 8 I dis..... the film, but the others enjoyed it.
- 9 I don't think I'll pass the exam, but I can always re..... it in September.
- 10 The post office shuts for lunch but it should re..... at 2.00 p.m.
- 11 She's over..... at the moment. She really needs a holiday and a complete break from her job.
- 12 My sister wrapped up my present so well that it took me about five minutes to un..... it.

- 7.4** Keep several pages in your notebook for verbs or adjectives which combine with these prefixes. Each time you add a new word, read through your list of words with that prefix, then close your book and see how many you can remember.

## 8 Noun suffixes

### A Verb + suffix

Many nouns are formed in this way.

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Noun</i>
improve (= get better)	-ment	improvement
manage (e.g. a shop or business)	-ment	management
elect (= choose somebody by voting)	-ion	election
discuss (= talk about something seriously)	-ion	discussion
inform (= tell someone something)	-ation	information
organise	-ation	organisation
jog (= running to keep fit or for pleasure)	-ing	jogging
spell (e.g. S-P-E-L-L)	-ing	spelling

*Note:* Sometimes there is a spelling change. The most common is the omission of the final 'e' before the suffix -ion or -ation: translate/translation; organise/organisation

### B Adjective + suffix

Nouns are also formed by adding a suffix to an adjective. Two suffixes often added to adjectives to form nouns are -ness and -ity.

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Noun</i>
weak (≠ strong)	-ness	weakness
happy	-ness	happiness
dark (e.g. at night, when you can't see)	-ness	darkness
stupid (≠ intelligent, clever)	-ity	stupidity
punctual (= always arrives at the right time)	-ity	punctuality
similar (= almost the same; ≠ different)	-ity	similarity

### C Pronunciation

The addition of these suffixes may change the pronunciation.

Nouns ending -ion or -ity have the main stress on the syllable before, so the pronunciation may be different from the verb or adjective:

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Noun</i>
educate	education	similar	similarity
translate	translation	stupid	stupidity
discuss	discussion	punctual	punctuality

### D -er/-or and -ist

These are common noun suffixes added to existing nouns or verbs, and they describe people and their jobs.

-er	-er	-or	-ist
dancer	driver	actor	artist
singer	manager	director	economist
murderer	footballer	translator	psychologist
farmer	employer	operator	journalist

*Note:* Notice the common spelling changes:  
translate/translator, operate/operator, economy/economist, psychology/psychologist.

## Exercises

- 8.1** Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Noun
educate		stupid	
improve		dark	
jog		weak	
govern		similar	
spell		punctual	
hesitate		sad	
arrange		popular	

- 8.2** Combine the suffixes on the right with the verbs or adjectives on the left, and then complete the text below. (Remember you may need to make a small spelling change.)

improve	televis	elect	-ment	-ity	-ion	-ation	-ness
educate	weak	manage					
govern	stupid						

In his first broadcast on <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ since he won the <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ last month, the Prime Minister promised to make health and <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ two of his top priorities. And in a strong attack on the previous <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, he said that the present <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of the British

economy was caused entirely by their <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and bad <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. He said he would act immediately and he hoped the British people would be able to see clear signs of an <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in the economy by the end of the year.

- 8.3** Write down the name of the person who does these things.

Example: farm ...*farmer*.....

- |                  |                    |                   |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 act .....      | 4 sing .....       | 7 economics ..... |
| 2 employ .....   | 5 murder .....     | 8 translate ..... |
| 3 football ..... | 6 psychology ..... | 9 manage .....    |

- 8.4** Look at the two examples and then complete the rest of the definitions.

Example: An actor is a person who ...*acts in films, plays and on TV*.....

A murderer is a person who ...*murders someone*.....

- A journalist is a person who .....
- A ballet dancer is a person who .....
- A film director is a person who .....
- A bank manager is a person who .....
- An employer is a person who .....
- A pop singer is a person who .....
- A translator is a person who .....
- A lorry driver is a person who .....
- A photographer is a person who .....
- An artist is a person who .....



## 9 Adjective suffixes

Suffixes change word class, e.g. from verb to noun or noun to adjective, but they can also change meaning (see sections B and C below).

### A Noun or verb + suffix

<i>Noun or Verb</i>	<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>
danger, fame	-ous	dangerous, famous (= well-known)
music, politics	-al	musical, political, industrial, economical (= saves you money)
industry, economics		
cloud, fog, sun, dirt	-y	cloudy, foggy, sunny, dirty (≠ clean)
attract, create	-ive	attractive (= pretty, nice to look at); creative (= able to produce new ideas; with imagination)

*Note:* Sometimes there is a spelling change. Here are common examples:

double the consonant, e.g. sun/sunny, fog/foggy

leave out the final 'e', e.g. create/creative, fame/famous

leave out the final 's' before 'al', e.g. politics/political; economics/economical

change 'y' to 'i' before 'al', e.g. industry/industrial

### B -able /əbl/

This suffix (also -ible in some words) is used to form many adjectives from nouns or verbs: **enjoyable**, **comfortable**, **knowledgeable** (= knows a lot), **suitable** (= right/correct for a particular situation).

Quite often, -able (and -ible) has the meaning 'can be done'. For example, something that is **washable** 'can be washed'. Other examples include:

**drinkable**, **comprehensible** (= can be comprehended or understood), **reliable** (= can be relied on or trusted, e.g. a car or other machine that never goes wrong or breaks down).

Words ending -able quite often express the opposite meaning by adding the prefix **un-**:

**undrinkable**, **unreliable**, **unbreakable** (= cannot be broken), **unsuitable**, **uncomfortable**

Words ending -ible add the prefix **in-**:

**incomprehensible**, **inflexible** (somebody who is **inflexible** has a fixed idea about something and cannot change quickly or easily; an **inflexible** timetable cannot be changed easily); **inedible** (= cannot be eaten).

### C -ful and -less

The suffix **-ful** often means 'full of' + the meaning of the adjective: **careful**, you are full of care; if you are **helpful** you are full of help. Other examples are: **painful** (= hurts a lot), **useful**, and **thoughtful** (= someone who is **thoughtful** is kind and always thinks about others; a **thoughtful** action shows care for others)

The suffix **-less** means 'without' + the meaning of the adjective: if you are **careless**, you do something 'without care'. Other examples are: **painless**, **useless** (= has no use or function) **thoughtless**, **jobless** and **homeless** (= with nowhere to live)

*Note:* You can see that -ful and -less are often used with the same words to form opposites. This is not always true: a person with a home is NOT **homeful**.

## Exercises

- 9.1** Write down an adjective (or adjectives) formed from these nouns or verbs. Cover the opposite page first.

thought	dirt	pain	comfort
attract	care	knowledge	fame
create	danger	suit	rely
fog	politics	sun	wash
home	enjoy	music	break
use			

- 9.2** Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives from the opposite page.

- 1 You must be very ..... when you drive in wet weather.
- 2 It was so ..... this morning that I couldn't see more than twenty metres in front of me.
- 3 Everyone in my country has heard of her; she's very .....
- 4 The people in the tourist information office were very ..... and answered all our questions without any problems.
- 5 This is a very ..... road; there were at least three serious accidents on it last year.
- 6 It was very ..... when I hit my leg against the corner of the table.
- 7 This bag is very ..... because I can use it for work or when I go on holiday.
- 8 We've never had any problems with our TV in ten years; it's been very .....
- 9 The factory is in the middle of the ..... part of the city, surrounded by other factories.
- 10 I made some coffee but it was horrible. In fact, my sister said it was .....
- 11 I'm afraid my working hours are very .....; I have to start at exactly the same time every day and finish at the same time every day.
- 12 It seems terrible to me that there are so many ..... people living in a city with thousands of empty houses.

- 9.3** How many of these words can form opposites with the suffix -less?

painful    wonderful    useful    careful  
beautiful    tactful    awful    thoughtful

Can you think of words which mean the opposite of the other words (the ones without -less)?

- 9.4** From the adjectives on this page and the opposite page, choose three which could describe each of these people or things. (You can use the same adjective more than once.)

- 1 the weather .....
- 2 someone who is a very bad driver .....
- 3 Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart .....
- 4 a large city .....
- 5 Albert Einstein .....
- 6 a new car .....
- 7 a speech .....
- 8 yourself .....

# 10 Zero affixation

## A What is zero affixation?

Many words in English can function as a noun and verb, or noun and adjective, or verb and adjective, with no change in form. The meaning is not always the same, but this unit looks at examples where the words do have the same meaning.

What's the **answer**? (noun)

**Answer** the question. (verb)

I don't like the **cold**. (noun)

I don't like **cold** weather. (adjective)

I must **clean** my room. (verb)

It's a **clean** room. (adjective)

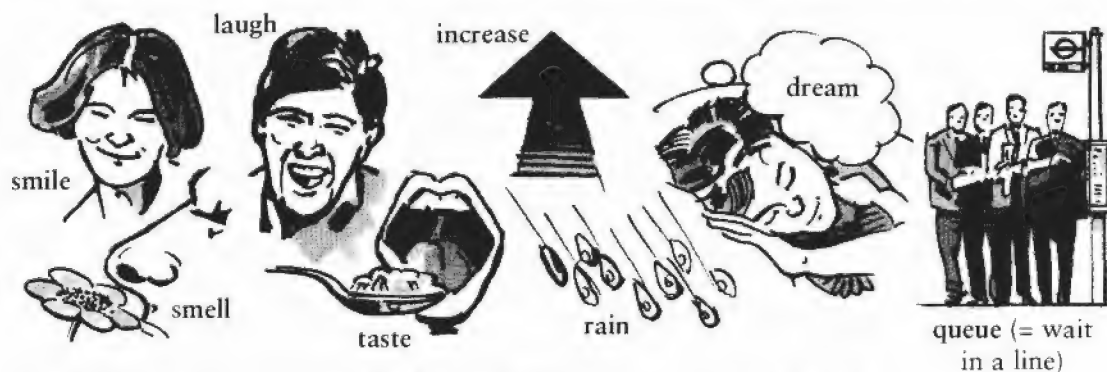
I didn't **reply** to the letter. (verb)

I wrote a **reply** to the letter. (noun)

*Note:* Other examples in the book are marked like this: ache (n, v), damage (n, v), dry (v, adj). Keep a record of them in your notebook.

## B Noun and verb

You may know these words in one form but not the other. (The definitions are for the verb.)



**brake** (= stop a car using the brake on the floor)

**diet** (= eat less and lose weight)

**guess** (= give an answer without knowing the facts)

**ring** (= phone)

**push** (≠ pull)

**murder** (= kill someone)

*Note:* Other words in this group include: stay, drink, rest, look, cost, and wait. Use a dictionary if you need to check the meaning. Here are a few examples:

We **queued** for half an hour.

This orange **smells/tastes** strange.

I didn't know the answer, so I **guessed**.

We waited in a **queue** for half an hour.

This orange has got a strange **smell/taste**.

I didn't know the answer, so I **had** a guess.

## C Which verb?

When you use these words as nouns, you need to choose the correct verb to use with it.

*Verb*

We **stayed** in Paris for a short time.

We **rested** for a while.

She **braked** quickly.

He needs to **diet**.

I'm going to **ring** him.

I **looked** in the paper.

He **pushed** me.

I **dreamt** about you last night.

*Noun*

We **had** a short stay in Paris.

We **had** a short rest.

She **put on** the brakes quickly.

He needs to **go on** a diet.

I'm going to **give** him a ring.

I **had** a look in the paper.

He **gave** me a push.

I **had** a dream about you last night.



## Exercises

- 10.1** Rewrite these sentences using the underlined nouns as verbs. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.

*Example:* There was a lot of rain yesterday.

*It rained a lot yesterday.*

- 1 We had a long wait.  
.....
- 2 I had a dream about you last night.  
.....
- 3 We waited in the queue for half an hour.  
.....
- 4 The cost of the holiday was about £500.  
.....
- 5 I wrote a reply to his letter yesterday.  
.....

- 10.2** Now rewrite these sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns. The meaning must stay the same.

- 1 I'll ring him this evening.  
.....
- 2 I diet if I put on weight.  
.....
- 3 It was very hot, so we rested for a while after lunch.  
.....
- 4 I braked but I still couldn't stop in time.  
.....
- 5 He pushed me.  
.....
- 6 Did you look in the paper?  
.....

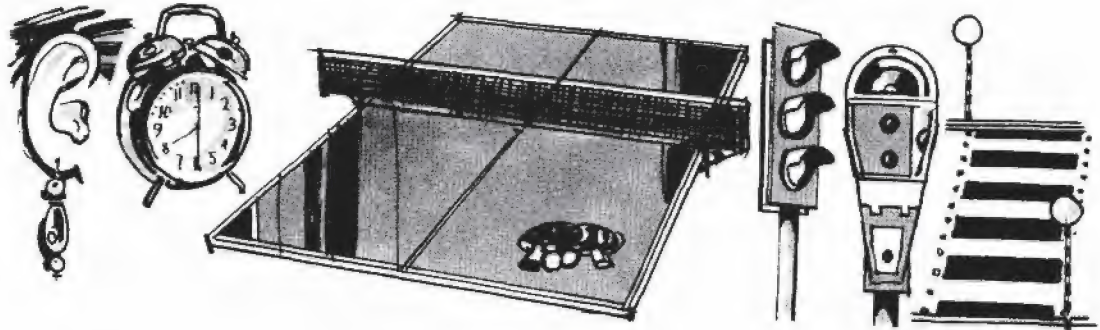
- 10.3** Sometimes the same word form can be a verb and noun but with a very different meaning. Read these pairs of sentences. Does the verb have the same meaning as the noun, a similar meaning, or a completely different meaning?

- 1 We had a long wait for the bus.  
If we wait any longer, we may miss the train.
- 2 Could we have another bottle of water, please?  
I asked her to water the garden.
- 3 I gave him the book.  
Did you book the table in the restaurant?
- 4 They always take a break after an hour's work.  
Did he break his arm skiing?
- 5 I go for a run most mornings.  
I was late so I had to run to get to school on time.

# Compound nouns

## A Formation

A compound noun is formed from two nouns, or an adjective and a noun. Here are some common examples.



alarm clock  
credit card  
table tennis  
T-shirt  
earring  
sunglasses  
traffic lights  
tin opener  
parking meter  
\*first aid  
\*pedestrian crossing

dining room (= the room where you eat meals)  
film star (e.g. Tom Cruise, Jodie Foster)  
brother-in-law (= your sister's husband, your husband's brother)  
income tax (= the tax you pay on your salary)  
writing paper (= paper for writing letters)  
washing machine (= the machine for washing clothes)  
cheque book (= a book which has cheques)  
baby-sitter (= he/she looks after children when parents are out)  
\*mother tongue (= your first language)  
\*science fiction (= stories about the future)  
\*box office (= where you buy tickets in cinemas and theatres)

## B One word or two?

Compound nouns are usually written as two words (e.g. credit card), but sometimes they are joined by a hyphen (e.g. baby-sitter), or written as one word (e.g. sunglasses). Unfortunately there is no rule for this, so you may need to check in a dictionary.

## C Pronunciation

The main stress is usually on the first part (e.g. parking meter) but sometimes it is on both parts (e.g. mother tongue). In A, the compounds marked \*all have the stress on both parts. Some dictionaries show the stress on compounds.

## D Forming new compounds

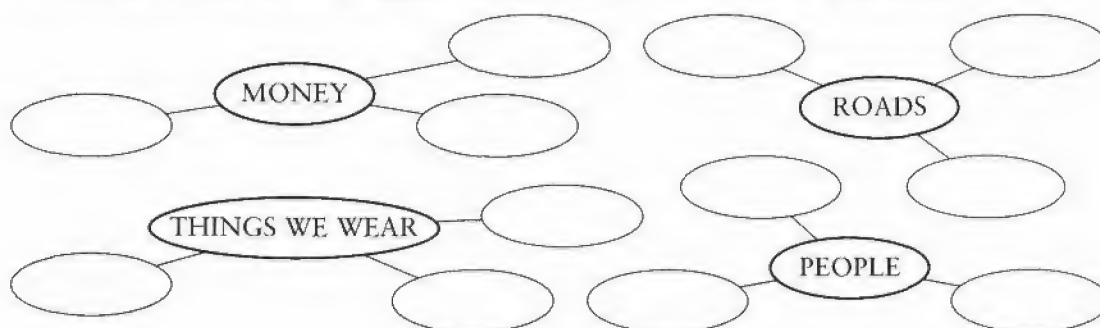
Quite often, one part of a compound forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

post/ticket/box office    traffic lights/warden/jam    film/pop/rock star  
brother/sister/father/mother -in-law    dining/sitting/waiting room

*Note:* A traffic **jam** is a long line of cars which are moving slowly because the road is busy; and traffic **wardens** patrol the streets to make sure you are not parked in the wrong place illegally. You buy theatre tickets at the **box office** and train tickets at the **ticket office**.

## Exercises

- 11.1** Find compound nouns on the opposite page connected with each of these topics.



- 11.2** Complete these sentences with suitable compound nouns, then see if you can find them on the opposite page.

- 1 I'm late because there was a terrible ..... in the centre of town.
- 2 Humphrey Bogart was a famous ..... in the forties and fifties.
- 3 My ..... didn't ring this morning and I didn't wake up until 9.30.
- 4 When I got to the surgery, I had to sit in the ..... for forty minutes before I could see the dentist.
- 5 Mary really wanted to see the film but she couldn't find a ..... for the children, so she had to stay at home.
- 6 When I'm driving I always wear ..... if it's very bright and sunny.
- 7 You have to pay ..... on your salary in Britain; the amount depends on how much you earn.
- 8 I often have the same problem: I park the car next to a ....., and then I discover that I don't have the right money.
- 9 In some countries you have to have a ..... box in your car for minor injuries and illnesses.
- 10 My brother loves ....., but I prefer true stories about the present or the past.

- 11.3** Take one word (the first part or the second part) from each compound and create a new compound. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

*Examples:* brother-in-law ..... mother-in-law .....  
 table tennis ..... table leg .....

dining room	.....	traffic lights	.....
film star	.....	sunglasses	.....
credit card	.....	post office	.....
toothpaste	.....	hairdryer	.....

Now mark the main stress on each of the compound nouns you have created.

- 11.4** Try creating your own compound nouns. Choose two or three common words and then try to form compound nouns from them. When you have two or three possibilities, check in a dictionary to see if your words exist. Start with these.

..... book      or      book .....  
 ..... card



# 12 Compound adjectives

## A Formation and pronunciation

A compound adjective is formed from two different words, and occasionally three. They are usually written with a hyphen (e.g. good-looking, well-known), and the stress is usually the same on both parts of the compound.

## B Describing people

Many compound adjectives describe a person's appearance, character, and situation.

This is William. He isn't **well-known** (= famous), he isn't **well-off** (= rich), and I've never heard anyone say he was **good-looking** (= handsome/attractive). But he's a very nice man – kind, friendly and very **easy-going** (= relaxed). In this picture he's wearing a **short-sleeved** shirt and a **brand-new** (= completely new) hat.



## C 'Well' and 'badly'

These adverbs combine with many past participles to form compound adjectives. You can use 'well' or 'badly' in front of the adjective (except **well-known**, which has no opposite).

a well-directed film

a badly-paid job (= a low salary)

a well-made pair of shoes

a badly-behaved child (= acting in a bad way)

a well-written story

a badly-dressed young man (= wearing horrible clothes)

## D A 'five-minute' walk

It is common to combine a number and a singular noun to form a compound adjective.

It's a **fifteen-minute** drive to the centre. (= a drive of fifteen minutes)

He works in a **four-star** hotel. (= a hotel with a rating of four stars)

I gave her a **five-pound** note. (= a note with a value of five pounds)

The winner was a **ten-year-old** girl. (= a girl who is ten years old)

There was a **two-hour** delay on our flight. (= the plane was two hours' late)

## E Common compounds

She had a **full-time** job in a bank, but after the baby was born she changed to a **part-time** job and just worked in the mornings.

The hotel is **north-west** of here, about ten miles away. (also **north-east**, **south-east**, and **south-west**)

Most of the population are **right-handed**, but about 10% are **left-handed**.

On trains and planes you can buy a **first-class** ticket if you are happy to pay a lot more.

Mary bought a **second-hand** BMW. (= the car was not **brand-new**, but was a new car for her)

*Note:* As with compound nouns, you can often combine different words with one part and form many different compound adjectives.

## Exercises

- 12.1** Match words from the box on the left with words from the box on the right to form 12 compound adjectives.

good	well
easy	north
ten	short
brand	badly
part	left
first	second

new	known
written	class
looking	sleeved
hand	handed
going	east
time	pound

- 12.2** For each word below, find two words which will combine with it to form different compound adjectives. Cover the left-hand page first.

well ..... badly ..... handed  
 .....  
 .....  
 ..... time ..... east  
 .....

- 12.3** Complete the compound adjectives in these sentences.

- 1 They were both wearing short-..... shirts.
- 2 We stayed in a five-..... hotel.
- 3 There is a shop in London which sells things for left-..... people.
- 4 He's just bought a brand-..... car.
- 5 The airport is about ten miles south-..... of the city centre.
- 6 One little girl was very badly-.....; she kept shouting during lunch and then threw food all over the floor.
- 7 She's just got a .....-time job; she works three hours a day on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays.
- 8 It was a very badly-..... article: I noticed several punctuation mistakes and lots of spelling mistakes.
- 9 They're very well-....., so they can afford to go to expensive restaurants.
- 10 It's a twenty-..... walk to the house, but it takes much less than that in the car.
- 11 She's got a little stall in the market where she sells second-..... things.
- 12 When I saw her last night, she was dancing with a very good-..... young man in a white suit.
- 13 I was astonished when the man at the next table gave the waiter a ten-..... note as a tip.
- 14 Have you ever met a well-..... actor or politician?
- 15 I had a nice time with my cousin – he's good company and very easy-.....

- 12.4** Write ten sentences about yourself and use a different compound adjective from the opposite page in each one. You can describe yourself, your personality, your family, your clothes, the place where you live, the journeys you make, etc. Try to do this exercise with a friend and see who can finish first.

# 13 Collocation (word partners)

## A What is collocation?

If you want to use a word naturally, you need to learn the other words that often go with it (word partners). These can be very different from language to language. For example, in English we say:

I **missed the bus** (= I didn't catch the bus) [~~NOT I lost the bus~~]

She **made a mistake** [~~NOT she did a mistake~~]

A **heavy smoker** (= someone who smokes a lot) [~~NOT a strong smoker or a big smoker~~]

It was a **serious illness** [~~NOT a big illness or a strong illness~~]

## B Verb + noun

The meaning of many of these examples may be clear, but did you know these verbs and nouns go together? Is it the same or different in your language?

start the car (= turn on the engine)      start a family (= think about having your first child)

tell a story      tell the truth (≠ tell a lie)

tell a joke      run a shop/company (= manage/control it)

get on a bus (≠ get off)      get in(to) a car (≠ get out (of) a car)

miss a person (= be unhappy because that person is not there)

miss a lesson (= when you don't come to a lesson)

## C Adjective + noun

Common adjectives often combine with a wide range of nouns.

a soft drink (= non-alcoholic drink)

a soft voice (≠ a loud voice)

dry wine (≠ sweet wine)

dry weather (≠ wet weather)

strong coffee (≠ weak coffee)

a strong accent (≠ a slight accent)

hard work (= hard physically or mentally)

a great success (= very successful)

heavy traffic (= a lot of cars)

heavy rain (= raining a lot)

Look at some of these phrases in example sentences.

I can't understand his English because he has such a **strong accent**.

It was **hard work** organising the conference, but I think it was a **great success**.

You always get **heavy traffic** during the rush hour.

## D Adverb + adjective

In these examples, all the adverbs mean **very**, but we choose to use them with certain adjectives. (You could still use **very** in all of these examples if you wish.)

I was **terribly sorry** to hear about your accident.

He's **highly unlikely** to come now. (= I'm almost sure he will not come)

She is **fully aware** of the problem. (= she knows all about the problem)

It is **vitaly important** that you make a note of common collocations in your notebook.

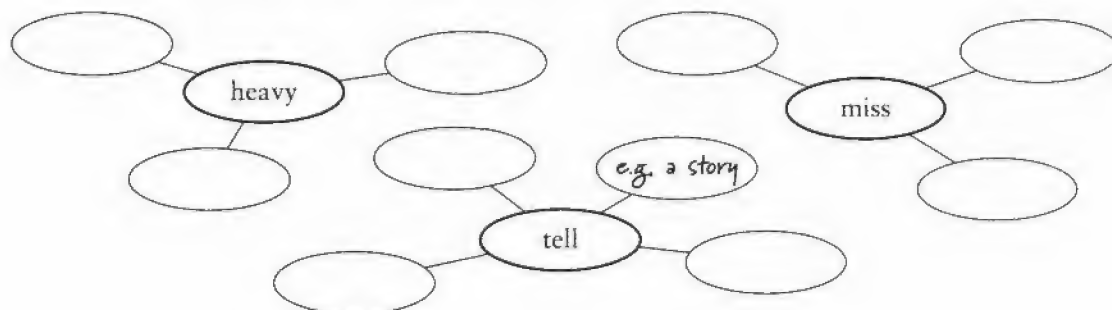
## E Collocation in dictionaries

All good dictionaries now include examples of common collocations but they do it in different ways: sometimes they are in **bold print** after the definition; sometimes in *italics* after the definition; and sometimes in the definition and examples. (See Unit 3, Section B.)



## Exercises

- 13.1** You can keep a record of common collocations by using 'spidergrams'. These are very clear on the page and you can add to them. Complete these.



- 13.2** Write the opposite of these phrases and expressions.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 sweet wine      | 5 get on the bus |
| 2 a strong accent | 6 tell the truth |
| 3 strong coffee   | 7 catch the bus  |
| 4 a soft voice    | 8 get in the car |

- 13.3** Find a suitable adjective, verb or adverb from the opposite page to complete these sentences.

- I'm ..... sorry I'm late, but I ..... the bus and had to wait ages for another one.
- He ..... everyone the same joke, and nobody laughed.
- We had lots of snow in the night and I had a problem ..... the car this morning.
- Michael is the owner, but his brother John ..... the company, and he has about 50 employees working for him.
- I think they want to get married and ..... a family.
- That's the third mistake she's ..... today.
- It's ..... important that we finish this work by the end of the week.
- If this ..... rain continues, I think he's ..... unlikely to come.
- I don't drink ..... coffee at night because it keeps me awake.
- I really ..... my family when I stayed in Australia on my own last year.

- 13.4** The adjectives on the left can all mean 'very big', but we often use them specifically with the nouns on the right. Use a good dictionary to find the correct collocations, and then complete the sentences below.

wide	large
broad	vast

shoulders	range
majority	size

- I used to be medium but I need a ..... now because I've put on weight.
- Fortunately the shop I go to has a ..... of shirts and jumpers to choose from.
- I've also got very ....., but my waist is quite small.
- A few men can't find clothes to fit them, but the ..... are small, medium or large.

# 14 Verb or adjective + preposition

## A Verb (+ preposition)

Here are some common examples of verbs which are usually followed by a particular preposition. You will probably know most of these verbs, but do you always get the preposition right? Pay special attention to any that are different in your language.

I often **listen to** the radio.

My brother never **agrees with** me. (= he never has the same views/opinion as me)

I may go to the match; it really **depends on** the weather. (= the weather will decide for me)

He **suffers from** (= has the unpleasant/bad experience of) a type of diabetes.

He **got married to** a girl he met in France.

I'm going to **apologise** (= say sorry) **for** the mistakes we made.

She has **applied** (= made a written request) **for** a new job.

They were **waiting for** me when I arrived.

Don't **worry** (= be nervous) **about** your exam; it'll be OK.

She **complained** (= said she was not satisfied) **to** the waiter **about** the food. (You complain **to** someone **about** something.)

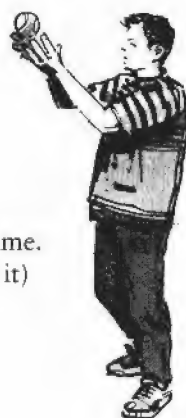
He **spends** a lot of money **on** clothes and discos.

That dictionary **belongs to** Rolf. (= it is Rolf's dictionary)

## B Changes of meaning

Sometimes a verb may be followed by different prepositions, and the meaning changes.

He **threw** the ball **to** me.  
(= for me to catch it)



He **threw** the ball **at** me.  
(= in order to hit me; perhaps he was angry)



He **shouted to** me. (= in order to communicate with me)

He **shouted at** me. (= he was angry with me)

## C Adjective (+ preposition)

I was never very **good at** mathematics.

She is **afraid of** (= frightened of) flying.

I'm very **keen on** Italian food. (= I like Italian food very much)

She is **similar to** (= almost the same as) her older sister, but very **different from** her brother.

He's very **interested in** antique furniture.

I was **surprised at** (or **by**) the weather; it rained nearly every day.

I think she is **aware of** (= knows about) the problems in her class.

I'm **tired of** studying foreign languages. (= I've had enough and I want to stop)

The streets are **full of** rubbish. (= there is rubbish everywhere in the streets)

There is something **wrong with** this TV. (= the TV is not working/functioning correctly)

## Exercises

### 14.1 Finish these questions with the correct preposition, then write a short answer for each one.

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| 1 A: What exactly is she worried .....                   | B: ..... |
| 2 A: What subjects is she good .....                     | B: ..... |
| 3 A: Who is she waiting .....                            | B: ..... |
| 4 A: What job is she applying .....                      | B: ..... |
| 5 A: What programme is she listening .....               | B: ..... |
| 6 A: What did she complain .....                         | B: ..... |
| 7 A: What did she apologise .....                        | B: ..... |
| 8 A: Who does this car belong .....                      | B: ..... |
| 9 A: I know she was angry but who was she shouting ..... | B: ..... |
| 10 A: What kind of films is she interested .....         | B: ..... |
| 11 A: What will the decision depend .....                | B: ..... |
| 12 A: What is she afraid .....                           | B: ..... |

### 14.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 He suffers              | a at me, but it missed.       |
| 2 She wasn't aware        | b for a job in Australia.     |
| 3 He threw the book       | c from a rare illness.        |
| 4 She complained          | d to the man across the lake. |
| 5 She said it was similar | e for the mistake.            |
| 6 She applied             | f at his choice.              |
| 7 She shouted             | g of clothes.                 |
| 8 He said it depends      | h to the one she has.         |
| 9 The suitcase was full   | i of working at weekends.     |
| 10 She's tired            | j of her mistakes.            |
| 11 She apologised         | k on me.                      |
| 12 I was very surprised   | l about the bad service.      |

### 14.3 Complete these sentences in a way that is logical and grammatically correct. If possible, compare your answers with someone who has also done this exercise.

- 1 My steak was overcooked, so I complained .....
- 2 When I was a child I sometimes wore clothes that belonged .....
- 3 I want to help poor people, so I have decided to apply .....
- 4 I work quite hard but I'm not very good .....
- 5 In the summer a lot of people suffer .....
- 6 I've always been interested .....
- 7 I'm very keen .....
- 8 A lot of people are afraid .....
- 9 People in my country are very different .....
- 10 When I went to ....., I was very surprised .....

### 14.4 A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition. Sometimes the preposition is shown after the verb or adjective; sometimes it is illustrated in the example sentences. Use a dictionary to find the preposition that often follows these words.

fond (adj)      concentrate (v)      responsible (adj)      rely (v)

# 15 Preposition + noun

## A Common patterns

There are many expressions formed by a preposition + noun, and sometimes a preposition is used with a particular meaning in a number of expressions, so they are very common.

A book **by** Stephen King, a film **by** Steven Spielberg, a song **by** Elton John.

You can go **for** a walk, **for** a drive, **for** a run, **for** a swim.

You can go **in** the morning, **in** the afternoon, **in** the evening (but ~~at~~ **at night**).

You can travel **by** car, **by** plane, **by** bus, **by** coach, **by** train, **by** taxi (but ~~on~~ **on foot**).

I heard it **on** the radio; I saw it **on** TV; I spoke to her **on** the phone (but I read it **in** the newspaper, **in** a magazine).

The man **in** the dark suit (= wearing the dark suit); the woman **in** the red dress.

## B Fixed expressions

Sometimes it is difficult to know why a particular preposition is used, and you must learn these as fixed expressions.

I took his pen **by mistake**. (= I thought it was my pen)

I did all the work **by myself**. (= **on my own**; without help from others)

The shoes are made **by hand**. (= not by machine)

The workers are **on strike**. (= they refuse to work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.)

I met them **by chance**. (= it wasn't planned – it was luck)

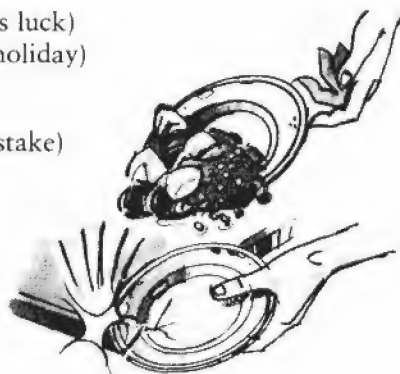
The children are **on holiday**. (= they are having a holiday)

He broke the plate **by accident**.

(= he did not want to do it – it was an error/mistake)

He broke the plate **on purpose**.

(= he wanted to do it and intended to do it)



There are two million **out of work**. (= without a job)

There were **at least** fifty people at the party. (= a minimum of 50)

## C In time or on time?

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.

Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always arrive **on time**. (= at 8.30)

Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always get there **in time**. (= before 8.30; I'm not late)

**In the end** we went home. (= finally, after a long period)

**At the end** of the book they get married.

The two men are **in business**. (= they are businessmen)

The two men are in Germany **on business**. (= they are there for work and not for a holiday)

I'll see you **in a moment**. (= very soon)

I can't speak to you **at the moment**. (= right now)



## Exercises

### 15.1 Complete these sentences with the correct preposition. Cover the opposite page first.

- |                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 I saw it ..... TV.            | 11 I went ..... the afternoon.      |
| 2 They came ..... car.          | 12 He came ..... foot.              |
| 3 They are all ..... strike.    | 13 The clothes are made ..... hand. |
| 4 He is here ..... business.    | 14 She broke it ..... accident.     |
| 5 I did it ..... my own.        | 15 He did it ..... purpose.         |
| 6 It was written ..... Goethe.  | 16 I'll see you ..... a moment.     |
| 7 We went ..... a walk.         | 17 I'm very busy ..... the moment.  |
| 8 I read it ..... a magazine.   | 18 It's very quiet ..... night.     |
| 9 He's ..... holiday this week. | 19 We met ..... chance.             |
| 10 She took it ..... mistake.   | 20 She's ..... least 25 years old.  |

### 15.2 Replace the underlined words with a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.

*Example:* The meeting was planned for 11 a.m. and we got here at 11 a.m. *on time*

- I wrote the reports without any help from anyone else.
- Did you get to the cinema before the film started?
- Thousands of people are without jobs in my town.
- She's making a phone call.
- I saw the advertisement when I was watching TV last night.
- He opened her letter because he thought it was addressed to him.
- It was a very long journey but finally we got there.
- He gets killed in the last scene of the film.
- I'm afraid I'm very busy right now.
- I saw her yesterday but I didn't plan to see her.

### 15.3 Respond to these questions with a negative answer and a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.

*Example:* Was it the man wearing the blue shirt?

*No, the man in the white shirt.*

- Did she hit him on purpose?  
.....
- Did they go by car?  
.....
- Are they here on holiday?  
.....
- Did you read about the accident in the newspaper?  
.....
- Did the others help him?  
.....
- Do you want to sit down and have a rest?  
.....

### 15.4 Look at the prepositional phrases on the opposite page again, and make a list of the ones which are not exact translations from your own language. Put the list in your pocket and carry it around with you. Test yourself as often as possible by thinking of a translation and/or explanation and/or example sentence for each one.

# 16 Phrasal verbs: form and meaning

## A Formation

A phrasal verb is a verb combined with an adverb or preposition, and occasionally with an adverb and preposition.

The price of petrol may **go up** (= increase) again next week.

He **fell over** (= fell to the ground) when he was running for the bus.

She's promised to **find out** (= learn/discover) the name of that new hotel.

Who is going to **look after** (= take care of) the children when she goes into hospital?

If you don't understand the meaning, you can **look it up** (= find the meaning in a book – in this case a dictionary).

He doesn't **get on with** (= have a good relationship with) his parents. (verb + adv + prep)

## B Meaning

Sometimes the meaning of a phrasal verb is very similar to the base verb, and the adverb just emphasises the meaning of the base verb, e.g. **stand up**, **wake up**, **save up**, **hurry up**, **sit down**, **lie down** and **send off** (e.g. a letter). On other occasions, the adverb adds the idea of completing the action of the verb, e.g. **drink up** (= finish your drink), **eat up** (= finish eating), **finish off**.

But more often, the meaning of a phrasal verb is very different from the base verb, e.g. **go up** doesn't mean the same as **go**; **look after** is different from **look**; and **look after** is also quite different from **look up**. An adverb or preposition can therefore change the meaning of a verb a great deal.

Here are some more examples of this type of phrasal verb.

It took her a long time to **get over** (= get better / recover from) her illness.

He told me to **carry on** (= continue) as far as the traffic lights.

I persuaded my wife to **give up** (= stop) smoking.

I can't make any sandwiches because we've **run out of** bread. (= the bread is finished / all used, so we have no bread)

In the end my next-door neighbour had to come and **put out** (= extinguish/stop) the fire.

## C Multiple meaning

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning, so you must be careful when you see a phrasal verb you think you know, or look up the meaning in a dictionary. In the examples marked \*, the phrasal verb is much more natural than the explanation in brackets.

It was hot so I decided to **\*take off** (= remove) my jacket.

I am always nervous when the plane **\*takes off** (= leaves the ground).

I don't think I'll **get through** (= finish) this report before five o'clock.

I think she'll **get through** (= pass) the exam.

I **\*picked up** the rubbish (= took it from the ground or a low place) and put it in the bin.

I had to go to the shop to **pick up** (= collect) my photos.

My alarm clock didn't **go off** (= ring) this morning.

The bomb could **go off** (= explode) at any minute.

The fish will **\*go off** (= go bad) if you don't put it in the fridge.



## Exercises

### 16.1 Fill the gaps to complete the phrasal verb in each sentence.

- 1 We went round the school and ..... up all the rubbish.
- 2 I don't think they ever ..... out how the man escaped.
- 3 This milk smells horrible; I think it has ..... off.
- 4 Do you think they'll ..... through the exam next week?
- 5 They had a bad relationship at first, but she ..... on very well with him now.
- 6 The price has ..... up three times this year.
- 7 I agreed to ..... after my sister's cat when she goes to France.
- 8 We can ..... on until the teacher tells us to stop.
- 9 Why didn't your alarm clock ..... off this morning?
- 10 I'm afraid this photocopier has ..... out of paper, but you can use the other one in my office.

### 16.2 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

- 1 It will take her a long time to get over .....
- 2 I'm afraid we've run out of .....
- 3 He had to look it up .....
- 4 I don't really get on with .....
- 5 She came in and took off .....
- 6 I had to put out .....
- 7 Who is going to look after .....
- 8 I went to the garage to pick up .....
- 9 The plane took off .....
- 10 My rent is going up .....

### 16.3 Look at the dictionary entry for *pick up*, and match the meanings with the sentences below.

**pick up** *v adv* 1 [T] (**pick sbdy./sthg. ↔ up**) to take hold of and lift up: *Pick up the box by the handles.* —see picture on page 669 2 [T] (**pick sthg. ↔ up**) to gather together; collect: *Please pick up all your toys when you've finished playing.* 3 [I] to improve: *Trade is picking up again.* 4 [T] (**pick sthg. ↔ up**) to gain; get: *Where did you pick up that book/your excellent English?* 5 [I; T] (**pick sthg. ↔ up**) to (cause to) start again: *to pick up (the conversation) where we left off* 6 [T] (**pick sbdy./sthg. ↔ up**) to collect; arrange to go and get: *Pick me up at the hotel. I'm going to pick up my coat from the cleaner's.* 7 [T] (**pick sbdy./sthg. ↔ up**) to collect in a vehicle 8 [T] (**pick sbdy. ↔ up**)

- 1 I said I would pick her up at the airport.
- 2 I picked up most of the rubbish that was on the floor.
- 3 Where did he pick up that strange accent?
- 4 Business was bad at the beginning of the year but it's picking up now.
- 5 I hurt my back when I tried to pick up that chair.

### 16.4 Write two sentences for each of these phrasal verbs to show their different meanings.

pick up    take off    go off    get through



# 17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style

Look at Unit 16 on the form and meaning of phrasal verbs before you do this unit.

## A Grammar: intransitive verbs

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive and do not need a direct object.

The children are **growing up**. (= getting older and more mature)

The doctor told me to **lie down** on the bed.

Don't wait out there. Please **come in**. (= enter)

I'm going to **stay in** (= stay at home) this evening.

With these verbs, you cannot put another word between the verb and adverb.

## B Grammar: transitive verbs

But many phrasal verbs are transitive and do need a direct object. With some of these, you can put the object between the verb and adverb:

Put on your shoes ✓      Turn on the TV ✓

Put your shoes on ✓      Turn the TV on ✓

If the object is a pronoun, it must go between verb and adverb.

Put them on ✓ [NOT ~~Put on them~~]      Turn it on ✓ [NOT ~~Turn on it~~]

*Note:* A dictionary will show you if you can put a word between the verb and adverb:

**turn** (obj) **[SWITCH]** /tɜːn, ˈtɜːrn/ v [always + adv/prep] to use a control to switch (a piece of equipment) on or off or to increase or reduce what it is producing • **Turn off/out the light.** [M] • **Who turned the telly on?** [M] • **I asked him to turn down the heating.** [M] • **Turn the sound up – I can't hear what they're saying.** [M] • **This programme's boring – shall I turn over** (= change the station) **to BBC?** [I] • **This sort of heater turns off** (= can be switched off) **at the mains.** [I] •

## C Style: formal or informal

Some phrasal verbs can be used equally in written or spoken English. Sometimes this is because there is no other easy way to express the meaning of the phrasal verb.

I always **wake up** early, even at weekends.

The car **broke down** (= went wrong; stopped working) on the motorway.

The plane couldn't **take off** because of bad weather.

Thieves **broke into** (= entered by force and illegally) the house and took money, credit cards and all my jewellery.

## D Informal phrasal verbs

But most phrasal verbs are informal and are more common in spoken English. In written English there is often a more formal word with the same meaning.

We had to **make up** a story. (= invent/create from our imagination)

I can usually **get by** on about £200 a week. (= manage)

You can **leave out** question 7. (= omit, i.e. you don't need to do question 7)

They've got a problem and they asked me to **sort it out**. (= resolve (it) / find a solution / do something about it)



## Exercises

These exercises also practise and test some of the phrasal verbs from Unit 16.

### 17.1 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

- 1 I'm not very good at making up .....
- 2 Could you lie down .....?
- 3 She asked me to turn on .....
- 4 Two men tried to break into .....
- 5 We have asked an engineer to come and sort out .....
- 6 Are you going to stay in .....?
- 7 Why did you leave out .....?
- 8 I'm afraid we broke down .....
- 9 Can you get by .....?
- 10 I grew up .....

### 17.2 Is it possible to separate the two parts of the phrasal verb in the sentences below? Look at the examples first, and use a dictionary to check your answers. (You can also check your answers in the answer key.)

*Examples:* I forgot to **get off** the bus. NO (get the bus off ✗)  
Why did he **take off** his trousers? YES (take his trousers off ✓)

- 1 She decided to **carry on** working.
- 2 He had to **put out** the fire.
- 3 Could you **turn on** the radio?
- 4 I had to **lie down** for a few minutes.
- 5 Could you go to the shop for me? We've just **run out** of coffee.
- 6 I think she **made up** that story.
- 7 I can't **get by** on the money my parents give me.
- 8 Children **grow up** very quickly these days.
- 9 I **turned off** the light when I went to bed.
- 10 Can we **leave out** this question?

### 17.3 Make these texts more informal by changing some of the verbs to phrasal verbs with the same meaning. (There are three in each text.)

- 1 The cost of living is increasing all the time and I find it quite difficult to manage on my salary. But I think I can probably continue for a few months.
- 2 She told us to enter, but then we had to remove our shoes and I had to extinguish my cigarette.
- 3 The teacher told the class to invent a story to go with the picture in their books, and then continue with exercise 4. She said they could all omit exercise 5.

### 17.4 There are many phrasal verbs in other units. Can you find:

- 1 three phrasal verbs in Unit 21 on page 46?
- 2 three phrasal verbs in Unit 47 on page 98?
- 3 three phrasal verbs in Unit 48 on page 100?
- 4 three phrasal verbs in Unit 56 on page 116?
- 5 three phrasal verbs in Unit 62 on page 128?
- 6 three phrasal verbs in Unit 75 on page 154?

# 18 Idioms and fixed expressions

## A What is an idiom?

An idiom is a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, and often difficult to understand from the individual words. Many of the phrasal verbs in Units 16 and 17 were idiomatic. Here are some more common idioms.

The teacher told us to **get a move on**. (= hurry; be quick)

My wife and I **take it in turns** to cook. (= I cook one day, she cooks the next, etc.)

I don't know the answer **off-hand**. (= without looking it up or asking someone)

It's not far. We can take a **short cut** (= a quick way) through the park.

I'm not very good at **small talk**. (= social talk; not about serious things)

I'm sorry I can't **make it** (= come) on Friday.

I asked her to **keep an eye on** (= watch / look after) my suitcase while I went to the toilet.

## B Fixed expressions

There are also expressions in English where the meaning is easy to understand, but the same idea in your language may need a completely different expression. In other words, if you just translate from your language, you may say something in English which is completely wrong. For this reason, you need to learn some expressions as idioms. For example:

A: What was wrong with the hotel?

B: Well, **for a start** it was next to a motorway and very noisy. And **to make matters worse**, there were factories on the other side of the road, which stayed open 24 hours a day.

It's not a problem **in the short term** (= at the moment) but **in the long term** (= for the longer future) we will need to think about it and probably spend some money on it.

## C Using idioms

Idioms are important but they can be difficult to use correctly.

- With many idioms, if you make just a small mistake, it can sound strange, funny, or badly wrong. For example: get a move; a small talk; put an eye on, off-hands, etc.
- Idioms often have special features: they may be informal or funny or ironic; they may only be used by certain people (e.g. young children, or teenagers, or elderly people); they may only appear in limited contexts; they have special grammar. For these reasons, you can often 'learn' the meaning of an idiom but then use it incorrectly. For example: After her husband died she was **down in the dumps**. (This idiom means 'sad and depressed' but is completely wrong here: the situation is too serious and the idiom is too informal.)

## D Easy idioms to use

Some idiomatic expressions are used on their own, or with just one or two other words. These are often the easiest to use.

A: Are you coming?

B: Yes, **hang on**. (= wait)

A: **What's up?** (= what's the matter?)

B: Nothing.

A: Can I borrow your dictionary?

B: Sure, **go ahead**. (= help yourself; take it; do it)

A: I don't know which one to choose.

B: Well, **make up your mind**. (= make a decision)

A: I'm really sorry but I've forgotten to bring the book you lent me.

B: That's OK. Never **mind**. (= it's OK, don't worry; it's not important)

## Exercises

- 18.1** It can be difficult to guess the meaning of an idiom, especially if you do not have the full context. Look at these examples (they are not presented on the opposite page).

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1 I feel like a drink.       | 4 She was pulling my leg when she said that.  |
| 2 They've gone for good.     | 5 I can probably make do with a smaller flat. |
| 3 I'm tied-up all afternoon. |   |

Here is a fuller context for each of the above idioms. Can you guess the meaning now?

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 A: Are you hungry?  |  |
| B: No, but I feel like a drink.   |  |
| 2 A: Do you think they'll ever come back to England?                                    |  |
| B: No, they've gone for good.   |  |
| 3 A: Do you have a lot of clients to see?   |  |
| B: Yes, I'm tied-up all afternoon.  |  |
| 4 A: Did she tell you there were no bathrooms in the hotel?                             |  |
| B: Yes. I think she was pulling my leg when she said that.                              |  |
| 5 A: Do you really need a large flat?   |  |
| B: Well, it's nice to have a big place, but I can probably make do with a smaller flat. |  |

- 18.2** Replace the underlined words in each dialogue with a suitable idiomatic expression from the opposite page. (But try to answer the questions before looking at the opposite page.) Can you think of similar expressions in your own language?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 A: Is Rebecca here?                        | 5 A: What's <u>the matter</u> ?                    |
| B: Yes, <u>wait a minute</u> . I'll get her. | B: Nothing. Why?                                   |
| 2 A: Does it take long to get there?         | 6 A: <u>Look after</u> my things for a minute?     |
| B: No, I know a <u>quick way</u> .           | B: Yeah, sure.                                     |
| 3 A: Could I borrow this for a minute?       | 7 A: Do we have to go now?                         |
| B: Yes, <u>take it</u> .                     | B: Yes, <u>hurry up</u> , otherwise we'll be late. |
| 4 A: Sorry I can't <u>come</u> on Thursday.  | 8 A: You'll have to <u>decide</u> soon.            |
| B: That's OK. <u>Don't worry</u> .           | B: Yes I know, but it's very difficult.            |

- 18.3** Complete the expressions in these sentences.

- It wasn't a very successful holiday. For a ..... the beach was a long way from our hotel; then to make ..... worse, the car broke down on the third day and we had to walk to the beach. the rest of the time.
- We take it in ..... to look after the dog.
- She asked me about the times of the trains but I couldn't tell her off-.....
- I don't enjoy parties where you just stand around and make ..... talk with lots of people you don't know.
- We can probably make ..... with a three-roomed flat for the moment, but in the long ..... we will have to think about moving into a bigger place.

- 18.4** Can you find at least three idiomatic expressions in this text. What do they mean?

I went to stay with my cousin last week. We are the same age but have very little in common: he loves sport and I hate it; I'm mad about music and he's not interested in it. As you can imagine, we didn't have a very good time together, and by about Thursday we were really getting on each other's nerves, so I decided to come home.

# 19 Make, do, have, take

There are many common expressions with these verbs, and often they are different in other languages, so you need to learn them.

## A Things we make

a mistake (= an error)  
a meal (= prepare and cook something to eat)  
money (= become rich)  
friends  
a decision  
  
a noise  
progress (U) (= improvement)

He **made** a few **mistakes** in the exam.  
I had to **make** my own **dinner** last night.

He **made** a lot of **money** when he worked in America.  
It's not always easy to **make friends** in a foreign country.  
We can have the red ones or the green ones, but we must **make a decision** (choose the red or green) before 6 p.m.  
I can't work when the children **make** a lot of **noise**.  
Her English is good now; she has **made** a lot of **progress**.

## B Things we do

homework (U)  
the housework (U) (= cleaning)  
subjects (= study subjects)  
a course  
the shopping (= buy food)  
research (U) (= detailed study in one subject)  
(someone) a favour (= do something to help someone)  
something/anything/nothing

I forgot to **do** my English **homework** last night.  
My mother **does** all the **housework** in our house.  
Did you **do** English at school?  
I **did** a one-week **course** in word processing.  
I always **do** the **shopping** at the weekend.  
He's **doing** **research** in physics at Rome University.

I don't have any coffee. Could you **do me a favour** and lend me some?  
I didn't **do anything** last night. That boy has **done nothing** all day

## C Things we have

a rest (= relax / do nothing)  
food (= eat food) and drink  
a drink (= drink something)  
a bath/shower  
a party  
a baby (= be pregnant or give birth)  
a (nice/great/terrible) time

They **had** a long **rest** after the game.  
I **had** steak but Paul just **had** a **cup of tea**.  
Let's **have** a **drink** before dinner.  
I always **have** a **bath** when I get up.  
I'm **having** a **party** for my birthday.  
Mary is **having** a **baby** next month.  
We **had** a very nice **time** in Switzerland last year.

## D Things we take

an exam (also 'do an exam')  
a photo  
a decision (also 'make')  
a shower (also 'have')  
a bus/train/plane/taxi

I'm going to **take** four **exams** next month.  
She **took** lots of **photos** on holiday.  
I'm not very good at **taking** **decisions**.  
I'm just going to **take** a **shower** before lunch.  
We were late, so we **took** a **taxi** to the airport.

*Note:* Notice the use of **be + adjective** [NOT ~~have + noun~~] in these expressions:

She was **lucky**    I'm **hungry** (= I want to eat)    I'm **thirsty** (= I want a drink)



## Exercises

**19.1** Cross out the incorrect verbs in these sentences. Both verbs may be correct.

- 1 I couldn't do/make the homework last night.
- 2 She's going to make/have a party for her birthday.
- 3 Did he do/make many mistakes?
- 4 I often make/do the housework.
- 5 Did you make/take many photos?
- 6 When do you take/do your next exam?
- 7 I want to do/make a course in English.
- 8 We must take/make a decision soon.
- 9 He is doing/making research in chemistry.
- 10 They did/made a lot of noise during the party.

**19.2** Replace the underlined word(s) with a suitable word or expression from the opposite page.

*Example:* I want to eat something. I'm hungry

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Let's <u>drink something</u> .              | 6 I usually <u>buy my food</u> on Saturday morning.                               |
| 2 I'm going to <u>prepare</u> lunch tomorrow. | 7 They both want to <u>become rich</u> .  |
| 3 I'll <u>clean the house</u> at the weekend. | 8 When are they going to <u>decide</u> ?  |
| 4 I <u>ate</u> a pizza in the restaurant.     | 9 I think she <u>enjoyed herself</u> last night.                                  |
| 5 I <u>want a drink</u> .                     | 10 She is definitely <u>improving</u> . How many driving lessons has she had now? |

**19.3** Look at the four split pictures. Describe what happened using at least two expressions from the opposite page in each one. Look at the example first.



Last Friday evening I had a party but the next-door neighbour complained and said we were making too much noise.



1



2



3

**19.4** Test yourself. Without looking at the opposite page, write down six things you can:

*Examples:*

make ...a mistake...      do ...the housework...      have ...a rest...

## 20 Give, keep, break, catch, see

These common verbs have many different meanings (some of them in other parts of this book). This unit looks at some important meanings of these verbs, and in some cases they combine with specific nouns, e.g. give someone a ring, break the law, etc. You can learn these as expressions.

### A Give

I'll give you a **ring** this evening. (= phone you this evening)

Could you give me a **hand**? (= help me)

Please give **my regards** to Paul. (= please say 'hello' to him from me) *or*

If you see Paul, please give **him my regards**.

### B Keep

The coat will **keep** you **dry**; the gloves will **keep** your hands **warm**. (= the coat/gloves will help you to stay dry/warm) [keep + noun/pronoun + adjective]

I **keep** losing my glasses; I **keep** getting backache. (= I lose my glasses / get backache again and again) [keep + -ing]

Please **keep in touch**. (= don't forget to stay in contact, e.g. phone or write to me sometimes)

The school **keeps** a **record** (= clear written information) of the number of times that students are absent.

### C Break

He **broke** the world record again. (= created a new record, e.g. He ran the 100 metres in 9.85 seconds, which is 0.1 seconds faster than anyone else.)

Most people **break** the law at some point in their life. (= do something wrong / against the law)

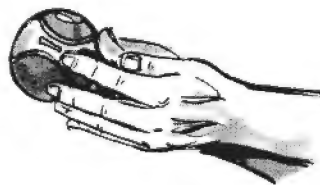
In my first lesson with a new class, I usually do something to **break** the ice. (= to make people feel more relaxed when they first meet strangers)

### D Catch

We can **catch** a **bus** down the road. (= take a bus/travel by bus)

How did you **catch** that cold? (= get that cold/virus)

**Catch** the ball and throw it to James.



### E See

A: This part of the picture doesn't look right compared with the other part.

B: Yes, I **see** **what you mean**. (= I understand what you are saying)

A: Do you think we need to hire a car?

B: I don't know. I'll **see** (= I'll ask and find out) what the others say.

I **don't/can't see** the **point** of practising six hours a day. (= I don't understand the reason for practising six hours a day; I think it's crazy)

## Exercises

- 20.1** Match the nouns on the right with the verbs on the left to form common word partnerships. (There is one noun you need to use twice.)

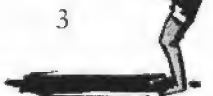
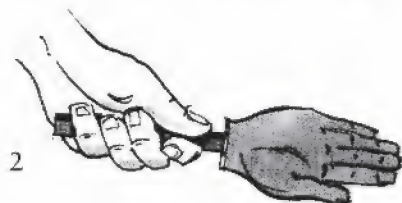
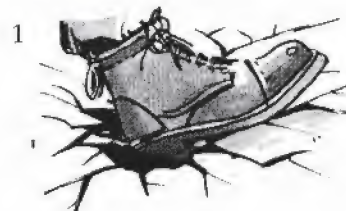
break (2)	keep (2)
catch (3)	give (2)

the ball	the law	a cold
me a hand	a bus	in touch
a record	my regards to ...	

- 20.2** Fill the gaps with the correct verb in these sentences.

- I don't ..... the point of spending a lot of money on tickets when we can watch the concert on television.
- These boots should ..... your feet warm and dry.
- Please ..... my regards to your mother when you go back home.
- Before we make a decision, let's ..... what Patricia says.
- If it's too far to walk, we can ..... a bus.
- I don't know what the problem is, but I ..... getting headaches.
- When I meet people on holiday I always promise to ..... in touch, but I never do.
- I didn't really enjoy the holiday because I ..... a cold on the second day and spent most of the week sneezing and blowing my nose.
- When you organise a conference or a course, I think you need something to ..... the ice, otherwise people are a bit nervous of each other.
- I don't ..... the point of spending a lot of money on children's clothes because they only last for a few months and then they're too small.

- 20.3** What expressions are represented by these pictures? Can you complete the sentences below? Look at the example first.



- How did you .....?
- He agreed to .....
- I decided to .....
- He finally .....

- 20.4** Look through the key expressions in bold on the opposite page again. Can you translate these expressions into your own language? If so, do you use the same verb in your own language? Concentrate on the ones that are different.



## 21 Get: uses and expressions

### A Meanings

Get is an informal word, so it is more common in spoken English than written English. It has many meanings. Here are some of the basic ones.

receive	I got a letter this morning. You get a certificate at the end of the course.
obtain (sometimes = buy)	She's trying to get a new job. Where did you get those shoes?
become (= a change in state)	It gets dark very early at this time of year. My hands are getting cold.
arrive	When did you get here? I'll phone when I get home.
fetch	Could you get the books from the cupboard? She went to get the children from school.

### B 'Get' + past participle

We sometimes use the more informal 'get' + past participle:

get married (= marry)	She got married in France.
get divorced (= divorce)	They got divorced last year. (= the marriage has ended officially)
get dressed (= dress)	I got dressed quickly and went out.
get undressed (= undress)	He got undressed and got into bed.
get changed (= change clothes)	When I got home I went to my room and got changed.
get lost (= lose one's way)	I got lost on my way to the station.

### C Common collocations

Get is so common with certain words (often describing a change of state) that it is a good idea to learn them as expressions.

It's getting hot/cold	I'm getting hot/cold
dark/light	tired
late	better/worse
better/worse	hungry
busy	ready (= preparing)

*Note:* The expression **getting better** at something can describe an improvement in your ability to do something, e.g. I'm getting better at English/swimming; it also describes an improvement in your health, e.g. She was very ill but she's **getting better** now. (≠ **getting worse**)

### D Phrasal verbs and special expressions with 'get'

I **get on** very well with my sister. (= I have a very good relationship with my sister)

How are you **getting on**? (a) (= a general question: how is life?)

(b) (= what progress are you making, e.g. with your English?)

It's difficult to **get to know** people in a foreign country. (= meet people and make friends)

I want to **get rid of** all my old records. (= sell them or throw them away or give them away)

My alarm wakes me up at 7 a.m., but I don't usually **get up** (= get out of bed) until 7.15.



## Exercises

### 21.1 Write a synonym for *get* in each of these sentences.

- 1 Where can I get something to eat round here?
- 2 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute.
- 3 What time did they get here last night?
- 4 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs.
- 5 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full.
- 6 We normally get five weeks' holiday.
- 7 This book is getting quite interesting.
- 8 I must get some stamps before I go home.
- 9 He sent the letter last week but I didn't get it until yesterday.
- 10 Do they often get here early?

### 21.2 Write appropriate sentences using *I'm getting + adjective* or *it's getting + adjective*.

- 1 A: .....  
B: Yes it is. I'll turn on the heating.
- 2 A: .....  
B: OK, let's have something to eat, then.
- 3 A: .....  
B: Yes me too. I'll open the window.
- 4 A: .....  
B: Yes it is. I think I'll go to bed.
- 5 A: .....  
B: Yes. I'll put the lights on.
- 6 A: .....  
B: No you're not. You're getting much better. You understand a lot now.

### 21.3 Rewrite each of these sentences using an expression with *get*. The meaning must stay the same.

- 1 They're preparing to go out.  
They're .....
- 2 I had to put on my clothes very quickly.  
I had to .....
- 3 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?  
How do you .....?
- 4 I have a good relationship with my boss.  
I .....
- 5 We're going to throw away most of these chairs.  
We're going to .....
- 6 Someone told me you're doing a new course. How's it going?  
Someone told me you're doing a new course. ....?

### 21.4 Write down examples of 'get' that you see or hear, then try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to get (= obtain) an idea of the ways in which this important word is used in English.

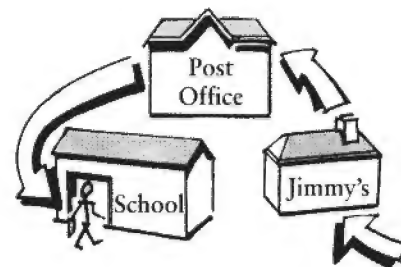
## 22 Go: uses and expressions

### A Come vs. go

Go usually expresses a movement away from the position the speaker is in now; **come** expresses a movement towards the speaker.

Imagine you are at school. The time is 9.30 a.m.

I had to **go** to Jimmy's to pick up some books; then I **went** to the post office before I **came** to school.



Sometimes the speaker is in one place but imagines that they are already in another place. When Thomas meets Marta in Spain, he invites her to Switzerland. He says:

'Would you like to **come** and visit me in Bern?' (He imagines he is there and so her movement is towards him.)

We can also imagine that the listener is in a different place. Talking to Marta, Thomas says: 'I'll **come** to your flat at 7.30 p.m.' (She will be at home, so his movement is towards her.)

*Note:* It is a similar difference between **bring** and **take**:

I think I'll **take** my bike to the match and Peter can **bring** it back here tomorrow.

### B Different meanings of 'go'

- When you leave a place in order to do an activity, you often express it either with **go + -ing noun** or **go (out) + for a + noun**. Here are some common examples:

We could go shopping.	She wants to go (out) for a walk.
riding (on horses).	(out) for a drink.
They went sightseeing.	Let's go (out) for a drive.
swimming (also 'for a swim').	(out) for a meal.

- Go is followed by certain adjectives to describe a change in state (usually to a worse state) with the meaning 'become' (**get** is also used with some adjectives).

My brother's hair is **going** grey, and my father is **going** bald. (= losing all his hair)

The company **went** bankrupt last year. (= lost all its money and had to stop operating)

My grandmother is **going** deaf. (deaf = cannot hear)

He'll go **mad** (= get very angry *informal*) if you wear his jacket.

- It is often used to describe the speed something is travelling (also **do**):

We were **going** about 80 kph when the accident happened.

- When you want to say/ask if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere:

Does this bus **go** to (= take me to) the National Gallery?

I don't think this road **goes** to (= leads to) the station.

### C Expressions

I've never tried bungee jumping but I'd love to **have a go**. (= try it)

**How's it going?** (= How are you? *informal*) And you can use the same question if you want to know if something is easy, difficult, enjoyable, etc. For example, if you are doing an exercise in class, your teacher may ask: **How's it going?** (also **How are you getting on?**)

It's my **go** (also it's my **turn**). This expression is used in games such as chess or monopoly where you move from one player to another, then back.

## Exercises

- 22.1** Complete the dialogue with suitable forms of these verbs: *come, go, bring, take*. (There are two verbs that can be used in one of the answers.)
- A: What time are you <sup>(1)</sup>..... to Jim's party this evening?  
 B: I'm not sure because Christopher is <sup>(2)</sup>..... here first, and then we'll <sup>(3)</sup>..... together.  
 A: Right. Do you know what's happening about the music?  
 B: Yeah. I'm going to <sup>(4)</sup>..... some CDs, and Sue is <sup>(5)</sup>..... her guitar. I'll probably leave quite early though, so do you think you could <sup>(6)</sup>..... my CDs back here tomorrow?  
 A: Yeah sure. What time?  
 B: Well, I want to <sup>(7)</sup>..... to the shops in the morning. Could you <sup>(8)</sup>..... before ten?  
 A: No problem.
- 22.2** Replace the underlined words and expressions. The meaning must stay the same.
- 1 It's hard to say exactly but I think the lorry was going about 60 kph.
  - 2 Some people aren't interested in scuba diving but I've always wanted to have a go.
  - 3 Come on John, it's your go.
  - 4 Hi Sue. How's it going?
  - 5 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station?
  - 6 A: How's it going?  
 B: Not bad. We've nearly finished the first exercise.
- 22.3** Complete these sentences with an *-ing noun* (e.g. riding), or *for a + noun* (e.g. for a walk).
- 1 I went ..... this morning and bought some books and clothes.
  - 2 We didn't have much food in the house so we decided to go out .....
  - 3 Why don't we go ..... in that nice new bar near the square?
  - 4 I wanted to go ..... because I had never been to Venice before, but the others wanted to hire a car and go ..... in the countryside.
  - 5 The pool was at the end of the road, so we decided to go .....
  - 6 There are some stables near where we live with about a dozen horses, and we go ..... most weekends.
- 22.4** Complete these sentences with a suitable word. Use a dictionary to help you.
- 1 You can wear a hearing aid if you go .....
  - 2 If business doesn't improve they could go .....
  - 3 You can dye (= change the colour of) your hair if you start going .....
  - 4 And you can wear a wig if you go .....
  - 5 If she sees the dog destroying her flowers, she'll go .....
- 22.5** Look back at the different meanings of *go* (as verb and noun) on the opposite page. Translate these meanings into your own language. How many meanings use the word *for go* in your language? How many are expressed with a different word or in a different way? Compare with someone who speaks the same language if possible.
- 22.6** Now look up *go* in a good English dictionary. You will find many meanings (including phrasal verbs and idioms), but just concentrate on two or three that you think may be useful to you. Try to learn them. Write down the meanings with example sentences in your notebook. Write a translation as well if you want.

## 23 Apologies, excuses, and thanks

### A Apologies (= saying sorry)

We can apologise (= say sorry) in different ways in different situations:

	<i>Situation</i>
(I'm) sorry. I beg your pardon ( <i>fm</i> l).	A general apology, e.g. you close the door in someone's face, interrupt someone, etc.
I'm very/terribly/so/awfully sorry.	A stronger apology, e.g. you step on someone's foot or take their coat by mistake.
I'm very/really sorry I'm late.	When you are late for an appointment.
Sorry to keep you waiting. I won't be long. (= I will talk to you soon)	Someone is waiting to see you and you are busy, e.g. with someone else.

*Note:* In formal situations (especially in writing), we often use **apologise** and **apology**:  
I must apologise for (being late). I would like to apologise for (the delay. Unfortunately, ...)  
Please accept our apologies for the mistakes in your order. We tried to ...

### B Excuses and promises

If the situation is quite important we usually add an explanation or **excuse** after the apology. An excuse is the reason for the apology, which may or may not be true. (If it is not true, it should still be a reason that people will believe.) Here are some common excuses:

I'm sorry I'm late but I was **delayed/held up** at the airport.  
I'm sorry I'm late, but my train was **cancelled**. (= the train was timetabled but did not run)

*Note:* To **be/get delayed** or **be/get held up** (*infml*) both mean to be late because of a problem that is out of your control.

If you are responsible for a problem, you can offer or promise to do something about it.

I'm sorry about the mess in here. I'll **clear it up**. (= I'll tidy it up)  
I'm sorry about the confusion, but I'll **sort it out**. (= I will solve the problems)

### C Reassuring people

When people apologise to us, it is very common to say something to **reassure** them (= tell them that 'everything is OK'), and that we are not angry. These are all common expressions. Note that we often use two of them to emphasise the fact that 'it's OK'.

A: I'm sorry I'm late. B: **That's OK. Don't worry.** or **Never mind. It doesn't matter.** or **That's OK. No problem.**

### D Thanks

These are the most common ways of thanking people in everyday situations:

A: Here's your pen. B: Oh, **thank you / thanks** (very much).  
A: I'll answer that. B: Oh, **thanks a lot** (*infml*).  
A: I'll post those letters for you. B: Oh, thank you. **That's very kind of you.**

If you go to someone's house for dinner, or stay with people in an English-speaking country, you will need to thank them for their **hospitality** (= when people are kind and friendly towards their guests). You could say something like this:

**Thank you very much for inviting me.** It's been a lovely evening.  
**Thank you very much for everything.** You've been very kind.



## Exercises

**23.1** The opposite page includes a number of expressions, or groups of words that often appear together. How many can you remember? Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.

- 1 A: I'm ..... sorry.  
B: That's OK.
- 2 A: I'm sorry ..... late. I'm afraid I got ..... up.  
B: That's OK. No .....
- 3 A: Sorry to ..... you waiting.  
B: That's OK. Never .....
- 4 A: I'll carry your bags for you.  
B: Oh, thank you. That's very ..... of you.
- 5 A: I must ..... for missing the meeting.  
B: That's OK. It doesn't .....
- 6 A: I'm busy right now but I won't be .....  
B: ..... mind. I'll come back later.
- 7 A: I ..... your pardon.  
B: It's OK. Don't .....
- 8 A: I think the boss has got a real problem.  
B: Yes, but don't worry, he'll ..... it out.

**23.2** What could you say in these situations? (If it is an apology, give an explanation/excuse if you think it is necessary.)

- 1 You get on a bus at the same time as another person and he/she almost falls over.  
.....
- 2 You arrange to meet some friends in the centre of town but you are twenty minutes late.  
.....
- 3 You are pushing your car into a side road and a stranger offers to help you.  
.....
- 4 A friend borrows a pen from you and then loses it. When they apologise, you want to reassure them.  
.....
- 5 Some English friends invite you to dinner. How could you thank them as you leave their house at the end of the evening?  
.....
- 6 A colleague at work tells you that a number of files are in a mess: papers are all in the wrong order and he doesn't know what to do. When he apologises to you for this mess, how can you reassure him, and what offer can you make?  
.....
- 7 You are unable to go to a meeting you arranged with a client at their office, and now you must write to them to explain.  
.....
- 8 Your company promised to send some information about new products to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and must now write to explain.  
.....

**23.3** Do you apologise, reassure, explain and thank people in similar ways in your own language? Read the left-hand page again and think about any differences between English and your language.

# 24 Requests, invitations and suggestions

## A Requests and replies

We use different expressions to introduce a request – it depends who we are talking to, and the 'size' of the request ('big' or 'small'). These are some of the most common (the 'small' requests first), with suitable positive and negative replies.

A: Could you pass me the salt?

B: Yes, sure.

A: Could I (possibly) borrow your dictionary?

B: Yes, of course. *or* Yes, help yourself (= yes, take it) *or* Go ahead.

A: Do you think you could possibly lend me two or three pounds?

B: Yes sure *or* I'm afraid I can't.

I'm afraid not.

I wish I could but, / I'm sorry but,

I haven't any money  
on me at all.

A: I was wondering if I could (possibly) leave work half an hour early today. *or* Would you mind if I left work ...

B: Yeah, no problem. *or* Well I'd rather you didn't (actually), because ...

## B Invitations and replies



A: Would you like to go out this evening?

B: Yeah great / lovely / I'd love to *or* I'm sorry I can't.



A: We're going to a restaurant and we were wondering if you'd like to come with us?

B: I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't.

Oh, I'm afraid I have to look after my younger sister.



## C Suggestions and replies

Here are some common ways of asking for and making **suggestions** (= ideas for things to do/say/make, etc.) and suitable replies.

*Asking for suggestions*

What shall we do tonight? Where shall we go this evening?

*Making suggestions*

How about (or what about) going to the cinema? (*Note: How/What about + -ing*)

We could go to the leisure centre and watch the basketball.

Why don't we try that new club in the main square?

*Responding*

Yeah, great / fine / OK / that's a good idea.

Yeah, if you like. (= if you want to go, then I am happy to go)

Yes, I don't mind. (= I have no preference)

I think I'd rather (= I would prefer to) go out for a meal.

*Note:* In this situation, learners often say 'it's the same for me'. We don't use this expression in English; we say I don't mind.

## Exercises

### 24.1 Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.

- A: Do you like to go out this evening?  
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.  
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about go to see a film?  
B: No, actually I think I'd rather to stay at home and do my homework.  
A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?  
B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
A: OK. How about tomorrow evening, then?  
B: Yeah good.  
A: Great. What film shall we go to?  
B: For me it's the same.

### 24.2 Complete these dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 A: Could you ..... open that window? It's very hot in here.  
B: Yeah, .....
- 2 A: Clive and Sally are here at the moment and we were ..... if you'd like to come over and join us for a meal this evening?  
B: Yes, I'd .....
- 3 A: What ..... we do this evening?  
B: I don't know really. Any ideas?  
A: Why ..... go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.  
B: Yeah, that's a .....
- 4 A: OK. Where ..... we go on Saturday?  
B: ..... going to the beach if the weather is good?  
A: Yeah. Or we ..... try that new sports centre just outside town.  
B: Mmm. I think I'd ..... go to the beach.  
A: Yeah OK, if you .....
- 5 A: What ..... you like to do this weekend?  
B: I don't ..... You decide.

### 24.3 Here are eight requests, invitations or suggestions. Respond to each one as fast as you can with a suitable reply. If possible, do this activity with someone else: one of you asks the questions, the other answers.

- 1 Could I borrow a pen for a minute?
- 2 Do you think you could post a letter for me?
- 3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me?
- 4 Would you like to go out this evening?
- 5 I've got some tickets for a concert of classical music and I was wondering if you'd like to go with me?
- 6 How about going to a football match at the weekend?
- 7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English for an hour?
- 8 We could invite some other people from our English class to meet us as well.

### 24.4 There will be many situations when you make requests, invitations and suggestions in your own language, and respond to the requests, invitations and suggestions of others. Try using English expressions in place of your first language. If your friends don't understand, you can teach them a bit of English.

## 25 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

### A Asking someone for their opinion

What do you think of his new book?  
How do you feel about working with the others?  
What are your feelings (pl) about the change in the timetable?  
What's your honest opinion of that painting?

### B Giving your opinion

I think Charles had the best idea.  
I don't think he knew very much about the subject.  
Personally, I think his first book is terrible.  
In my opinion we should sell the old car and buy a new one.  
As far as I'm concerned the whole evening was a waste of time.

Note:

- If you want to say something isn't a good idea you make 'think' negative:  
I don't think it's a good idea. [NOT I think it's not a good idea.]
- Personally and As far as I'm concerned are more common in spoken English.
- As far as I'm concerned can mean, 'this is my opinion and I don't care what others think'.

### C Giving the opinion of others

According to one of the journalists on television (= in the opinion of this journalist), the Prime Minister knew nothing about it.  
The newspaper says that the Prime Minister knew weeks ago. (Note: we still use the verb say when referring to a written opinion)

### D Agreeing with someone

We often agree by continuing with the same opinion or adding to it.  
A: I think we should concentrate on this one project.  
B: Yes, it's better to do one thing well than two things badly.  
But if we want to make it clear we agree, we can use these expressions:  
Yes, I agree (with you). (Note: agree is a verb in English. [NOT I am agree])  
Yes, I think you're right.

### E Disagreeing with someone

It is very common in English to begin with a short expression of agreement, and then give a different opinion. Here are some expressions used to introduce the disagreement:

Yes, perhaps/maybe/possibly,	but don't you think ...
that's true,	but I'm not sure that ...
you could be right	but don't forget ...

If you disagree strongly with someone you can say: I'm afraid I totally disagree (with you).

Note: When we want to disagree but not completely, we can use these phrases:

Yes, I partly agree (with you), but ...  
I agree to some extent / a certain extent, but ...



## Exercises

**25.1** Complete these sentences in at least three different ways to ask people their opinion.

- 1 ..... the proposed changes?
- 2 ..... the new building?
- 3 ..... the transport system?
- 4 ..... the new divorce law?
- 5 ..... the government's decision to make parents responsible?

**25.2** Fill the gaps with the correct word. (One word only.)

- 1 A: What did you think ..... it?  
B: Well, ..... I didn't like it.
- 2 ..... to the radio, we won't know the result until tomorrow morning.
- 3 I agreed with him to a certain .....
- 4 As far as I'm ....., we need to buy a new photocopier immediately.
- 5 I'm afraid I ..... disagree with you.

**25.3** Rewrite these sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. The meaning must stay the same.

- 1 In my opinion you can't learn a language in three months.  
.....
- 2 I think the club needs to buy new players.  
.....
- 3 Yes, I think you're right.  
.....
- 4 According to the newspaper, terrorists started the fire.  
.....
- 5 I agree with her to some extent.  
.....

**25.4** Continue these short conversations. You can either agree with the point of view and add to the argument; or introduce a different point of view. If you introduce a different point of view, remember to start with a short expression of agreement first.

- 1 A: A lot of women are quite happy to stay at home and be housewives.  
B: .....
- 2 A: The state shouldn't give money to people who don't want to work.  
B: .....
- 3 A: People from developing countries need all the help we can give them.  
B: .....
- 4 A: We should think about legalising cannabis.  
B: .....
- 5 A: It can be very dangerous if people become too nationalistic.  
B: .....

## 26 Specific situations and special occasions

You will know many of these expressions but may not be sure exactly how they are used.

### A Greetings: 'hello'

- Hi/Hello.** How are you? This is the normal greeting when you meet someone you know. (also: **How's it going?** *informal*) The usual reply is: **Fine thanks.** **And you?** Or possibly, **Not bad.** **How about you?**
- Good morning, good afternoon, good evening** These expressions are used at different times of the day (most people say **Good morning** until lunchtime). British people do not usually say **Good day**, but Australians do.
- How do you do?** For formal situations when you meet someone for the first time. The reply can be the same (How do you do?) or **Pleased/nice to meet you.**

### B Farewells: 'goodbye'

- Nice to meet you.** (Nice to have met you.) For formal situations, when you say goodbye to someone you have just met for the first time.
- Bye. See you later.** If you plan to see someone you know later the same day.
- Bye. See you soon.** When you know you will see them again, but have no specific plans to meet them.
- Goodnight** When you say goodbye to someone late at night, or if you (or they) are going to bed.
- A: Have a nice weekend.** The statement and reply when you say goodbye to a colleague/
- B: Yes. Same to you.** friend at work, school or college on Friday afternoon.

### C Happy occasions and celebrations

- Happy Birthday** To someone on his/her birthday. You can also say **Many Happy Returns**, and write either expression in a birthday card.
- Happy/Merry Christmas** To someone just before or on Christmas Day. You also write this in a card.
- Happy New Year** To someone at the beginning of the year.
- Congratulations** To someone who has just done something, e.g. passed an exam or got a job. In many situations we can also say **Well done.**

### D Special conventions

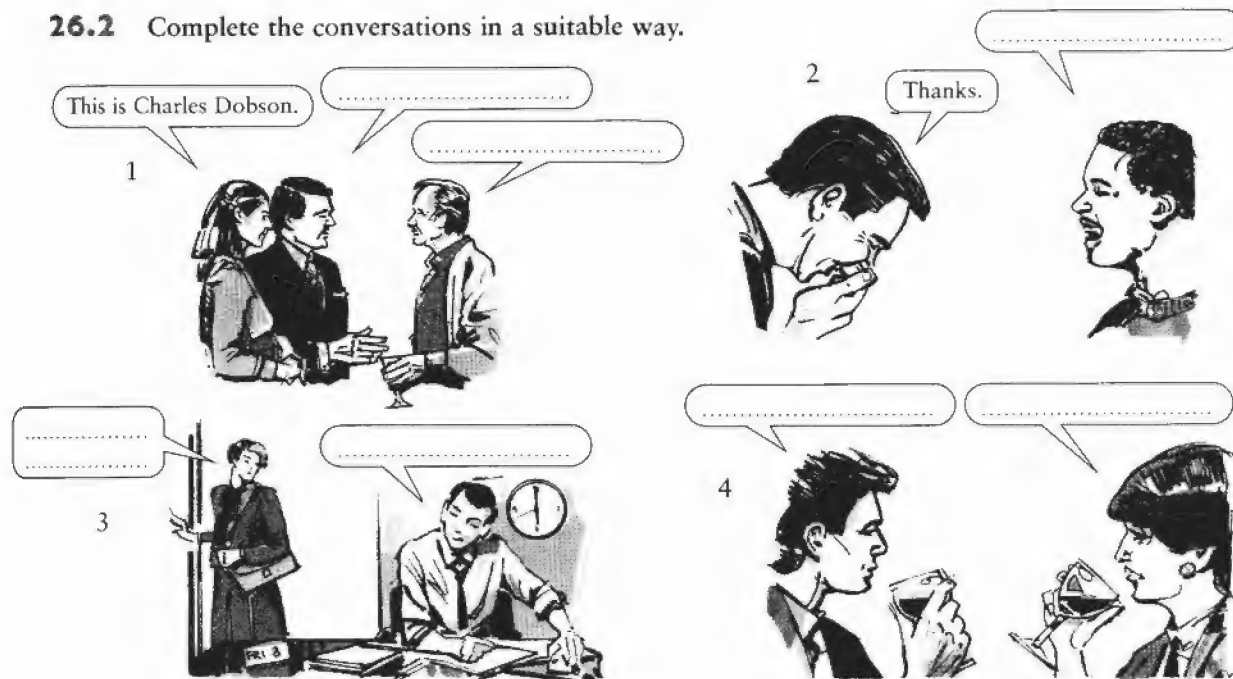
- Excuse me** (a) To get someone's attention (b) When you want to get past, e.g. in a crowded place (c) To tell others you are going to leave the room.
- Sorry** (a) To say **sorry**, e.g. you stand on someone's foot. You could also say **I beg your pardon** in this situation. And (b) When you want someone to repeat what they said.
- Cheers** To express good wishes when you have a drink with other people. Informally it can also mean 'goodbye' (also **cheerio**) and 'thank you'.
- Good luck** To wish someone well before a difficult situation, e.g. a job interview, an exam, a driving test, etc.
- Bless you** To someone when they sneeze. They can reply by saying **Thank you.**
- Note:* In English there is no special expression when people start eating. If you want to say something, you can use the French expression **Bon appetit**, but it is not common.

## Exercises

### 26.1 What message could you say on the phone or write in a card to these people?

- 1 A friend. Next week is 25 December.
- 2 A friend who is 21 tomorrow.
- 3 A friend on January 1st or soon after.
- 4 A very good friend who has just passed some important exams.
- 5 A friend who is going to take his driving test in three days' time.
- 6 A friend you know you are going to meet in the next few days/weeks.

### 26.2 Complete the conversations in a suitable way.



### 26.3 What could you say in these situations?

- 1 You are in a meeting. Someone enters the room and says you have an important telephone call. What do you say as you leave?
- 2 Someone says something to you but you didn't hear all of it. What do you say?
- 3 You met a new business client for the first time fifteen minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say?
- 4 You are in a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them?
- 5 You are staying with some English friends. What do you say to them when you leave the room in the evening to go to bed?
- 6 You are in the street. A woman walks past you and at the same time something falls out of her bag. She has her back to you. What do you say?
- 7 A friend tells you they have just won a competition.
- 8 Another friend is going for a job interview this afternoon.

### 26.4 Here are some more special expressions. When do we use them and do you have equivalent expressions in your own language?

hard luck      say 'cheese'      watch out      I've no idea

## 27 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns

### A Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns (e.g. information):

- don't have a plural form (information~~s~~); <sup>is</sup>
- are used with a singular verb (the information ~~are~~); <sup>is</sup>
- cannot be used with the indefinite article 'a/an'. (I want ~~a~~ <sup>some</sup> information)

These uncountable nouns are often countable in other languages. Look at them carefully.

He refused to give me more **information** about the hotel.

She gave me lots of **advice** about the best dictionary to buy.

We are going to sell all the **furniture**. (= tables, chairs, armchairs, desks, etc.)

My **knowledge** of German is very limited.

You need a lot of **equipment** for camping (e.g. tent, sleeping bag, things for cooking, etc.)

She is making good **progress** in her English. (= her English is improving / getting better)

We had fabulous **weather** in Italy.

The teacher gave us a lot of **homework** last night.

I never take much **luggage** (= bags and suitcases) when I go on holiday.

### B In dictionaries

Countable nouns are usually shown with a (C) after them; uncountable nouns have (U) after them; and some nouns can be countable with one meaning and uncountable in another.

book (C)	The books are on the table.
housework (U)	I did a lot of housework this morning.
hair (U)	My hair is getting very long and untidy. I need to get it cut.
hair (C)	There is a hair on my dinner plate.

### C Plural nouns

Plural nouns (e.g. trousers):

- only have a plural form and cannot be used with 'a/an' (~~a trouser~~ trousers)
- usually have a plural verb (the trousers ~~is~~ ...) <sup>are</sup>
- some plural nouns can be made singular using a pair of, e.g. a pair of trousers/sunglasses

Other words which are usually plural include:

I bought a pair of **jeans** yesterday.

These **shorts** are too long.

I bought a new pair of **pyjamas** when I went into hospital.

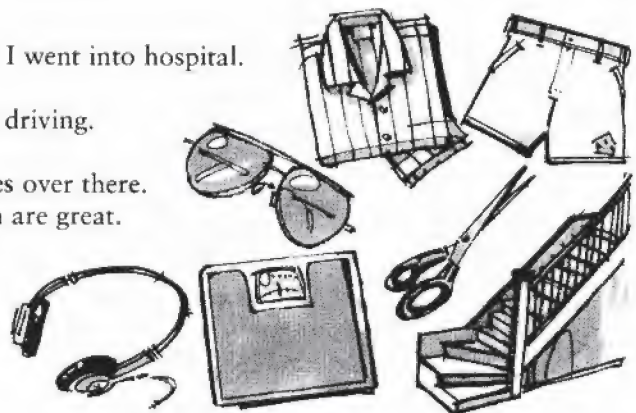
The **scissors** are on the table.

When it's sunny I wear **sunglasses** for driving.

These **stairs** are dangerous.

You can weigh yourself on those **scales** over there.

The **headphones** on my new walkman are great.





## Exercises

### 27.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 I need some informations.
- 2 We had a lovely weather.
- 3 The furnitures are very old.
- 4 I'm looking for a new jeans.
- 5 Your hairs are getting very long.
- 6 Do you have a scissors?
- 7 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday.
- 8 Do you think she's making a progress with her English?
- 9 These trousers is too small.
- 10 She gave me some good advices.

### 27.2 Are these nouns countable, uncountable, or countable with one meaning and uncountable with another? Use a dictionary to help you. If they can be countable and uncountable, write sentence examples to show the difference.

butter	cup	housework	insurance
spaghetti	coffee	grape	money
television	coin	work	travel

### 27.3 Complete these dialogues using a suitable plural noun or uncountable noun from the opposite page. Make sure the form of each word is correct. Look at the example first.

**Example:** A: It's too hot for jeans.

B: You need a pair of shorts.

- 1 A: I have to cut this paper into three pieces.  
B: You need .....
- 2 A: I can't see because the sun is in my eyes.  
B: You need .....
- 3 A: I don't know what to do when I leave school.  
B: You need .....
- 4 A: My room looks so empty.  
B: You need .....
- 5 A: I want to find out how much I weigh.  
B: You need .....
- 6 A: I can't play my music loud because my mother always complains.  
B: You need .....
- 7 A: I'm starting to feel cold in bed.  
B: You need .....
- 8 A: My teacher said my English wasn't getting any better.  
B: You need .....

### 27.4 Read this text from a radio broadcast. Can you find two more uncountable nouns and two more plural nouns? (These words are not included on the opposite page.)

Traffic has been bad throughout the day because of roadworks on the A40 at Uxbridge which are causing long delays for motorists heading into London. The authorities are advising drivers to avoid the area if at all possible, and we will, of course, keep you informed of the situation with the latest news every half hour, so don't go away.

## 28 Verbs + -ing form or infinitive

### A Verb + -ing form

Some verbs are followed by an -ing form if the next word is a verb:

enjoy                      finish                      imagine  
(don't) mind              can't stand (= hate)              feel like (= want/desire *informal*)

give up (= stop doing something for the last time)

avoid (If you avoid something, you keep away from it; if you avoid someone, you stay away from them. You do these things by intention.)

admit (If you admit something, you agree it is true, and usually it is something bad.)

deny (= the opposite of admit; in other words, you say something isn't true)

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of the more difficult verbs.

I stayed in last night but I feel like going out this evening.

At the police station, he admitted stealing the woman's money but denied hitting her.

Cigarettes are very expensive, so he's decided to give up smoking.

I've lived in New Zealand all my life; I can't imagine living anywhere else.

Some people can't stand working at the weekend but I don't mind. (= it's not a problem)

I always try to avoid driving through the city centre during the rush hour.

### B Verb + infinitive

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive if the next word is a verb:

offer      want      seem      decide      hope      forget

mean (= intend, plan)      expect (= think or believe something will happen)

manage (= be able to do something, even when it is difficult)

refuse (= say 'no' when someone asks you for something)

promise (= say you will definitely do something, or that something will definitely happen)

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of some of the verbs.

We were very busy but we managed to finish before 6 p.m.

It was getting late and there were no buses so I offered to take them home in my car.

He hit one of the boys but he didn't mean to do it; I meant to go but I forgot.

I asked her to carry the suitcases but she refused to help.

I don't expect to see them before next week.

They promised to phone as soon as they arrive.

### C Verb + infinitive without 'to'

There are two common verbs followed by an object + infinitive without 'to'. They are:

make someone do something, and let someone do something.

My parents make me do my homework every night. (= they force me to do my homework)

My parents let me go out after I've done my homework. (= they allow/permit me to go out)

### D Verb + -ing form or infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by an -ing form or infinitive, but the meaning is very similar, e.g. love, like, hate, and prefer. But with some verbs there is a difference in meaning:

I remembered to buy a present for my brother. (= I didn't forget to buy a present)

I remember buying her a present. (= it's in my memory; it happened and I remember)

## Exercises

### 28.1 Cross out the incorrect answers.

- 1 We decided to work / working during our holiday.
- 2 She promised to help / helping us.
- 3 I don't feel like to go / going for a walk at the moment.
- 4 He forgot to take / taking the cake out of the oven.
- 5 Do you really hate to drive / driving when it's wet?
- 6 I can't imagine to eat / eating pasta every day of the week.
- 7 Most of the time she prefers to work / working on her own.
- 8 I don't remember to go / going to the zoo when we stayed in Madrid.
- 9 He hopes to finish / finishing his thesis by the end of the month.
- 10 I don't mind to help / helping you if I'm not busy.

### 28.2 Complete part c) of each number in a suitable way.

- 1 Most people want:  
a) to be rich      b) to get married      c) .....
- 2 A lot of people can't stand:  
a) getting wet      b) getting up early      c) .....
- 3 Most people enjoy:  
a) going to parties      b) lying on a beach      c) .....
- 4 On hot days most people don't feel like:  
a) working      b) eating big meals      c) .....
- 5 Most people expect  
a) to be happy      b) to find a job they will like      c) .....
- 6 A lot of people don't mind:  
a) washing-up      b) ironing      c) .....
- 7 Some parents make their teenage children:  
a) wear certain clothes      b) do housework      c) .....
- 8 Other parents let their teenage children:  
a) wear what they like      b) stay out all night      c) .....

Now think about each of the above statements. Are they true, and are they (or were they) true of you? If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

### 28.3 Read the story and answer the questions below.

When Julie was 17, her father said she could go on holiday with two school friends. He also said that he would lend her the money for a hotel, but she must pay for the air fare and her entertainment. Julie was delighted and said she would bring him back a wonderful present and pay him back in six months. But first they had to decide where to go. They looked at lots of brochures and finally agreed on a two-week holiday in the south of France. They had a great time, but unfortunately Julie spent all her money and forgot to buy a present for her father.

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| 1 What did Julie's father let her do when she was 17? | He let .....       |
| 2 And what did he offer to do?                        | He offered .....   |
| 3 But what did he refuse to do?                       | He refused .....   |
| 4 In return what did Julie promise?                   | She promised ..... |
| 5 What did the three girls decide?                    | They decided ..... |

## 29 Verb patterns

### A Verb + object

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	
She	proposed (= suggested <i>fml</i> )	the plan	at the meeting.
The travel agent	confirmed (= said it was sure)	my reservation.	
They	discussed (= talked about)	the film	for hours.

### B Verb + object + question word

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	<i>question word</i>	
I	told	them	where	to find it.
She	asked	us	why	we wanted it.
He	showed	everyone	what	to do.

*Note:* A common mistake is: 'He explained me what to do.' After explain + question word, there is no direct object. We say: 'He explained what to do / what I had to do.'

### C Verb + object + infinitive

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	<i>infinitive</i>	
She	asked	everyone	to leave.	
They	told	us	to wait	outside.
The doctor	advised	him	to stay	in bed.
I	wanted	the others	to help	us.
He	persuaded	me	to go	to the party.
She	warned	them	to be	careful.

*persuade* = make somebody change their mind.

John wanted to get an IBM but I **persuaded** him to buy an Apple Macintosh.

*warn* = tell someone of a possible danger, and often tell them what they should(n't) do.

She **warned** the children not to swim near the rocks.

### D Verb + (object) + (that) clause

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	<i>(that) clause</i>
He	said	–	(that) it was good.
She	suggested	–	(that) we go together.
He	insisted	–	(that) we work until 5 p.m.
They	told	him	(that) it was expensive.
She	warned	me	(that) it was dangerous.

*insist* = demand something strongly and not accept refusal.

She **insisted** that I stay with them (= she did not want me to stay in another place).

We can also use *-ing* after **suggest**, e.g. She suggested going there together.

### E Verb + (object) + preposition

He **insisted on** paying for the hotel. (*Note:* use the *-ing* form of the verb after a preposition)

They **blamed** the driver **for** the accident. (= they said he was responsible / it was his fault)

He **complained** (to the manager) **about** the bad service. (= he said he was not satisfied)

The manager **apologised** (to the customer) **for** the bad service. (= the manager said sorry)



## Exercises

**29.1** Correct the mistakes in these sentences. (Most are the result of translating from the first language.)

- 1 She said me the film was terrible.
- 2 He told it's not possible.
- 3 Can you explain me what to do?
- 4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant.
- 5 Can we discuss about my report?
- 6 I want that he leaves.
- 7 I need to confirm me the booking.
- 8 I apologised my mistake.
- 9 She advised me buy a dictionary.
- 10 She insisted to pay.

**29.2** What is the missing verb in each of these sentences? (There may be more than one answer.)

- 1 I didn't understand how the photocopier worked but she kindly ..... me.
- 2 She wasn't satisfied with her course, so she went to see the Principal to .....
- 3 It was a terrible thing to say to him, but she refused to .....
- 4 He knew it was dangerous but he didn't ..... me.
- 5 I didn't want to go at first but she ..... me.
- 6 She advised them to stay here but they ..... on going.
- 7 I booked the room by phone but they asked me to ..... it in writing.
- 8 I don't think it was my fault but they still ..... me.
- 9 She didn't know the way but I ..... how to get there.
- 10 They watched the film together and then they ..... it in small groups.

**29.3** Complete these sentences in a logical way.

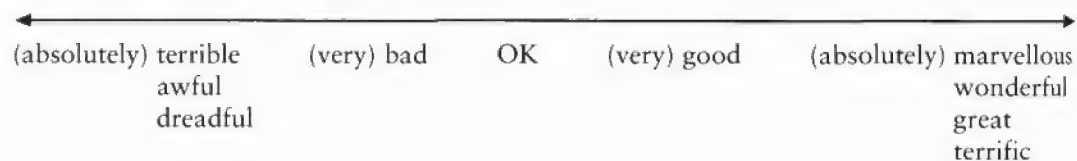
- 1 Some of us were getting hungry so I suggested .....
- 2 They were making a lot of noise next door and I told .....
- 3 She went to that new Italian restaurant and said .....
- 4 We read the book for homework and discussed .....
- 5 The streets are quite dangerous at night so I insisted .....
- 6 It was only a few minutes to the beach , but I still couldn't persuade .....
- 7 She wasn't feeling very well and the teacher advised .....
- 8 The whole team played badly but most of the newspapers have blamed .....
- 9 The water there can make you ill and I warned .....
- 10 If you don't understand the instructions, someone will explain .....

**29.4** When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. So, look at the grammar information about a word in a good dictionary, and always look carefully at the example sentences, then write one or two of your own. Do it for these three examples. What patterns from the opposite page are used after these verbs?

order          recommend          prevent

# 30 Adjectives

## A 'Scale' and 'limit' adjectives



We can use **very** before 'scale' adjectives e.g. very good, very bad; we can use **absolutely** before 'limit' adjectives e.g. absolutely awful, absolutely great. (You cannot say 'very wonderful'; you cannot say 'absolutely good'.) Here are some more examples.

<i>Scale</i>	<i>Limit</i>	<i>Scale</i>	<i>Limit</i>
big	huge/enormous	hot	boiling
small	tiny	cold	freezing
tired	exhausted	crowded (= full of people)	packed
interesting	fascinating	frightened (= afraid of sth.)	terrified
surprised	astonished	hungry	starving ( <i>infml</i> )

## B Adjectives ending -ing and -ed

There is a large group of adjectives which can have an **-ing** or **-ed** ending. The **-ing** ending is used on adjectives which describe a person or thing or situation; the **-ed** ending is on adjectives which describe the effect this person, thing or situation has on us.

It was such a **boring** party; I was **bored**, and so was everyone else.

I didn't think the film was very **frightening**, but my younger brother was **frightened** by it.

I think the students are **depressed** largely because the weather is so **depressing**.

Other examples of common adjectives ending **-ing** and **-ed** include:

surprising/surprised	exciting/excited
exhausting/exhausted	terrifying/terrified
confusing/confused	tiring/tired
frightening/frightened	fascinating/fascinated
astonishing/astonished	embarrassing/embarrassed
interesting/interested	disappointing/disappointed

Look at these examples to help you with the meaning of some of these words.

John wasn't very good at maths, so I was very **surprised** when he passed the exam. And I was **astonished** when I discovered that he'd got 98%.

In London there are lots of streets with the same name and it's very **confusing** if you are a tourist. Another problem is that it's a huge place. We walked everywhere on our last trip and we were **exhausted** at the end of each day. But it's an **exciting** city, with so much to do.

It's been a terrible week for Greg. He was very **disappointed** last Saturday because he played badly in an important match. Then on Monday, his girlfriend left him for someone else, so he's very **depressed** at the moment.

One of our teachers can never remember our names. It seemed funny at first, but now it's getting a bit **embarrassing**.

## Exercises

- 30.1** Write at least one limit adjective for these scale adjectives. Cover the opposite page before you begin.

big .....	hot .....
small .....	cold .....
tired .....	bad .....
surprised .....	hungry .....
interesting .....	frightened .....

- 30.2** Rewrite this postcard using limit adjectives where possible to give a more positive and/or more extreme effect.

Arrived on Sunday. The hotel is good — we've got a big room and the food is nice. It's been hot every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach, along with everyone else — it's very crowded. But the sea is actually cold — that's because it's the Atlantic coast, I suppose.  
Tomorrow we're going to walk to a small seaside village about ten kilometres from here — I imagine I'll be really tired by the time we get back, but it does sound an interesting place and I'm looking forward to it.  
I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it.  
Until then, love, Benita

- 30.3** Complete these dialogues using the correct limit adjective in the correct form (-ing or -ed).

- A: Was it very tiring?  
B: Yes we were absolutely .....
- A: I was very interested in her talk.  
B: Yes it was absolutely .....
- A: Maria said it was a frightening film.  
B: Yes it was absolutely .....
- A: It was a surprising decision, wasn't it?  
B: Yes I was absolutely .....
- A: Was it very cold?  
B: Oh yes, it was .....

- 30.4** Can you think of an adjective from the opposite page to describe how the people felt in each of these situations?

- They walked about ten miles in the morning, then spent the afternoon helping some friends to cut down some trees.
- From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach.
- They decided to wear jeans to the party but when they arrived everyone else was wearing formal evening dress.
- One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station.
- When they got home there was a new car outside their house. They went inside and there was a new sofa in the lounge and a new dining table in the dining room.

### 3 | Prepositions: place

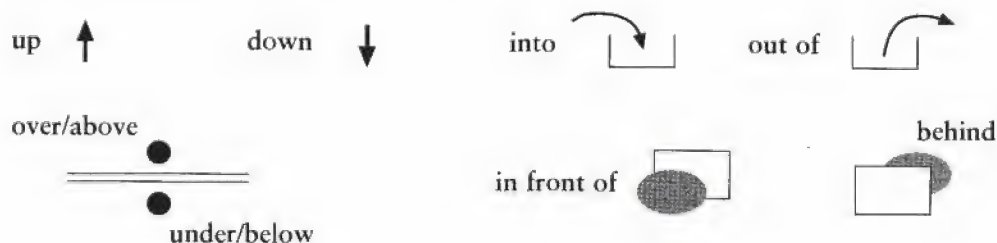
#### A At, On, In

Learn these rules.

- |                     |              |  |
|---------------------|--------------|--|
| at a point/place    | x            | e.g. I met her at the bus stop. She lives at 43 Duke Road.<br>He's at work (i.e. not at home). They're at a party tonight. |
| on a surface        | <del>x</del> | e.g. The book is on the desk. We sat on the floor.   |
| in an area or space | x            | e.g. Malawi is a country in Africa. She lives in Milan. He's in the kitchen. The key's in my pocket. Put it in the box.    |

#### B Opposites

Some prepositions form pairs of opposites.



*Note:* Over/above are often synonymous, so are under/below, but over and under sometimes suggest movement.

When we flew over Paris we couldn't see much because we were above the clouds. Below us was the river which ran under the bridge.

#### C Here are some more common prepositions of place

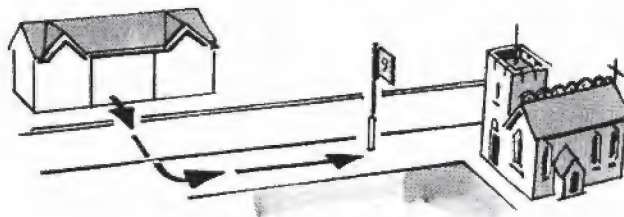
We drove along the river, round the lake, past the old castle, and through the village.



We came over the bridge, and parked next to the house, which was opposite the hotel.



Our house is between two shops and it is near a bus stop; you just go across the road and walk along the other side towards the church.





## Exercises

### 31.1 Fill the gaps with *at*, *on* or *in*.

- 1 I put the books ..... the table.
- 2 The butter is ..... the fridge.
- 3 We saw them ..... the bus stop.
- 4 I met her ..... a party.
- 5 She works ..... Barcelona.
- 6 The dictionary is ..... my desk.
- 7 I sat ..... the bed and wrote the letter.
- 8 I left my books ..... school.
- 9 There was still a lot of snow ..... the ground when I arrived.
- 10 He lives ..... a very nice area.

### 31.2 Answer the questions using the opposite preposition.

- 1 Was he standing in front of the picture?  
No, .....
- 2 Is it up the hill to his house?  
No, .....
- 3 Did you climb over the fence?  
No, .....
- 4 Did you see her get into the car?  
No, .....
- 5 Did you fly below the clouds?  
No, .....
- 6 Does she live in the flat above you?  
No, .....

### 31.3 Look at the map and complete the description of the route you took on the first day.



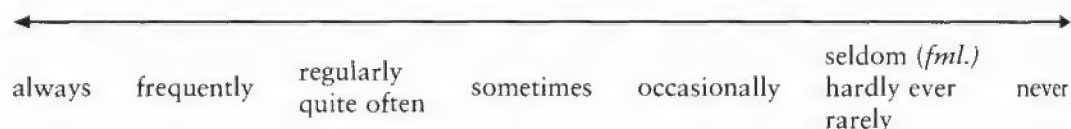
We took the boat (1)..... the channel, then we drove (2)..... France and (3)..... Switzerland, where we spent the first night (4)..... a small town quite (5)..... Lucerne. Now look at the diagram and complete the description of the second day.



The next morning we walked (6)..... a river which ran (7)..... two mountains. We had lunch (8)..... a small restaurant and then walked (9)..... the lake and (10)..... the small town of Stans, before going back.

## 32 Adverbs: frequency and degree

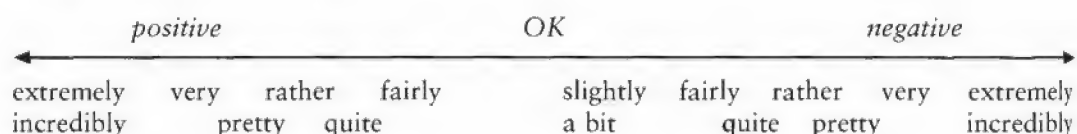
### A Frequency (= how often)



Note:

- Adverbs of frequency go before the main verb with the exception of the verb 'to be':  
I **occasionally** see them.      They **hardly ever** go to the cinema now.  
She is **often** late these days.      I've **never** tried Korean food.
- Sometimes**, **occasionally** and **often** can go at the beginning or end of the sentence:  
They go to the zoo **quite often**.      I play tennis **occasionally**.  
**Sometimes** my parents give me money.      **Occasionally** I work at the weekend.

### B Degree (= how much)



Note:

- Rather** is more *formal* than the other words and often describes a negative situation:  
We had **rather** bad weather.      The food was **rather** expensive.
- For a positive situation, **rather** often indicates that something is better than we expected:  
Her cooking is **rather** good actually. (I didn't expect that, so it was a very nice surprise.)
- Incredibly**, **pretty** and **a bit** are *informal* and mostly used in spoken English; **a bit** is mostly used before negative adjectives (not positive ones) or adjectives with a negative prefix.  
The food was **pretty** good. (= nearly 'very' good)      That Ferrari is **incredibly** expensive.  
The hotel was **a bit** disappointing, actually.      I thought she looked **a bit** unhappy.

### C Almost/nearly

It's **almost/nearly** five o'clock. (= it is probably about 4.57)

I **almost/nearly** lost the match. (= I won but only just; only by a small amount)

Note: almost the same NOT quite the same

### D Hardly

**Hardly** + a positive often has the same meaning as **almost** + a negative:

I **hardly** had **anything** to eat for lunch. (= I had almost nothing)

She could **hardly** walk after her operation. (= she almost couldn't walk)

Note: In the above sentences you can also use **barely** with the same meaning.

## Exercises

### 32.1 Organise these mixed up words into correct sentences.

- 1 brother often us Sunday visits on my
- 2 me ever phones she hardly
- 3 have leg my broken never I
- 4 visit saw I hardly his him during
- 5 get occasionally I early up
- 6 always she Monday on early is work for a

### 32.2 Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has the same meaning.

- 1 She seldom goes to conferences now.
- 2 I can barely remember the first house we lived in.
- 3 There were almost fifty people there, you know.
- 4 I thought it was a bit disappointing, didn't you?
- 5 I'm afraid I'm extremely busy next week.

### 32.3 Respond to these sentences using 'rather' to show surprise. (You can also add 'actually' at the end of the sentence.)

- 1 A: Was it a boring evening?  
B: No, it .....
- 2 A: Were the children very noisy?  
B: No, they .....
- 3 A: I've heard it's a very dirty town. Is that true?  
B: No, it .....
- 4 A: Was the weather awful?  
B: No, it .....

### 32.4 Change the underlined adverbs to make the first two sentences slightly more positive, and the last three sentences slightly less negative.

- 1 I thought they were very good.
- 2 He's been getting quite good marks in his exams.
- 3 John said the flat was very small.
- 4 They said it was fairly boring.
- 5 The clothes were very expensive.

### 32.5 Put a frequency adverb into each of these sentences to make a true sentence about yourself. Make sure you put the adverb in the correct place. Compare your answers with someone else if possible.

- 1 I buy clothes I don't like.
- 2 I clean my shoes.
- 3 I remember my dreams.
- 4 I give money to people in the street if they ask me for money.
- 5 I speak to strangers on buses and trains.
- 6 I'm rude to people who are rude to me.

Now think about each of your answers to the above sentences. Do you think they are:

a) very typical? b) fairly typical? c) slightly unusual? d) extremely unusual?

If you compared your answers with someone else, how would you describe their answers?

## 33 Time and sequence

### A When and as soon as

I'll phone my uncle when I get home. / As soon as I get home I'll phone my uncle.

When you've finished you can go home. / You can go home as soon as you've finished.

*Note:* The meaning is the same, but **as soon as** suggests it is more *immediate*. Note also that both items can be followed by the present tense or the present perfect (but not *will*).

### B Two things happening at the same time

Pat wrote some letters while I cooked the dinner. (two actions in the same period of time)

The accident happened while I was on my way to work. (Here there is a longer action 'on my way to work' and a shorter action 'the accident'. We can also use **when** or **as** here.)

I saw him (just) as I came out of the office. (For two very short actions we use **as** (not **while**), and we often use **just as** to emphasise that these two short actions happened at exactly the same moment: He opened the door **just as** I touched the handle.)

### C One thing after another

We met the others in the cafe, and **then** we went to the match.

I finished my homework, **after that** I played a couple of computer games.

**After** my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.

We had something to eat **before** we went out.

*Note:* We can also follow **before** and **after** with an **-ing** form:

**After** visiting New York, I ... We had something to eat **before** going out.

### D A sequence of actions

We had a great holiday. **First of all** we spent a few days in St. Moritz. **Then / After that** we drove down to the Italian Riviera and stayed in Portofino for a week. **Finally**, we went back to Switzerland and visited some old friends in Lucerne.

*Note:*

- If one action happens soon after the other, we often use **afterwards** in place of **after** (**that**): First of all we met the others for a meal, and **afterwards** we went to the disco.
- If you want to say that something happened after a lot of time and/or a lot of problems, you can use **eventually** or **in the end**.

We took several wrong turnings and the traffic was awful, but **eventually** we got there.

### E A sequence of reasons

There are different combinations of words and phrases we can use here:

SON: Why can't we go away this weekend?

DAD: **First(ly)** because I'm busy this weekend. **Second(ly)** you've got a lot of school work to do. And **third(ly)** we're planning to go away next weekend.

*Note:*

- We can also start with the phrases **to begin with / to start with**.
- In spoken English we can start with **for one thing**, followed by **and for another (thing)**.
- For the second or final reason, we sometimes use (and) **besides** or **anyway (in fact)**:

We can't go to that club because it's too far. And **besides**, I'm not a member.



## Exercises

### 33.1 Cross out the incorrect answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- 1 I'll give them your message as soon as I get / will get there.
- 2 Maria cleaned the kitchen as/while I did the bathroom.
- 3 We must go to that gallery before leave/leaving.
- 4 I had a lot of problems at the shop but eventually/finally they agreed to give me a refund.
- 5 The phone rang while / just as I was leaving the house.
- 6 The letter arrived while/as we were getting ready.

### 33.2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 We had a game of squash and afterwards .....
- 2 I'll meet you as soon as .....
- 3 I must remember to lock the back door before .....
- 4 I think I dropped the letter as .....
- 5 I looked up half of the words in my dictionary while .....
- 6 We had to wait for hours but eventually .....
- 7 My car is too big for you to drive. And besides, .....
- 8 I saw him break the window just as .....

### 33.3 Add a final sentence (starting with a suitable link word or phrase) to each of these texts.

- 1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening when we could go to Karl's party?  
B: Well, for one thing because my ex-boyfriend will be there and I really don't want to see him. ....
- 2 A: What did you do?  
B: First of all we spent a few days in Paris. After that we took the train down to Marseilles and stayed with friends. ....
- 3 A: Why can't we send one of our staff to the conference?  
B: Well, to start with, I don't think that the company should send anyone to the conference. And ....

### 33.4 You spent a week at a hotel and had these problems:

- There was very little variety in the food.
- The service was very slow.
- When you mentioned this to the staff, they were very rude.

The manager was on holiday during your stay, so you have decided to send a letter of complaint. Write the next part of this letter and then look at the model answer for the whole letter in the answer key.

Dear Sir/Madam

I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Malvern Hotel, and I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with the food and service provided in your restaurant.

## 34 Addition and contrast

### A In addition, moreover, etc. (X and Y)

When you add a second piece of information in a sentence to support the first piece of information, you often use **and**, e.g. The food is excellent **and** very good value. When you put this information in two sentences, these link words and phrases are common:

The food is usually very good. **Furthermore**, it is one of the cheapest restaurants in town.

The set menu is £10, which is excellent value. **In addition**, you get a free glass of wine.

The restaurant has a reputation for excellent food. It's **also** very good value.

The food is excellent in that restaurant. It's very good value **as well** (or **too**).

You get very good food in that place. **What's more**, it's excellent value.

*Note:* The first two examples are more formal and more common in written English. The last two examples are more common in spoken English.

### B Although, in spite of, etc. (X but Y)

When you want to contrast two pieces of information in a single sentence and say that the second fact is surprising after the first, you can use these link words:

She still won the game **although** / **though** / **even though** she had a bad knee.

They still went for a walk **in spite of the fact that** it was pouring with rain.

The service is worse **despite the fact that** they have more staff.

*Note:*

In these examples you can also begin the sentence with the link word:

**Although** she had a bad knee, she still won the game.

It is very common to use **still** in these sentences to emphasise the surprise (as in examples).

In the last two example sentences you can use a noun or -ing form:

They went for a walk **in spite of** the rain. The service is worse **despite** having more staff.

After **although**, you can only have a noun/pronoun + verb (i.e. although she had a bad knee / her knee was bad).

### C Whereas

This word is used to connect a fact or opinion about a person, place or thing, with something different about another person, place or thing (you can also use **whilst**). In other words, the second fact is a contrast with the first, but not always a surprise (as in B above).

John is very careful **whereas** Christopher makes lots of mistakes.

The south is hot and dry **whereas** the north gets quite a lot of rain.

### D However

You can use **however** to contrast two ideas in two sentences, and say that the second sentence is surprising after the first (as in B); and you can use **however** or **on the other hand** to make a contrast between different people/places or things (as in C above):

I don't agree with a lot of his methods. **However**, he is a good teacher.

We didn't like the hotel at all. **However**, we still enjoyed ourselves.

Marcel thought it was a great film. Joe, **however** / **on the other hand**, thought it was stupid.

Most big cats, such as tigers and leopards, are very solitary creatures. Lions, **however** / **on the other hand**, spend much of their time in groups.

## Exercises

### 34.1 Cross out the incorrect answers. Both answers may be correct.

- 1 Although / in spite of we left late, we still got there in time.
- 2 It was a fantastic evening although / in spite of the terrible food.
- 3 We have decided to go in spite of / despite the cost of the tickets.
- 4 They enjoyed the course even though / whereas it was very difficult.
- 5 I love the sea furthermore/whereas most of my friends prefer the mountains.
- 6 We found a lovely villa near the lake that we can rent. In addition / Moreover it has its own swimming pool, and we have free use of a car provided by the owners.
- 7 We both told John the car was too expensive. However / On the other hand, he still decided to buy it.
- 8 Most people we met tried to help us. They were very friendly too / as well.
- 9 During the week the town centre is very busy. At the weekend on the other hand / whereas, it is very quiet and almost empty.
- 10 My uncle is the owner of the factory opposite. He also/however runs the restaurant next door and the car hire company down the road.

### 34.2 Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

A	B	C
He went to school today	even though	the pay isn't very good.
He always did his best at school	in spite of	he's the most experienced.
He's got the right qualifications.	However	the help I gave him.
He didn't pass the exam	whereas	he didn't feel very well.
He decided to take the job.	What's more	most of his schoolfriends were very lazy.

### 34.3 Fill the gaps with a suitable link word or phrase.

- 1 ..... taking a map, they still got lost.
- 2 It took me two hours to do it ..... the others finished in less than an hour.
- 3 The hotel has a very good reputation. ...., it is one of the cheapest in the area.
- 4 She managed to get there ..... she had a broken ankle.
- 5 It's not the best dictionary you can buy; ....., it's better than nothing.
- 6 She's younger than the others in the group, and she's better than most of them .....

### 34.4 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

- 1 I was able to follow what she was saying even though .....
- 2 I was able to follow what she was saying whereas .....
- 3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of .....
- 4 If you buy a season ticket, you can go as often as you like. Furthermore, .....
- 5 The exam was very difficult. However, .....
- 6 Although it was a very long film, .....

### 34.5 Answer the questions and test yourself on these different link words and phrases.

- 1 Write down all the link words and phrases from the opposite page that you can remember.
- 2 Organise them into groups according to their meaning.
- 3 Write your own examples for each one and keep them on one page in your notebook. In future, you can add more examples as you meet them.

## 35 Similarities, differences and conditions

### A Similarities

These are ways of saying that two or more things are similar, or have something the same.  
Peter is **similar to** (= **like**) his brother in many ways. Peter and his brother are very **similar**.  
Peter and his brother are quite **alike**.  
Maria and Rebecca **both** passed their exams. (= Maria passed and Rebecca passed)  
But **neither** wants to go to university. (= Maria doesn't want to go and Rebecca doesn't want to go either)  
The two boys **have a lot in common**. (= they have many things e.g. hobbies, interests, beliefs, that are the same or very similar) See also section B.

### B Differences

These are ways of saying that two or more things are different.  
His early films are **different from** his later ones.  
Paula is **quite unlike** (= very different from) her sister.  
They **have nothing in common**. (= they have no interests or beliefs that are the same)

### C Using 'compare'

We want to **compare** the prices of all the televisions before we decide which one to buy.  
They made a **comparison of** average salaries in different parts of the country.  
Our new flat is very big **compared with/to** our old one. (= if you compare it with the other)  
If you **compare** this one **with** the others, I'm sure you'll see a difference.

### D Exceptions

When we make a general statement about things or people and then say that one thing or person is not included or is different from the others, we use these words and phrases:  
It snowed everywhere **except** on the west coast.  
The two girls are very similar **except** that Louise has slightly longer hair.  
The museum is open every day **except (for)** / **apart from** Sunday(s).  
Everyone heard the fire alarm **except (for)** / **apart from** the two boys in room 7.  
*Note:* **Except** can be followed by different words (nouns, prepositions, etc.), but **except for** and **apart from** are followed by nouns or noun phrases.

### E Conditions

Here are some words/phrases which introduce or connect conditions. Like 'if', they are used with certain tenses, and the rules are quite difficult. For the moment, notice the tenses underlined in the examples, and use them in this way until you meet other examples.  
We will be late **unless** we hurry. (= we'll be late if we don't hurry)  
**Unless** the weather improves (= if the weather doesn't improve), we won't be able to go.  
I must go now **otherwise** (= because if I don't) I'll miss the last bus.  
You can borrow it **as long as** (= **on condition that**) you bring it back by Thursday.  
*Note:* The meaning is very similar to **if** here, but the use of **as long as** shows that the condition is very important to the speaker.  
Take your umbrella with you **in case** it rains. (= because of the possibility it may rain later)  
I brought food **in case** we get hungry. (= because of the possibility we may be hungry later)



## Exercises

### 35.1 Read the information, then complete the sentences using the words/phrases from A and B.

MICHEL ...

is 21 and lives with his parents. He has worked in a shop. He is shy, hard-working and very good at sport. He would like to become the manager of a sports shop.

PHILIPPE ...

is 22 and lives alone. He is at university. He is clever but lazy, and spends most of his time at parties. He has no plans for the future.

PAUL ...

is 18 and lives with his parents. He is a trainee in a bank, but one day would like to be the manager. He is a very good footballer.

- 1 Michel and Paul are very .....
- 2 Philippe is quite ..... the other two.
- 3 Paul and Michel have .....
- 4 Paul and Philippe have almost nothing .....
- 5 Paul and Michel both .....
- 6 Neither of them .....

### 35.2 Rewrite these sentences. You must start with the words you are given and use the words in brackets. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.

**Example:** He's like the others.

He's very similar to the others..... (similar)

- 1 Martin is quite unlike his brother.  
Martin is very ..... (different)
- 2 When you see the houses, you realise that the flats are very good value.  
The flats are very good value ..... (compare)
- 3 In her class, Carla was the only one who didn't pass the exam.  
Everyone ..... (except)
- 4 The two boys have completely different interests.  
The two boys have ..... (common)
- 5 You don't have to wear a tie except for Saturday(s).  
You don't have to wear a tie ..... (apart)

### 35.3 Fill the gaps with the correct link word or phrase from E opposite.

- 1 You must write these words down ..... you may forget them.
- 2 I've made extra food for the party ..... more people come than we expect.
- 3 I can meet you for dinner on Friday evening ..... I have to work late at the office.
- 4 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog ..... she takes it for a walk every day.

### 35.4 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 I want to finish this report today otherwise I'll .....
- 2 You can't get in that disco unless you .....
- 3 You can borrow the money as long as you .....
- 4 I've cleaned the spare room and made the bed in case .....
- 5 I'm not going to work on Saturday unless .....
- 6 I'm going to take my cheque book with me in case .....

### 35.5 How many different sentences can you write beginning with these words?

Compared with Britain, my country .....

## 36 Reason, purpose and result

### A Reason

I went home early **because/as/since** I was feeling a bit tired.

*Note:* With **as** or **since**, the reason (in this example 'feeling tired') is often known to the listener or reader, so it is less important. It is also common to put **as/since** at the beginning of the sentence: '**As/since** I was feeling tired, I went home early'. In spoken English, many native speakers would use **so** after the reason: I was feeling a bit tired, **so** I went home early.

We can also use **because of**, but with a different construction. Compare:

We always go there **because** the weather is absolutely wonderful. (**because** + noun + verb)

We always go there **because of** the wonderful weather. (**because of** + (adjective) + noun)

**Due to** and **owing to** have the same meaning as **because of**, but they are more formal, and are often used in sentences which explain the reason for a problem:

The plane was late **due to** bad weather. (**due to** is often used after the verb 'to be')

**Due to** / **Owing to** the power cut last night, I missed the late film on TV.

### B 'Cause' and 'result' verbs

There are some verbs which we can use in similar ways to the words above:

Police think the bus **caused** the accident. (= **was responsible for** the accident)

The extra investment should **lead to** more jobs. (= **result in** more jobs)

'Cause' and 'result' verbs sometimes appear together in this way:

Police think that a cigarette **caused** the fire which **resulted in** the destruction of the building.

### C Purpose

A 'purpose' is an intention, an aim or a reason for doing something:

The **purpose of** buying this book **was** to improve my English.

But we often introduce a purpose using **so** (**that**):

I bought this book **so** (**that**) I can improve my English.

They went home early **so** (**that**) they could watch the match on television.

We moved house **so** (**that**) we could send our children to this school.

*Note:* In spoken English, people often just say **so** (without **that**). It is also very common (as in the examples) to use a modal verb, e.g. **can** or **could**, after **so that**.

### D Result

These words introduce a result:

I left the ticket at home, **so** I'm afraid I had to buy another one.

I forgot to send the letters. **Consequently**, some people didn't know about the meeting.

She was extremely hard-working and **therefore** deserved the promotion.

Both the manager and his assistant were ill. **As a result**, there was no-one to take decisions.

*Note:* **So** is the most common, and usually links ideas in a single sentence. **As a result** and **consequently** are more formal, and usually connect ideas in two separate sentences (as in the examples). **Therefore** (also more formal), can be used in a single sentence (as in the example), but may also connect two sentences.

## Exercises

**36.1** Combine the two sentences into one sentence using *so*, *so that*, *because*, *as*, or *since*. More than one answer is possible in some sentences.

- 1 I didn't phone you. It was very late.
- 2 I turned up the radio in the lounge. I could hear it in the kitchen.
- 3 The restaurant was full. We went to the bar next door.
- 4 I stayed at home. I was expecting a phone call.
- 5 It's a very large city. You have to use public transport a lot.
- 6 I learned to drive. My mother didn't have to take me to the riding school every week.

**36.2** Transform these sentences using *because of*. Make any changes that are necessary.

*Example:* He couldn't play because he had an injured shoulder.

*He couldn't play because of his injured shoulder.*

- 1 She got the job because her qualifications are excellent.
- 2 The weather was terrible, so we couldn't eat outside.
- 3 She had to stay at home because she has a broken ankle.
- 4 The light was very bad, so the referee had to stop the game.
- 5 The flowers died because it was so dry.
- 6 The traffic was very heavy. I was half an hour late.

**36.3** Read this memo from a manager to the staff. Fill the gaps with suitable words or phrases.

To: All staff  
From: The Manager  
Date: 9.8.96  
Subject: Temporary roadworks

From next Monday (and continuing throughout the week), there will be roadworks on all major approach roads to the factory. <sup>(1)</sup> this will <sup>(2)</sup> considerable delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning <sup>(3)</sup> everyone arrives on time.

I have been told that these roadworks could also <sup>(4)</sup> severe traffic congestion. <sup>(5)</sup> it may be advisable to leave your cars at home and use public transport instead.

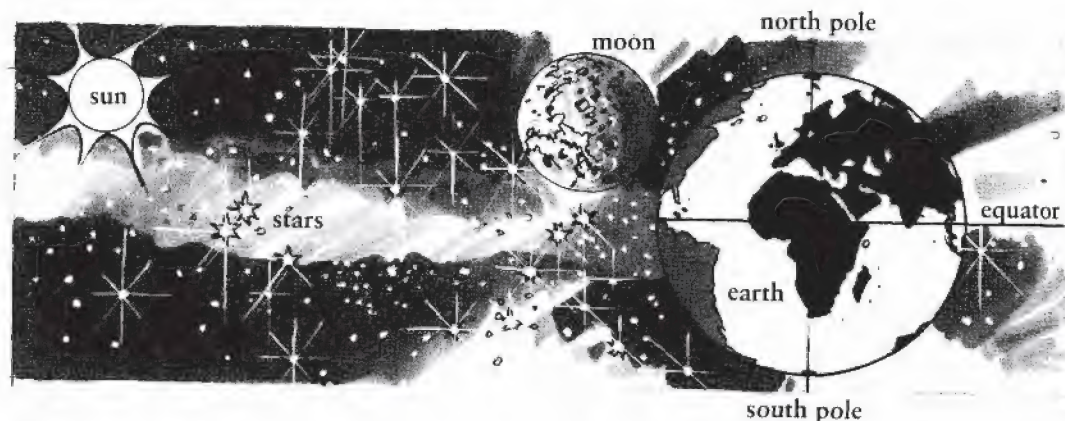
Thank you for your cooperation in this matter.

DP

**36.4** These sentences are all about learning English. Complete them in a logical way.

- 1 I want to improve my English because .....
- 2 I bought myself a walkman so that I .....
- 3 I study English at the weekend as .....
- 4 I always write words down in my notebook so that .....
- 5 I don't get many opportunities to practise my English. Consequently, .....
- 6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, .....
- 7 If he could speak almost perfect English it could lead to .....
- 8 Some people find English difficult because of .....

# 37 The physical world



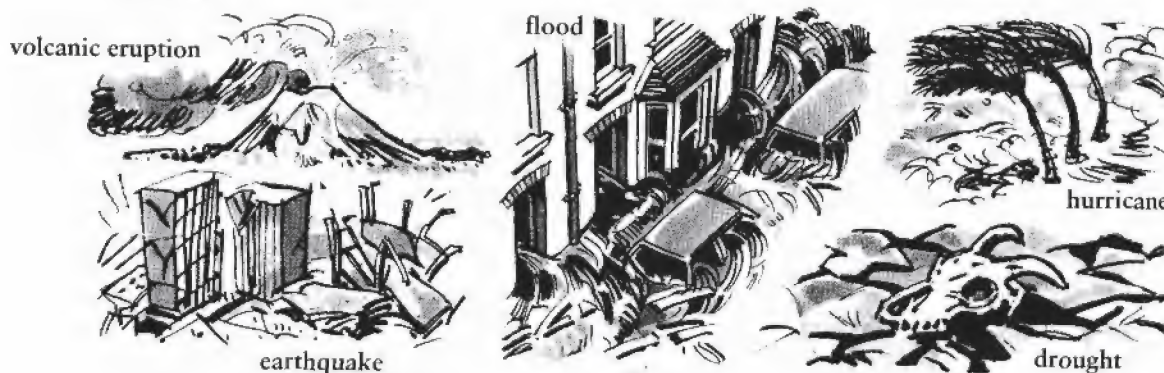
## A Physical features

continents	e.g. Asia, Europe
countries	e.g. China, Brazil
islands	e.g. Sicily, Corsica, Hong Kong
group of islands	e.g. The Bahamas, The Balearics
oceans	e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Pacific Ocean
seas	e.g. The Red Sea, The Dead Sea
lakes	e.g. Lake Tanganyika, Lake Titikaka
rivers	e.g. The Nile, The Mississippi
falls	e.g. Niagara Falls, The Iguacu Falls
mountains	e.g. Mount Everest, Mount Fuji
mountain ranges	e.g. The Andes, The Alps
jungles	e.g. The Amazon (also called The Amazon rainforest)
forests	e.g. The Black Forest
deserts	e.g. The Sahara, The Gobi

*Note:* Sometimes you need the definite article 'the', e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Alps; sometimes no article is used, e.g. Mount Everest and Lake Titikaka. Compare this with your own language.

## B Natural disasters

A disaster is when something terrible happens, which often results in death, destruction and suffering.





## Exercises

### 37.1 Complete these sentences, as in the example.

*Example:* The Nile is *a river*.

- 1 The Atlantic is .....
- 2 The Alps are .....
- 3 Greece is .....
- 4 The Sahara is .....
- 5 The Amazon is .....
- 6 The Mediterranean is .....
- 7 The Bahamas is .....
- 8 Africa is .....
- 9 Crete and Corsica are .....
- 10 Everest is the highest ..... in the world.
- 11 Michigan and Eyrie are two of the Great .....
- 12 The 'Great Bear' is a group of .....

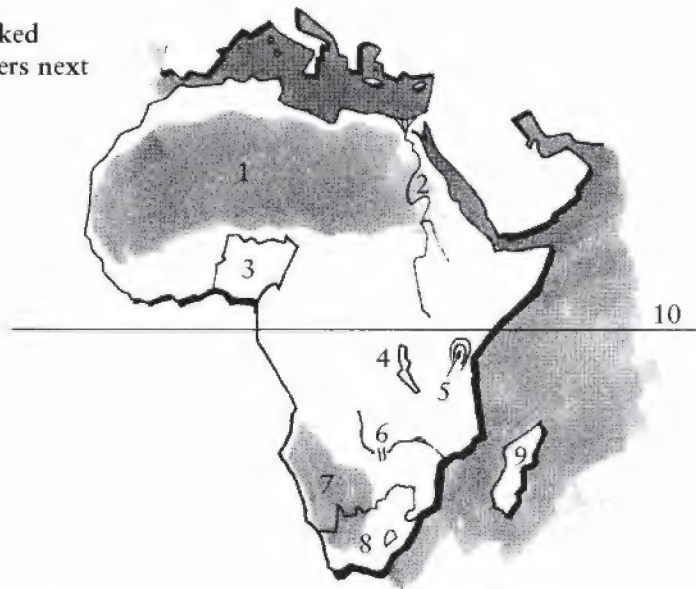
### 37.2 Fill the gaps in the text with *the* if necessary.

My journey took me across ..... Atlantic Ocean from ..... Europe to ..... South America. I travelled through ..... Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of ..... Brazil as far as ..... Iguacu Falls. From there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round ..... Lake Titikaka and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed ..... Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to ..... Jamaica in ..... West Indies.

### 37.3 What disaster is being described in each of these sentences?

- 1 It lifted a car about ten feet off the ground, and then we saw it disappear down the street.
- 2 It was about two metres deep and we watched as most of our furniture just floated away.
- 3 The grass turned yellow and most of the crops died.
- 4 The walls began to move visibly, and large cracks opened up in the ground.
- 5 We could see the lava slowly advancing towards the town just ten miles away.

### 37.4 Can you name everything marked on this map? Write your answers next to the symbols.



# 38 Weather

## A Weather conditions

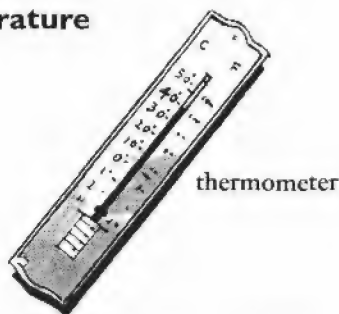
Look at this list of common weather words. Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding '-y'.

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
sun	sunny	wind	windy
cloud	cloudy	ice	ic(e)y
fog	foggy	shower	showery
heat	hot	humidity	humid

*Note:* When it rains for a short period of time, we call it a **shower**, e.g. We had several showers yesterday afternoon.

When it is raining a lot we often say it's **pouring** or it's **pouring with rain**. This phrase is much more common than 'it's raining cats and dogs', which many students seem to learn.

## B Temperature



boiling (= very hot)    hot    warm    not very warm    cold (also chilly)    freezing (= very cold)

People round the world have different ideas about temperature:

5°C (five degrees centigrade) is **freezing** for many Brazilians.

-10°C (minus ten degrees or ten degrees below zero) is very cold but quite normal in the mountains in Switzerland during the winter when it usually snows a lot.

30-35°C is **boiling** for England and very unusual, but it is very common in parts of Spain during the summer.

## C Wind

The first word here is very gentle; the last is more than 100 km per hour and can be very dangerous.

a breeze    a wind    a strong wind    a gale    a hurricane

It was a hot day but there was a lovely breeze.

The wind blew my hat off.

The hurricane in Florida destroyed trees and buildings.

## D Thunderstorms

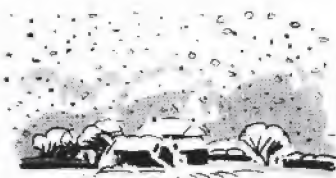
A **spell** (= period) of very hot weather often ends with a **thunderstorm**. First it becomes very **humid** (= hot and wet), then you get **thunder and lightning**, and finally, very **heavy rain** (= it pours with rain). Afterwards, it is usually cooler and it feels fresher.

## Exercises

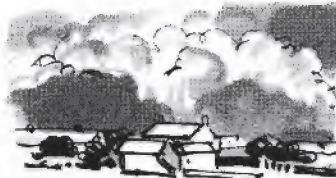
**38.1** Identify the weather conditions in these pictures.



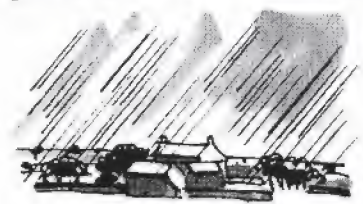
1



2



3



4



5



6

**38.2** True or false? If a sentence is *false*, write a *true* sentence about the weather conditions in the sentence.

- 1 It often pours with rain in the desert.
- 2 It gets quite chilly in the desert in the evening.
- 3 Thunder makes a noise.
- 4 Lightning can kill people.
- 5 A shower is a gentle breeze.
- 6 A spell of hot weather may end in a thunderstorm.
- 7 If it is humid, the air will be very dry.
- 8 Below zero, water turns to ice.
- 9 Heavy rain means that it is pouring with rain.
- 10 When it's foggy you need sunglasses.

**38.3** Complete these scales.

..... → wind → strong wind → ..... → hurricane  
 ..... → hot → warm → not very warm → cold → .....

**38.4** Complete this text with suitable words.

The single greatest influence on Japanese weather is the wind. During the summer it (1)..... from the Pacific, causing (2)..... and humid weather, but in winter, the north-westerly (3)..... from Siberia are very cold and it (4)..... heavily on the mountains of the north west. The south-eastern parts receive cold dry air. Between June and mid July, there is a (5)..... of wet weather when the rice fields get the water vital for growth. After that, there is less (6)..... rain, but the air is still (7)..... Autumn, however, is drier, and usually very pleasant.

Write a paragraph about the weather in your own country, or a specific part of your country, e.g. your own region. Try to use as many words as possible from the opposite page.



## 39 Using the land

### A Ground and soil

When we walk, our feet are on the **ground** (= the general word for the surface of the earth). For the top part of the ground where grass and flowers grow, we use the word **soil**.

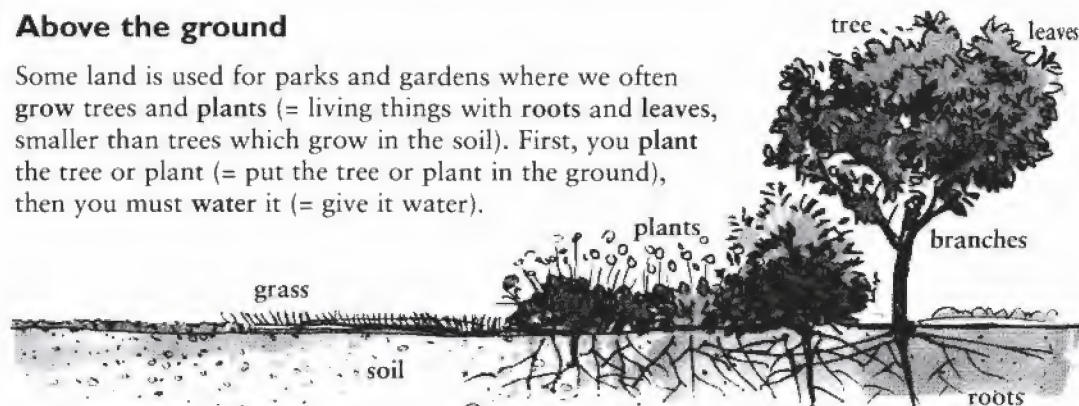
There were no seats in the park, so we had to sit on the **ground**.

The **ground** is very hard because it hasn't rained for weeks.

Plants don't grow very well here because the **soil** is too dry.

### B Above the ground

Some land is used for parks and gardens where we often **grow** trees and **plants** (= living things with **roots** and **leaves**, smaller than trees which grow in the soil). First, you **plant** the tree or plant (= put the tree or plant in the ground), then you must **water** it (= give it water).



Land in the country is often used for **agriculture/farming**. Some farms concentrate on dairy **produce** such as milk, butter and cheese. Other farms **keep** animals which are **slaughtered** (= killed) and sold for their meat, e.g. cows and lambs. Some farms use the land to **grow** fruit, e.g. apples and pears; vegetables, e.g. potatoes and carrots; and **cereals**, e.g. wheat, maize and barley. When they are ready, farmers **pick the fruit** and **harvest** the other crops (= take the other crops from the ground). This period is called the **harvest**. We use the word **crop(s)** as a general word to describe all the things that are grown to be eaten:

In parts of Africa the crops failed because of the **drought** (= long period without rain).

We had a wonderful **crop** of barley last year.

### C Below the ground

One of the main activities below the ground is **mining**. This is the process of **extracting** (*fml*) (= removing or taking out) different materials, e.g. coal or gold, from below the **ground**. We call the place a mine, e.g. a coal mine or gold mine.

These are some of the **metals** we take out of the ground:

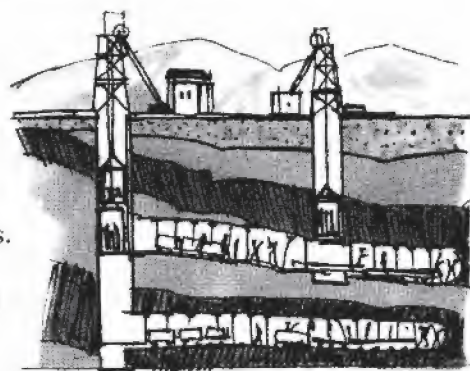
**gold**: a valuable yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery

**silver**: a valuable whitish metal used to make coins and jewellery

**iron**: usually takes the form of a hard dark-grey metal, and is used in building and to make tools. It is also used to make steel

**tin**: a softer metal often used to cover other metals

**copper**: a soft reddish metal; it permits heat and electricity to pass through it easily





## Exercises

**39.1** Which nouns on the right often follow the verbs on the left? (There may be more than one noun for several of the verbs.)

- |             |        |
|-------------|--------|
| 1 plant     | coal   |
| 2 water     | cows   |
| 3 pick      | wheat  |
| 4 extract   | apples |
| 5 grow      | plants |
| 6 slaughter | trees  |

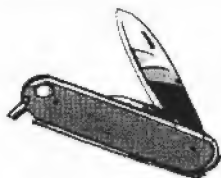
**39.2** Are these statements *true* or *false*? If *false*, correct them.

- 1 Plants need roots.
- 2 Soil is the top part of the ground.
- 3 Drought is a long period of rain.
- 4 If you extract something, you remove it.
- 5 The harvest is the period when we plant the crops.
- 6 Iron is used to make silver.

**39.3** Complete the descriptions of these objects with a suitable 'metal'.



1 a ..... can



3 a knife with a  
..... blade



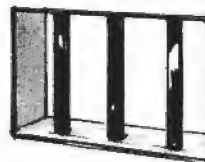
5 a ..... ring



2 a ..... spoon



4 a frying pan with  
a ..... base



6 these ..... bars  
are very strong

**39.4** Complete these sentences with the correct 'general' word. Look at the example first.

*Example:* Apples, oranges and bananas are all types of fruit.

- 1 Potatoes, beans and carrots are types of .....
- 2 Silver, tin and copper are types of .....
- 3 Milk, butter and cheese are all ..... products.
- 4 ..... is the general word for wheat, maize, barley, etc.
- 5 We use the word ..... as a general word for plants which are grown to be eaten.

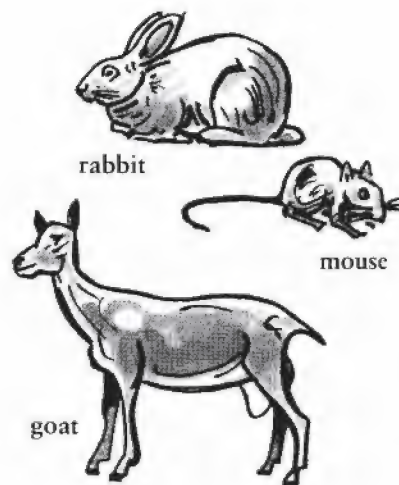
**39.5** Answer these questions about your own country.

- 1 Which of these are the most important to your economy: agriculture, mining or fishing?
- 2 Are any precious (= valuable e.g. gold or silver) metals found in your country?
- 3 What are some of the main crops grown in your country?

# 40 Animals and insects

## A Pets and farm animals

Many people keep **pets** (= domestic animals that live with people) in Britain. The most common are dogs and cats, but children in particular sometimes keep **mice** (singular = a **mouse**) and **rabbits**.

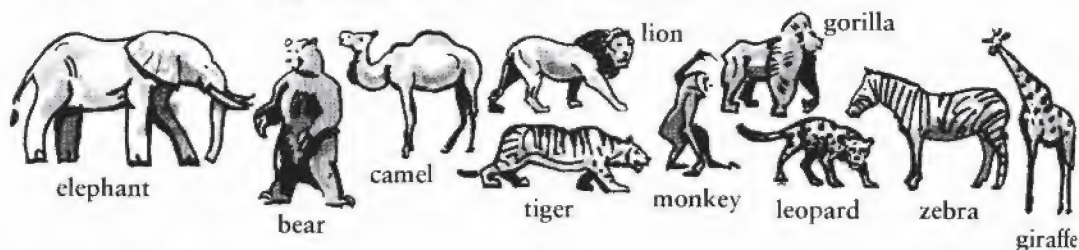


Farm animals include: sheep, pigs, cows, horses, chickens and goats.

*Note:* The word 'sheep' is the singular and plural form i.e. a sheep or some sheep. A young sheep is called a **lamb**.

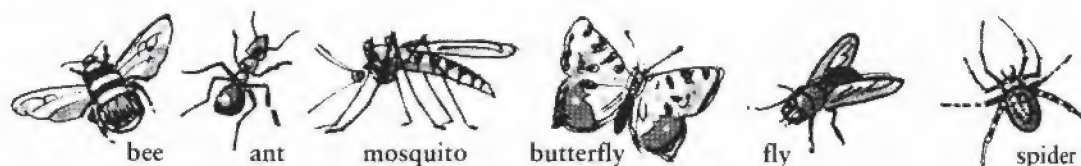
## B Wild animals

In a zoo or in the wild, you will find these wild animals.



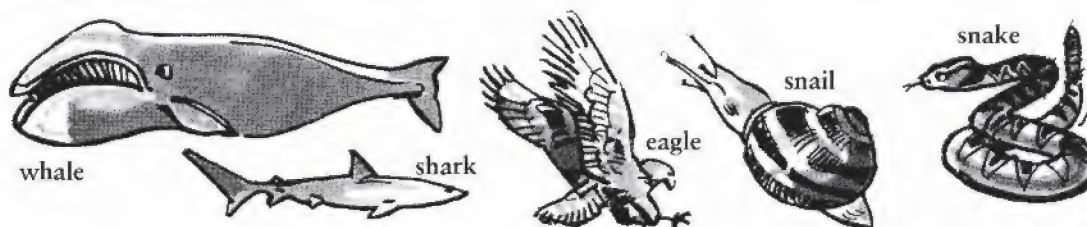
## C Common insects

Here are some common insects.



## D In the water, in the air, and on the ground

Here are some **creatures** (= living things, e.g. animals, birds, fish) that swim, fly, or move along the ground.



## Exercises

- 40.1** Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.

*Examples:* whale water (different) cat camel (same)

- |                |                   |                   |                |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 lion         | tiger             | 6 monkey          | mosquito       |
| 2 leopard      | mosquito <u>o</u> | 7 camel           | snake          |
| 3 <u>b</u> ear | <u>e</u> agle     | 8 leopard         | sh <u>a</u> rk |
| 4 gorilla      | giraffe           | 9 d <u>o</u> g    | was <u>p</u>   |
| 5 spider       | wild              | 10 m <u>ou</u> se | <u>c</u> ow    |

- 40.2** Divide these words into three groups and give each one a title.

monkey    horse    goat    fly    lion    cow    elephant    pig    mosquito  
butterfly    tiger    wasp    sheep    camel    ant    leopard    bear    chicken

- 40.3** Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

- 1 ..... can fly at a great height.
- 2 ..... can swim very long distances.
- 3 ..... can understand lots of human commands.
- 4 ..... can run very fast.
- 5 ..... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
- 6 ..... can be 30 metres in length.
- 7 ..... can eat fruit from tall trees.
- 8 ..... change their skin several times a year.
- 9 ..... can pick things up with their trunk.
- 10 ..... provide us with wool.

- 40.4** Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 They've got lots of pets: two dogs, four cats, and a .....
- 2 Their farm animals include cows, sheep and .....
- 3 The children love to see the 'big cats' at the zoo such as lions, tigers and .....
- 4 I hate most insects, but particularly mosquitoes and .....
- 5 We saw some really large animals at the Safari Park: elephants, giraffes and .....

- 40.5** Can you match these creatures with their maximum speeds?

lion	spider	elephant	64 kph	0.05 kph	80 kph
rabbit	pig	snail	56 kph	40 kph	18 kph
shark	golden eagle		270 kph	1.88 kph	

# 41 Countries, nationalities and languages

## A Who speaks what where?

<i>Country</i>	<i>Nationality</i>	<i>Language</i>
Germany	German	German
France	French	French
Italy	Italian	Italian
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Britain	British	English
Portugal	Portuguese	Portuguese
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
Korea	Korean	Korean
China	Chinese	Mandarin (also Cantonese)
Thailand	Thai	Thai
Australia	Australian	English
The United States of America	American	English
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
Sweden	Swedish	Swedish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
Holland	Dutch	Dutch
Mexico	Mexican	Spanish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Greece	Greek	Greek
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish
Argentina	Argentinian	Spanish

## B The people

When you are talking about people in general from a particular country, there are some nationalities that you can make plural with an 's', but others can only be formed with the definite article (and no plural 's'):

Brazilians	The British
Germans	The French
(The) Italians are (usually very ...)	The Swiss are (usually very ...)
Russians	The Dutch
Israelis	The Japanese

*Note:*

- With both groups you can also use the word 'people': British people, German people, etc.
- When you talk about one person from these countries, you need to add woman/man/person to the group on the right: a Brazilian but a Japanese person; a German but a Swiss person, etc.



## Exercises

### 41.1 Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.

- 1 Write down three countries where the first language is English.
- 2 What language is spoken in Brazil?
- 3 What are people from Holland called?
- 4 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.
- 5 What language is spoken in Saudi Arabia?
- 6 What nationality are people from Sweden?
- 7 What language is spoken in Mexico?
- 8 What are people from Egypt called?
- 9 What is the first language in Israel?
- 10 Where do people speak Mandarin?

### 41.2 Mark the main stress on the words in the box, and practise saying them.

Japan	Japanese	Brazilian	Egyptian	Arabic	Italian
Austria	Australia	Chinese	Portuguese	Saudi Arabia	

What do you notice about the stress on words ending *-ia*, *-ian*, and *-ese*?

### 41.3 Complete these sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.

*Examples:* I've worked a lot with Germans.  
I've spent a lot of time with the French.

- 1 We do a lot of business with .....
- 2 ..... are usually hard-working.
- 3 I have always found ..... very friendly.
- 4 People often say that ..... are reserved.
- 5 ..... are very organised.
- 6 I met a lot of ..... on my trip to Athens.

Germany
France
Japan
Israel
Brazil
Britain
Switzerland
Greece

### 41.4 Complete these sentences.

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Bangkok is the capital of .....      | 6 Riyadh is the capital of .....    |
| 2 Buenos Aires is the capital of ..... | 7 Athens is the capital of .....    |
| 3 Ankara is the capital of .....       | 8 Tel Aviv is the capital of .....  |
| 4 Seoul is the capital of .....        | 9 Stockholm is the capital of ..... |
| 5 Cairo is the capital of .....        | 10 Lisbon is the capital of .....   |

### 41.5 Can you identify these languages?

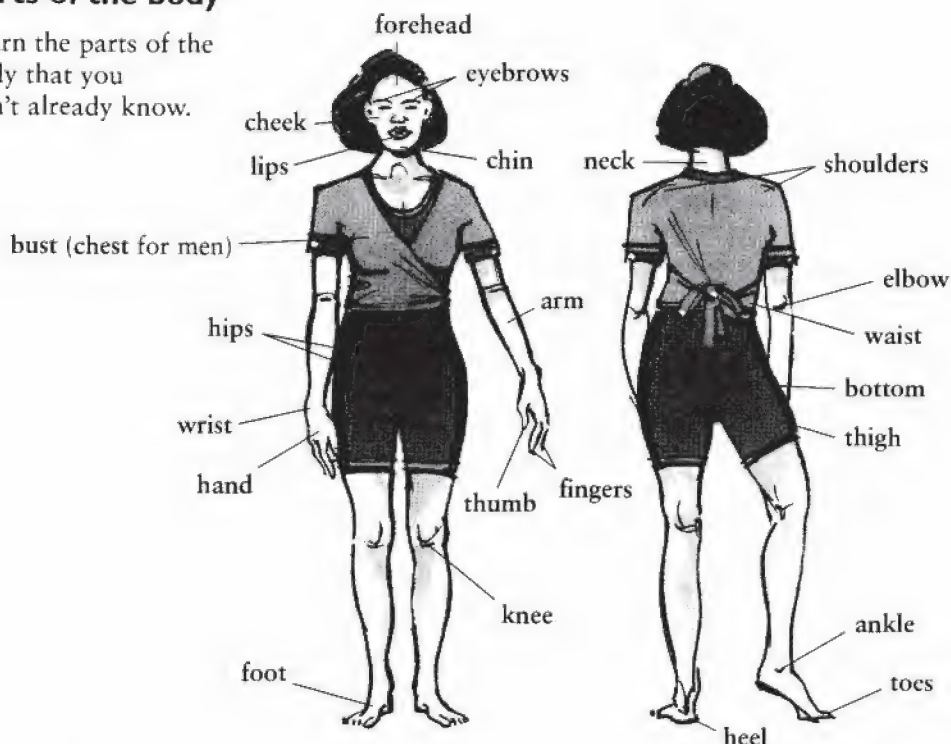
- |                       |                   |                    |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 <i>Здравствуйте</i> | 4 <i>今日は</i>      | 7 <i>goede dag</i> | 10 <i>Bonjour</i> |
| 2 <i>안녕하세요</i>        | 5 <i>Feia boa</i> | 8 <i>Hola</i>      | 11 <i>Hej!</i>    |
| 3 <i>Gao</i>          | 6 <i>你好</i>       | 9 <i>Grüezi</i>    |                   |

### 41.6 Have you met someone from each of the countries on the opposite page? Go through the list and tick the ones you have.

# 42 The body and what it does

## A Parts of the body

Learn the parts of the body that you don't already know.



## B Physical actions

You can **breathe** through your nose or your mouth. Most people **breathe** about 12–15 times a minute. People **smile** when they're happy, or to be polite; they **laugh** when people say something funny; they may **cry** when they're sad; they **yawn** when they're tired, or bored. Many people **nod** their head to mean 'yes', and **shake** their head when they mean 'no'. When you pick up something heavy, you must **bend** your knees and keep your back straight.



## C Common expressions



shake hands



blow your nose



fold your arms



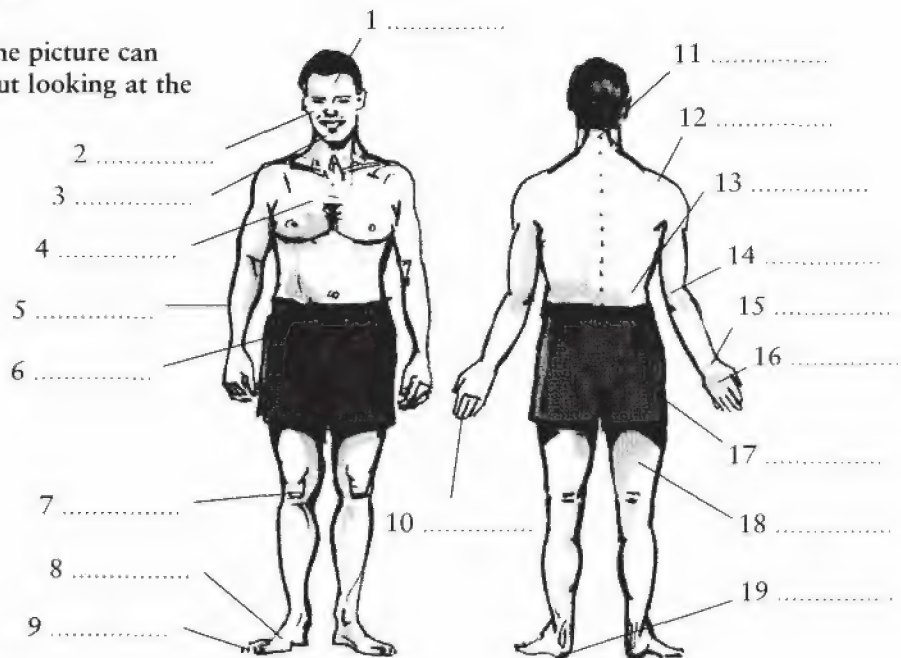
bite your nails



comb your hair

## Exercises

- 42.1** How much of the picture can you label without looking at the page opposite?



- 42.2** Match the verbs on the left with a suitable part of the body on the right to form common expressions. Use each verb and noun once only.

1 blow	your knees
2 shake	your nose
3 comb	your nails
4 fold	your head
5 bend	your arms
6 nod	your hair
7 bite	hands

- 42.3** What do these actions often mean? (There may be lots of possible answers.)

- 1 People often smile when .....
- 2 They often breathe quickly after .....
- 3 They laugh when .....
- 4 They may bite their nails' .....
- 5 They blow their nose .....
- 6 They shake their head .....
- 7 And nod their head .....
- 8 They cry .....
- 9 They yawn when .....

- 42.4** There are fourteen words describing parts of the body, either across or down, in this word square. Can you find them?

C	E	L	B	O	W	A
H	T	I	A	E	N	R
I	O	P	C	Y	A	M
N	E	C	K	E	I	H
I	H	A	N	K	L	E
K	C	H	E	S	T	E
C	H	E	E	K	A	L

## 43 Describing people's appearance

### A General

**Positive:** **beautiful** is generally used to describe women; **handsome** is used to describe men; **good-looking** is used for both; **pretty** is another positive word to describe a woman (often a girl) meaning 'attractive and nice to look at'.

**Negative:** **ugly** is the most negative word to describe someone; **plain** is more polite.

### B Height and build



tall and slim



medium height and build



short and fat



medium height and very muscular

**Note:** Another word for **slim** is **thin**, but **slim** has a more positive meaning, e.g. John is lovely and slim, but his brother is terribly thin. **Skinny** also has the same meaning but is very negative. It is not very polite to say someone is fat; **overweight** is more neutral and polite.

### C Hair



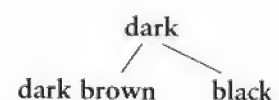
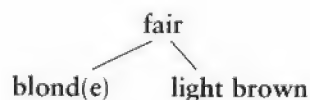
straight



wavy



curly



### D Special features

The man on the left has got very **pale skin** (= white skin). He also has **broad shoulders**, with a small scar at the top of his left arm. The other man has **dark skin**. He also has a **beard** and **moustache** and quite a **hairy chest** and a **tattoo**.



### E Asking questions about a person's appearance

Q: What does she look like?

A: She's quite tall, with short fair hair.

Q: How tall is she?

A: About 1 metre 65.

Q: How much does she weigh?

A: I don't know and it may be rude to ask. Probably about 45 kilos.



## Exercises

**43.1** Complete these sentences in a suitable way. (More than one answer may be possible.)

- 1 She's got blonde .....
- 2 He's got very pale .....
- 3 They've both got curly .....
- 4 I would say he was medium .....
- 5 Her brother has got very broad .....
- 6 She doesn't like men with hairy .....
- 7 Last time I saw him he had grown a .....
- 8 He's got very muscular .....
- 9 Both men were very good-.....
- 10 All of them have got dark .....

**43.2** Replace the underlined word in each sentence with a word which is either more suitable or more polite.

- 1 He told me he met a handsome girl in the disco last night.
- 2 She's beautiful but her younger sister is really quite ugly.
- 3 I think Peter is getting a bit fat, don't you?
- 4 Most people want to stay slim, but not as skinny as that girl over there.
- 5 I think she's hoping she'll meet a few beautiful men at the tennis club.

**43.3** You want to know about the following:

- someone's general appearance
- their height
- their weight

What questions do you need to ask? Complete these questions.

What .....

How .....

How much .....

Now answer these questions.

- 1 How tall are you?
- 2 How would you describe your build?
- 3 How much do you weigh?
- 4 What kind of hair have you got?
- 5 What colour is it?
- 6 Would you like it to be different? If so, what would you like?
- 7 Do you think you have any special features?
- 8 Are there any special features you would like to have?
- 9 Do you like beards?
- 10 Can you think of a famous woman you would describe as beautiful, and a famous man you would describe as good-looking?

If possible, ask another person these questions.

# 44 Describing character

## A Opposites

Many positive words describing character have clear opposites with a negative meaning.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Negative</i>
warm and friendly	cold and unfriendly
kind	unkind
nice, <u>pleasant</u>	horrible, unpleasant
generous (= happy to give/share)	mean (= never gives to others)
optimistic (= thinks positively)	pessimistic (= thinks negatively)
<u>cheerful</u> (= happy and smiling)	miserable (= always seems unhappy)
relaxed and easy-going	<u>tense</u> (= nervous; worries a lot; not calm)
strong	weak
sensitive	insensitive (= does not think about others' feelings)
honest (= always tells the truth)	dishonest

Jane is very **tense** at the moment because of her exams, but she's usually quite **relaxed** and **easy-going** about most things.

I think the weather influences me a lot: when it's sunny I feel more **cheerful** and **optimistic**; but when it's cold and raining I get very **miserable**.

He seemed a bit **unfriendly** at first, but now I've got to know him I realise he's very warm and kind.

The shop assistant told me that the dress I tried on looked better on people younger than me. I thought that was very **insensitive** of her, but at least she was being **honest**, I suppose.

## B Character in action

People often talk about qualities of character that you may need in a work situation. Again, some of these words come in pairs of opposites: one positive and one negative.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Negative</i>
hard-working	lazy (= never does any work)
punctual (=always on time)	not very punctual; always late
reliable	unreliable (= you cannot trust / depend on someone like this)
clever, bright ( <i>informal</i> )	stupid, thick ( <i>informal</i> )
flexible	inflexible (= a very fixed way of thinking; unable to change)
ambitious	unambitious (= no desire to be successful and get a better job)

Some pairs of opposites do not have a particularly positive or negative meaning:

He is very **shy** when you first meet him because he finds it difficult to talk to people and make conversation; but when he knows people quite well he's much more **self-confident**.

People often say the British are very **reserved** (= do not show their feelings), but when you get to know them they can be very **emotional** like anyone else.

## C Using nouns

Some important qualities are expressed through nouns.

One of her great qualities is that she **uses her initiative**. (= she can think for herself and take the necessary action; she does not need to wait for orders all the time)

That boy has got no **common sense** (= he does stupid things and doesn't think what he is doing). His sister, on the other hand, is very **sensible**. (= has lots of **common sense**)

## Exercises

- 44.1** Organise these words into pairs of opposites and put them in the columns below.

mean	clever	nice	lazy	relaxed	hard-working
tense	cheerful	generous	unpleasant	stupid	miserable

*Positive*

*Negative*

.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

- 44.2** What prefix forms the opposite of each of these words? (You need three different prefixes.)

kind	flexible	friendly	honest
reliable	sensitive	ambitious	pleasant

- 44.3** How would you describe the person in each of these descriptions?

- 1 He never bought me a drink all the time we were together.
- 2 I have to tell her what to do every minute of the working day. She wouldn't even open a window without someone's permission.
- 3 He often promises to do things but half the time he forgets.
- 4 She's always here on time.
- 5 I don't think he's done any work since he's been here.
- 6 She finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers.
- 7 He could work in any of the departments, and it doesn't matter to him if he's on his own or part of a team.
- 8 One of the great things about her is that she is so aware of what other people think or feel.
- 9 Bob, on the other hand, is the complete opposite. He is always making people angry or upset because he just doesn't consider their feelings.
- 10 The other thing about Bob is that he really wants to get the supervisor's job and then become boss for the whole department.

- 44.4** What nouns can be formed from these adjectives? Use a dictionary to help you.

*Example:* kind *kindness*

punctual	optimistic	reliable	lazy
confident	generous	ambitious	stupid
sensitive	strong	flexible	shy

- 44.5** Choose three words from the opposite page which describe you. Is there one quality you do not have but would like to have? What, in your opinion, is the worst quality described on the opposite page? If possible, compare your answers with a friend.

# 45 Human feelings and actions

## A Feelings

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Adjective(s)</i>
love (≠ hate)	—
happiness (≠ sadness)	happy (≠ sad)
anger	angry
fear	afraid (of) / frightened (of)
pride	proud (of)
jealousy	jealous (of)
embarrassment	embarrassed/embarrassing (see Unit 30)

*Note:*

- **Pride** has different meanings, but the most common is the feeling of satisfaction you have because you (or people you are connected with) have done something well.  
He was very **proud** when his wife became the first President of the organisation.
- **Jealousy** is a feeling of anger and unhappiness you may have if (a) someone you love shows a lot of interest in others, or (b) if someone has something you want / don't have.  
a) My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.  
b) He's **jealous** of his brother because his brother is more intelligent and makes more money.
- A common adjective is **upset**, which means unhappy, sad, and even angry, because something unpleasant has happened, e.g. He was very **upset** when we didn't invite him.

## B Ways of ...

*Ways of speaking*

whisper (v, n) (= speak very quietly)

shout (v, n) (= speak in a very loud voice)

*Ways of looking*

stare (v, n) (= look at someone/something in a fixed way for a long time)

glance (at) (v, n) (= look at someone or something very quickly)

*Ways of walking*

stroll (v, n) (= walk in a slow casual way)

march (v, n) (= walk quickly and with a clear purpose/reason)

## C Things we do with our hands



clap



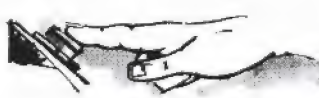
knock (on a door) (v, n)



wave (goodbye)



point (at sth./sb.)



press (a button)



punch someone



## Exercises

### 45.1 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives?

angry    sad    happy    proud    jealous    embarrassed

### 45.2 Find the logical ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 He was very proud when       | a someone stole his money.                                |
| 2 He was very jealous when     | b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister.      |
| 3 He was very embarrassed when | c he heard that his aunt had died.                        |
| 4 He was very angry when       | d he saw those big dogs running towards him.              |
| 5 He was very sad when         | e he bought her a birthday present on the wrong day.      |
| 6 He was very frightened when  | f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked. |

### 45.3 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Would you feel embarrassed or upset (or both) if you forgot your mother's birthday or your father's birthday?
- 2 Do you ever feel frightened in a car (as a passenger) because you are going very fast?
- 3 Do you get angry when other people want you to do things that you don't want to do?
- 4 If you made a stupid mistake in English, would you feel embarrassed?
- 5 Is there any one thing that you are very proud of?
- 6 Are there any common situations where you sometimes feel embarrassed?

### 45.4 What are these people doing? Describe their actions using words from the opposite page.



### 45.5 Replace the underlined words with a single verb that has the same meaning.

- 1 She stopped working and looked quickly at the clock.
- 2 As we were in the library, he spoke very quietly in my ear.
- 3 We walked casually along the beach and then stopped for a drink.
- 4 He made us all walk quickly up the hill.
- 5 The man kept looking at Susan, but she didn't seem to notice.
- 6 Jim doesn't know what happened, except that the man hit him hard on the side of his face.

## 46 Family and friends

### A Relatives (= members of your family)

These are the most important relatives (also called **relations**):

	<i>male</i>	<i>female</i>
Your parents' parents	grandfather	grandmother
Your parents' brother and sister	uncle(s)	aunt(s)
Your aunt's/uncle's children	cousin(s)	cousin(s)
The father and mother of the person you marry	father-in-law	mother-in-law
The brother and sister of the person you marry	brother-in-law	sister-in-law
Your brother's/sister's children	nephew(s)	niece(s)
The person you marry dies, so you are a ...	widower	widow
Your mother or father remarries, so you have a ...	step-father	step-mother

### B Family background (= family history)

My grandfather was a market gardener in Ireland. He grew flowers, fruit and vegetables, and sold them in the market every day. He worked hard all his life, and when he died, his son (now my uncle) and daughter (my mother) **inherited** a large house and garden (= received this house and garden from my grandfather when he died). They carried on the business together until my mother met my father. They got married, moved to England, and I was born two years later. They didn't have any more children, so I am an **only child**.

### C Family names

When you are born, your family gives you a **first name**, e.g. James, Kate, Sarah and Alex are common first names in Britain. Your **family name** (also called your **surname**) is the one that all the family share e.g. Smith, Brown, Jones, and O'Neill are common surnames in Britain. Some parents give their children a **middle name** (like a first name), but you do not usually say this name. Your **full name** is all the names you have, e.g. Sarah Jane Smith.

### D Changing times

Society changes and so do families. In some places, people may decide to live together but do not get married. They are not husband and wife, but call each other their **partner**. There are also many families in some parts of the world where the child or children live(s) with just their mother or father; these are sometimes called **single-parent families**.

### E Friends

We can use a number of adjectives before **friend**:

an **old friend** (= someone you have known for a long time)

a **close friend** (= a good friend; someone you like and trust)

your **best friend** (= the one friend you feel closest to)

We use the word **colleagues** to describe the people we work with.

### F Ex-

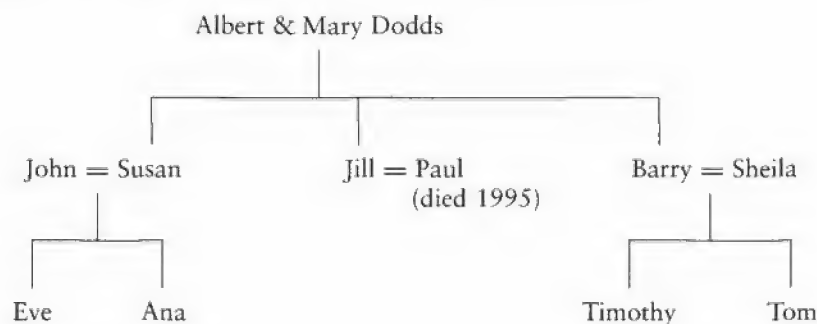
We use this for a husband/wife/boyfriend/girlfriend we had in the past but do not have now:

The children stay with my **ex-husband** at the weekend.

I saw an **ex-girlfriend** of mine at the disco last night.

## Exercises

**46.1** Look at the family tree and complete the sentences below.



- 1 John is Jill's .....
- 2 Timothy is Jill's .....
- 3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's .....
- 4 Eve is Sheila's .....
- 5 Albert Dodds is Tom's .....
- 6 Barry is Eve's .....
- 7 Susan is Timothy's .....
- 8 As Paul died in 1995, Jill is a .....
- 9 Tom is Mary's .....
- 10 The only two people who are not related are ..... and .....

**46.2** Answer these questions about yourself and your country.

- 1 What's your first name?
- 2 What's your surname?
- 3 Is that a common name in your country?
- 4 Do you have a middle name?
- 5 Are you an only child?
- 6 Who is your oldest friend?
- 7 Do you work? If so, how many of your work colleagues are also your friends?
- 8 Do you have any ex-boyfriends or ex-girlfriends who speak English very well?
- 9 Are single-parent families becoming more common in your country?
- 10 In your country, do more and more people live together without getting married?

**46.3** Draw your own family tree. Are there any relationships you cannot describe in English? Can you also write a short summary of your family background (as in B on the opposite page)?

# 47 Ages and stages

## A Growing up

Age	Stage
0-1 approximately	a <b>baby</b>
1-2	a <b>toddler</b>
2-12 approximately	a <b>child</b> – this period is your <b>childhood</b>
13-17 approximately	a <b>teenager</b> (14 = early teens)
18+	an <b>adult</b>
20-30	<b>in your twenties</b> (24-26 = mid twenties)
30-40	<b>in your thirties</b> (38 = late thirties)
40+	people are <b>middle-aged</b> ; <b>in middle age</b>
60 or 65	<b>retirement</b> (= when people stop work; they are <b>retired</b> )
75+	<b>old age</b> (you can also use <b>elderly</b> )

*Note:* For boys, the period between 14-17 approximately (slightly younger for girls) is called **adolescence**, i.e. you are an **adolescent**. In law you are an **adult** at the age of 18, but many people think of you as an adult when you leave school.

## B Childhood and adolescence

Sam (on the right) was **born** in Scotland but when he was two, his father got a new job in London and he **grew up** in the south of England. He **went to university** at 18 where he ...



## C Romance

... where he **met** Anthea. He **went out with** her (= she was his **girlfriend**; he was her **boyfriend**) for three years, but towards the end they had lots of **rows** (= arguments) and they **split up** (= **broke up** / separated). In his **mid twenties** ...



## D Marriage

... in his **mid twenties** he **met** Maureen. They **fell in love** and **got married** within six months. A year later she got **pregnant** and they had their first child, a boy. As you can see, she is now **expecting** their second child (to be pregnant = to be expecting a baby). But sadly Sam met another woman and he left Maureen two months ago to live with the other woman.





## Exercises

### 47.1 What stage of life are these people at?

- 1 Paul isn't 2 yet, so he's still a .....
- 2 Albert was a bus driver for 40 years but stopped work two years ago, so he is now .....
- 3 Susan is 25, so she is in her .....
- 4 Caroline is 50 this year so she is now in her .....
- 5 Ron is 33 and his wife is 32, so they are both in .....
- 6 Joan is 75 this year, so she is quite .....
- 7 Jason was born six weeks ago, so he's a .....
- 8 Leyla is 13 this year, so she'll soon be a .....
- 9 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes .....
- 10 15 is often a difficult age for boys going through .....

### 47.2 Are these sentences *true* or *false* about the people on the opposite page? If the sentences are *false*, write the correct answer below. Try to answer the questions first without looking at the opposite page.

- 1 Sam was born in Scotland.  
.....
- 2 He grew up in the south of Ireland.  
.....
- 3 He went out with Anthea for two years.  
.....
- 4 They split up because Sam went to live in Japan.  
.....
- 5 Sam fell in love with Maureen.  
.....
- 6 They had a baby a year after they got married.  
.....
- 7 Maureen is now expecting her third child.  
.....
- 8 Maureen left Sam.  
.....

### 47.3 Find the logical ending for each of the sentence beginnings on the left and construct Rebecca's life.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1 Rebecca was born       | a was a boy at her secondary school.   |
| 2 She grew up            | b in her early thirties.               |
| 3 Her first boyfriend    | c on a farm with lots of animals.      |
| 4 She went out with him  | d when she was in her late twenties.   |
| 5 She went to university | e in a small local hospital in 1972.   |
| 6 She fell in love       | f for six months.                      |
| 7 They got married       | g just after the baby was born.        |
| 8 She had a baby         | h with another student doing medicine. |
| 9 Her father retired     | i when she left school.                |

How many of the sentence beginnings on the left can you answer about your own life?  
Answer the ones you can.

## 48 Daily routines

### A Sleep

During the week I usually **wake up** at 6.30 a.m. I sometimes **lie in bed** for five minutes but then I have to **get up** (= get out of bed and get dressed). Most evenings, I **go to bed** at about 11.30 p.m. I'm usually very tired, so I **go to sleep** / **fall asleep** very quickly. Occasionally though, I can't **get to sleep** (= succeed in sleeping). When that happens, I sometimes manage to **fall asleep** about 3 a.m., then I **oversleep** (= sleep too long) in the morning. If I **have a late night** (= go to bed very late; ≠ an **early night**), I try to **have a nap** (= a short sleep, e.g. 20–25 minutes) in the afternoon. The weekends are different. On Saturday and Sunday I **have a lie-in.** (= stay in bed until later, e.g. 8 a.m. or 8.30 a.m.)

### B Food

In the week I **have breakfast** at 7.30 a.m., lunch at 1.00 p.m., and dinner around 7 p.m. I also have one or two **snacks** (= small amounts of food), e.g. cakes, biscuits or fruit, during the day at work. As I **live alone** / **on my own** / **by myself** (= without other people), I also have to **make my own breakfast and dinner** (= prepare breakfast and dinner for myself), but during the week I don't **bother** (= make an effort) to cook very much. I also have to **feed** (= give food to) my two cats twice a day as well.

*Note:* With **breakfast**, **lunch** or **dinner** in general, there is no definite article (the).

### C Keeping clean

In the summer I **have a shower** in the morning, but in the winter I often **have a bath instead** (= in place of a shower). Sometimes I **have a shave** at the same time, or I shave when I **have a wash and clean/brush my teeth** after breakfast. I **wash my hair** two or three times a week.

*Note:* In some contexts, it is more common in English to use **have + noun** than a single verb, e.g. I'm going to **have a wash**. [NOT ~~I'm going to wash.~~]

### D Work

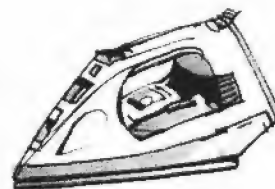
In the morning I **leave home** about 8.15 a.m. and **get to work** (= arrive at work) by 9 a.m. I **have a lunch break** (= stop work for lunch) from 1–2 p.m., and a couple of short **breaks** during the day. I **leave work** around 5.30 p.m. and **get home** about 6.15 p.m.

### E Evenings

During the week I usually **stay in** (= stay at home) and **have a rest** (= relax and do nothing). But at the weekend I often **go out** (= leave the house for social reasons, e.g. go to the cinema or disco with friends), but quite often I also **have friends for dinner** (= invite friends to my house and cook dinner for them), or friends just **come round** (= visit me at the house) for a **chat** (*informal*) (= conversation) or we **play cards**, e.g. poker or bridge.

### F Housework

I do the **shopping** (= buy the food) on Saturday. **Fortunately** (= luckily) I have a **cleaner** (= a person who cleans) and she does most of the housework: she **does my washing** (= washes the clothes), the **washing-up** (= washes the dishes) and **does most of the ironing**.



## Exercises

- 48.1** The opposite page includes a number of expressions with 'have + noun', e.g. have breakfast, have a shower. Can you remember six more?

have .....	have .....
have .....	have .....
have .....	have .....

- 48.2** Now complete some more word partnerships and expressions by matching the verbs on the left with the correct word on the right.

1 fall	a rest
2 do	my teeth
3 have	the dog
4 play	asleep
5 go	cards
6 clean	the ironing
7 feed	early
8 get up	to bed

- 48.3** Complete this dialogue with suitable words or phrases from the opposite page.

A: Don't <sup>(1)</sup>..... to cook a meal this evening.  
 B: Why not?  
 A: We could <sup>(2)</sup>..... instead.  
 B: Yeah. Where?  
 A: Well I'd like to go to that new Korean restaurant. We could ask Karen and Mike to come.  
 B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather <sup>(3)</sup>..... and have an <sup>(4)</sup>..... night.  
 A: But it's Friday. You can have a <sup>(5)</sup>..... tomorrow if we have a late night.  
 B: Yes I know but I'm tired. Look, why don't you ask Karen and Mike to <sup>(6)</sup>..... for a meal. I can order some pizzas from the takeaway and we'll have a nice evening here.  
 A: Sorry, but if you don't want to come to the restaurant with me, I'll go <sup>(7)</sup>.....

- 48.4** Here are some common sentences in English. Translate them into your own language and then decide which of these sentences you often use in your own language.

- 1 Did you go out last night?
- 2 I think I'm going to stay in this evening.
- 3 I overslept this morning.
- 4 I couldn't get to sleep last night.
- 5 Do you want to come round this evening?
- 6 I forgot to do the shopping.
- 7 What time did you get home?
- 8 I nearly fell asleep in the lesson today.

- 48.5** Can you find three facts from the opposite page which are exactly the same in your routine, three which are similar, and three which are completely different? Complete the table below.

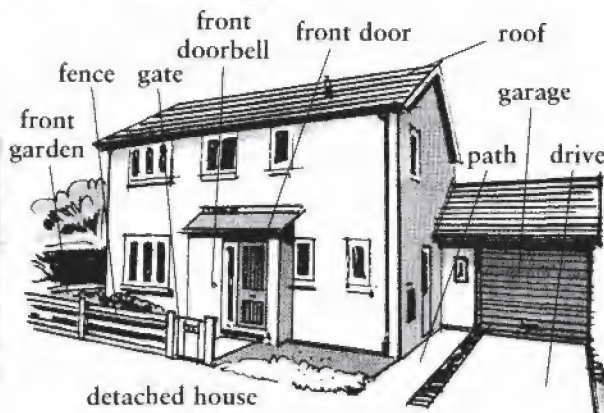
	<i>same</i>	<i>similar</i>	<i>completely different</i>
1	I go to bed around 11.30 p.m.	I leave home at 8.40 a.m.	I never do any ironing.
2	.....	.....	.....
3	.....	.....	.....
4	.....	.....	.....

## 49 Homes and buildings

### A Houses



semi-detached house

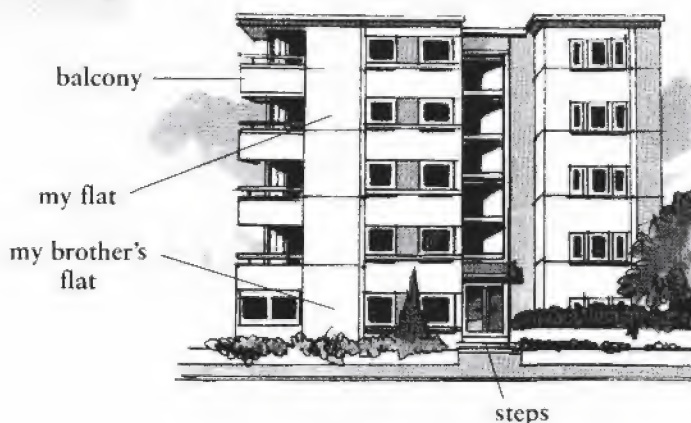


detached house



terraced houses

### B Flats



I live in a block of flats.

My brother lives on the ground floor, and I have a flat on the third floor.

Unfortunately there is no lift, so I have to climb three flights of stairs to reach my flat. But I do have a balcony with a wonderful view of the park opposite the flats.

*Note:* Steps are usually outside a building or inside a public building; they are stone or wooden. Stairs (*pl*) connect floors inside a building and are often covered with a carpet.

### C Buying and renting

Some people buy a flat or house (= they **own** it / it **belongs** to them). When they do this in Britain, people usually borrow money from a bank or an organisation called a Building Society. This money, which is called a **mortgage**, is often paid back over 25 years. Other people **rent** a house or flat (= they pay money every week or month to the person who owns the house). When they do this, the **money** they pay is called the **rent**, and the person who owns the house or flat is the **landlord**.

### D Describing a flat or house

The rooms on the ground floor are quite **dark** ( $\neq$  light) because they don't get (= receive) very much sun. They are also quite **noisy** ( $\neq$  quiet) because they are near the roads and the traffic. The other negative thing is that the rooms are **draughty** (= cold air comes into the room through the windows and under the doors because they don't fit very well). This means it is expensive to **heat** the rooms (= to keep the rooms warm). Fortunately I have a very good **central heating** system. In other ways, it is also very nice: it's **in good condition** (= in a good state/doesn't need to be repaired;  $\neq$  **in bad condition**), and the rooms are **huge/enormous** (= very, very big;  $\neq$  **tiny** / very, very small)



## Exercises

**49.1** What can you remember about the house and block of flats on the opposite page? Without looking, try to answer these questions. If you think an answer is false, correct it. Finally, check your answers by looking at the opposite page.

- 1 Does the house have a garage?
- 2 Does it have a fence around the front garden?
- 3 Is there a window in the roof?
- 4 Is the gate open or shut?
- 5 How many steps are there in front of the entrance to the block of flats?
- 6 Does each flat have a balcony?
- 7 Does the brother live on the first floor?
- 8 Do the flats have a view of the countryside?

**49.2** Complete these sentences with a suitable noun or verb.

- 1 I opened the ....., walked up the ..... and rang the .....
- 2 We had to ..... six flights of stairs to get to her flat because the ..... wasn't working.
- 3 I've got a great ..... from my balcony.
- 4 Do you own the flat or do you ..... it?
- 5 I'm living in the house now but it actually ..... to my brother. He bought it two years ago. It was in very bad ..... then, but he spent a lot of money on it.
- 6 It costs a lot of money to ..... a house when you live in a cold climate. Central ..... is usually quite expensive.

**49.3** Write down four more positive things and four more negative things you could say about a house/flat or the rooms in a house/flat. When you have finished, compare your answers with section D opposite.

*Positive*

the rooms are very light

*Negative*

the rooms are very dark

.....

.....

.....

.....

Now think about your answers again. Which positive features are the most important for you? Which negative features do you hate the most?

**49.4** What about your home? Answer these questions.

- 1 Do you live in a house or flat?
- 2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
- 3 If you live in a house, do you have a garden?
- 4 Does the house/flat belong to you (or your family), or do you rent it?
- 5 Do you have your own garage or personal parking space?
- 6 Would you describe your house/flat as dark or light?
- 7 Is it noisy or quiet?
- 8 Do you have central heating?

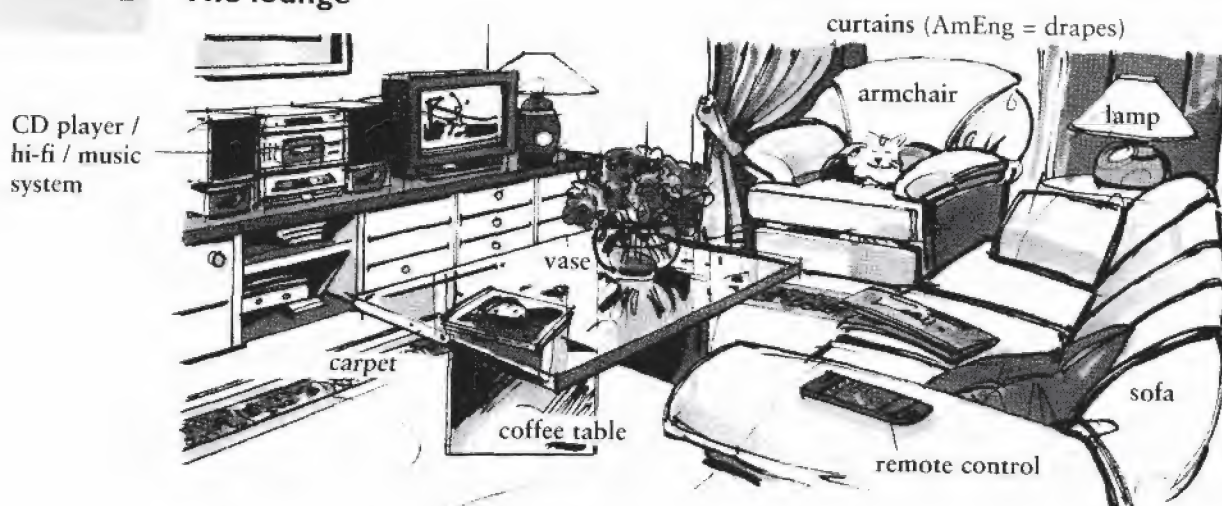
# 50 Around the home I

## A Rooms

The living room or lounge (= where you sit, relax, talk and watch TV); the dining room; the kitchen; the bedroom(s); and the bathroom(s).

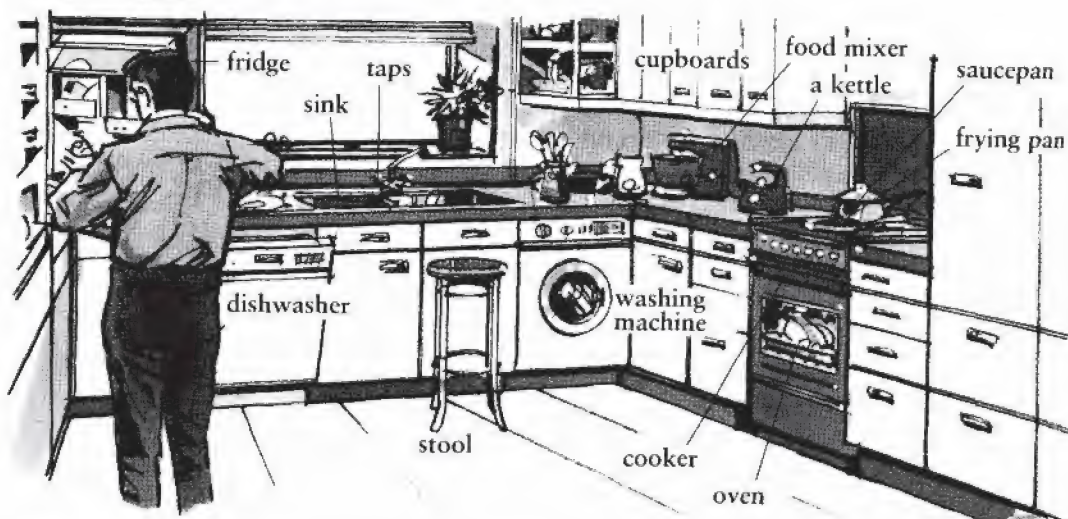
Some people also have a study (= room with a desk where you work), a utility room (= a room usually next to the kitchen, where you have a washing machine), a spare room (= a room you don't use every day. Often this is a room that guests can use), and possibly a playroom for small children.

## B The lounge



While the cat was asleep in the armchair, I sat on the sofa and had a look at the paper. Then I turned on the TV and went to make a cup of tea.

## C The kitchen



I put the meat in the oven, put my dirty clothes in the washing machine, made the coffee and put the milk back in the fridge.

## Exercises

**50.1** Complete the descriptions. (There may be more than one possible answer.)

- 1 The bedroom, that's where you ...*sleep*.....
- 2 The kitchen, that's where you do the .....
- 3 The bathroom, that's where you have a ..... and .....
- 4 The lounge, that's where you ..... and .....
- 5 The dining room, that's where you .....
- 6 A spare room, that's often where .....
- 7 A study, that's usually where you .....
- 8 A utility room, that's often where .....

**50.2** You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?

- 1 milk
- 2 meat that you are going to cook
- 3 dirty clothes
- 4 dirty cups and saucers
- 5 clean cups and saucers
- 6 biscuits and a packet of spaghetti

**50.3** Here are some things you find in the lounge or kitchen but the letters are jumbled. What are they, and where do they belong?

skin    nacitusr    rapcet    shadriswhe    teklet  
faos    veon    digref    hiamcrar    pobcadru    acepasnu

**50.4** Complete these sentences with the correct adverb or preposition.

- 1 He put the plates ..... the cupboard.
- 2 I took the ham ..... of the fridge, made myself a couple of sandwiches, and then I put the rest of the ham ..... in the fridge.
- 3 I usually sit ..... the sofa and my husband sits ..... an armchair.
- 4 I was bored, so I turned ..... the television.
- 5 You normally cook it ..... the oven for about forty minutes.
- 6 I took the butter ..... of the fridge and put it ..... the table.

**50.5** Imagine you have just moved into a new flat, and for the first six months you can only have six of the following. Which would you choose?

sofa    carpets    dishwasher    TV    cooker    curtains    fridge    desk  
hi-fi    bed    dining table    washing machine    kettle    saucepans  
food mixer    armchair

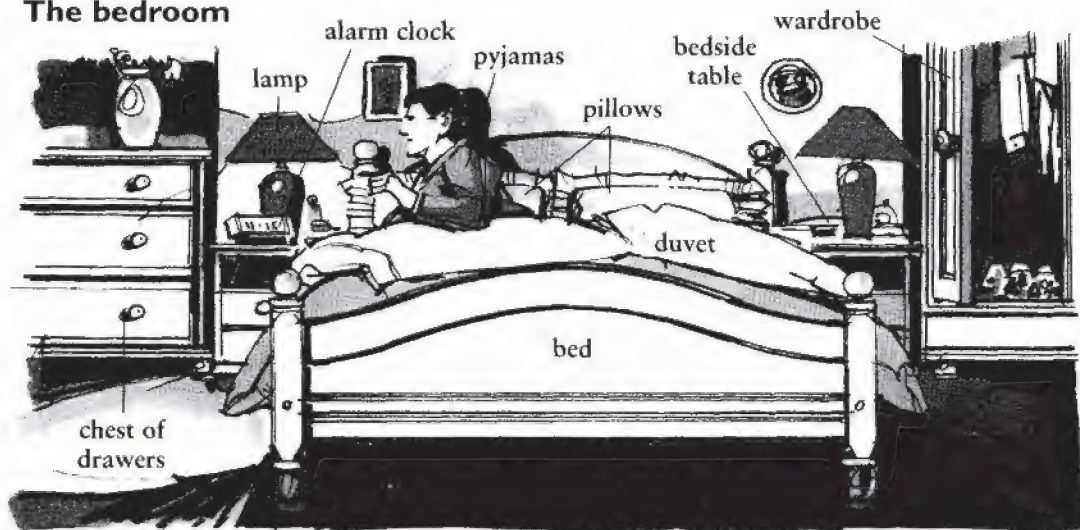
**50.6** Write down:

- 1 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can turn on/off.
- 2 three things in the kitchen you can wash.
- 3 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can sit on.
- 4 two things you can use to boil water.



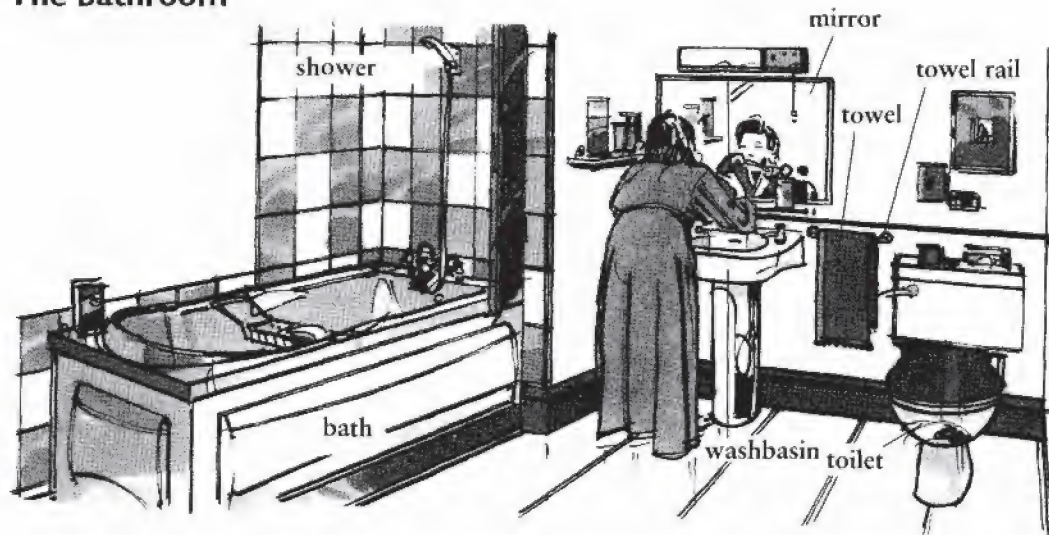
## 51 Around the home 2

### A The bedroom



I put on my pyjamas, got into bed, set the alarm clock, switched off the light, and went to sleep.

### B The bathroom



I didn't have time for a bath, but I had a wash, cleaned my teeth, and then I went to school.

### C Housework (U)

My room is very **clean and tidy** (= everything in order), but my brother is very untidy; he leaves his clothes all over the floor and never makes his bed. What's worse, he doesn't clean his room very often, so most of the time it is quite dirty.

I **do the washing-up** every evening after dinner, and I normally **do the washing and ironing** at the weekend when I have a bit more free time. I also **hoover** the carpets and **polish** the dining room table once a week.

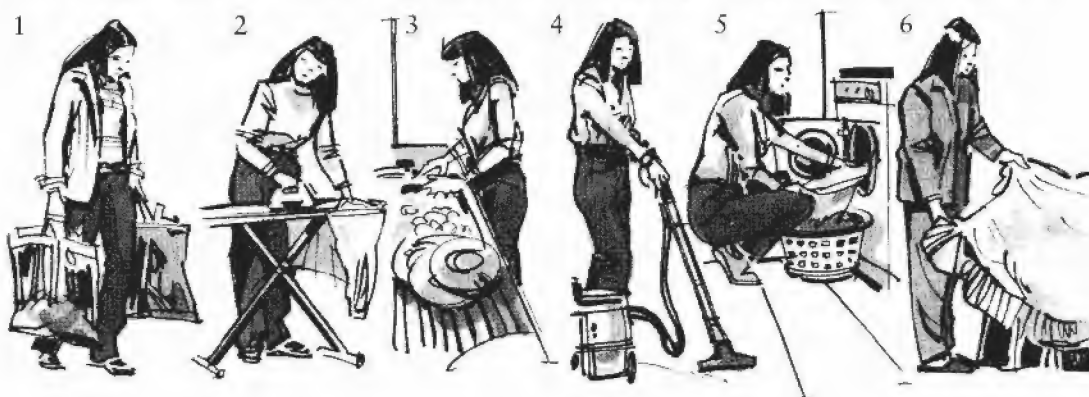


## Exercises

- 51.1** Find the correct ending on the right for each of these sentence beginnings on the left, then put the sentences in the most logical order.

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1 I cleaned      | the light       |
| 2 I went         | into bed        |
| 3 I set          | a wash          |
| 4 I switched off | my teeth        |
| 5 I had          | to sleep        |
| 6 I put on       | the alarm clock |
| 7 I got          | my pyjamas      |

- 51.2** The pictures show six things the woman did this morning. Complete the sentences below.



- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 She ..... | 4 She ..... |
| 2 She ..... | 5 She ..... |
| 3 She ..... | 6 She ..... |

How often do you do these things? Complete these sentences about yourself.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 I often .....        |  |
| 2 I sometimes .....    |  |
| 3 I occasionally ..... |  |
| 4 I never .....        |  |
| 5 I .....              |  |
| 6 I .....              |  |

- 51.3** Test your memory. Cover the opposite page and answer these questions about the pictures.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Does the alarm clock show 11.30?                 | 5 Is the girl in the bathroom holding a towel? |
| 2 Does he have one pillow or two?                  | 6 Is she looking in the mirror?                |
| 3 Is the wardrobe open?                            | 7 Is the shower above the bath?                |
| 4 How many drawers does the chest of drawers have? | 8 Can you see any soap on the washbasin?       |

How well do you know your own home? Answer these questions as quickly as possible.

- 1 Have you got a mirror above the washbasin in the bathroom?
- 2 Have you got a towel rail on the same wall as the washbasin?
- 3 Is the toilet next to the bath/shower?
- 4 Have you got a wardrobe and chest of drawers in your bedroom?
- 5 Have you got a lamp on your bedside table?
- 6 Have you got an alarm clock?

## 52 Everyday problems

### A There's something wrong with ...

If there is a problem with a machine or a thing that you use e.g. TV, light, washing machine, computer, food mixer, pen, etc., we often use these expressions:

There's **something wrong with** the TV. (= there is a problem with it)

The light's **not working**. (= not functioning / there is no light)

The shower's **not working properly**. (= it is functioning but not very well)

The telephone is **out of order**. (= not in use / not functioning)

*Note:* The phrase **out of order** is often used when a public machine or piece of equipment isn't working, e.g. public telephone, public toilet, drinks machine at a station, etc.

### B In the home

Yesterday morning Paul had a lot of problems.

He dropped a cup



and it broke



He got another cup, made a coffee, and then spilt it.



It **ruined** (= destroyed) his T-shirt because there was a large **stain** on it.



He decided to make some toast, but he **burnt** the first piece (if you **burn** something, you damage it with fire), then realised he'd **run out** of bread (= the bread was finished / there was no more bread). He did not leave home **in a good mood** (= feeling very happy).

### C Out and about

After Paul went out, things got worse. He left home with a ten-pound note in his pocket, and walked to the bus stop. Unfortunately he was a bit late and the bus was a bit early, so he **missed the bus**. While he waited for the next one, he got out his walkman, but the **batteries had run out** (= the batteries were finished). When the bus arrived, he got on and put his hand in his pocket – no ten-pound note (he had **lost his money**). The driver told him to get off. He didn't want to be late for school, so he started running. Moments later, he saw a dog, but not its lead – and **tripped over the lead**.



He got to his feet, carried on to school, then he realised he had **left** his bag on the bus.

*Note:* Students often say 'he forgot his bag on the bus' in this situation. In English, we must use the verb **leave** if we say where something is. For example:

I've **forgotten** my bag; *but* I **left** my bag on the bus.

## Exercises

**52.1** Complete the past tense and past participle of these verbs.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Past participle</i>
burn break drop spill trip lose leave		

**52.2** Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct ending on the right.

- |                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 I dropped the radio on the floor | a when I lit that cigarette.        |
| 2 The batteries have run out       | b and had to wait ages for another. |
| 3 I'm afraid I left                | c and it made a mess on the carpet. |
| 4 I spilt the drink                | d to bring my money.                |
| 5 I missed the bus                 | e my money at home.                 |
| 6 I burnt myself                   | f and now I can't get it to work.   |
| 7 I forgot                         | g so I can't listen to my walkman.  |

**52.3** This is what happened when Paul had a party at his house. Write a description of the damage.



**52.4** Write logical answers for each of these questions, using vocabulary from the opposite page.

- 1 How did you break that glass?
- 2 Why can't we watch TV?
- 3 How did you cut your knee like that?
- 4 I'm cold. What's wrong with the central heating?
- 5 What happened to the money I gave you?
- 6 Where's your homework?
- 7 What's wrong with this radio?
- 8 Why can't you use the public phone in the station?

**52.5** Answer these questions using *often* / *occasionally* / *hardly ever* / *never*.

How often do you:

- |                   |                      |                    |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| drop things?      | break things?        | burn things?       |
| spill things?     | lose things?         | forget things?     |
| trip over things? | leave things behind? | run out of things? |

What sort of things do you drop, burn, run out of, etc.?

# 53 Money

## A Notes and coins

Here are some examples of British money. The **currency** (= the type of money used in a country) is called **sterling**.



ten pounds  
a ten-pound note

fifty pence (we usually say 50p)  
a fifty-pence piece

## B Common verbs

Notice how these common verbs are used.

spend £££ (on) sth.	Last week I <b>spent</b> £100 <b>on</b> food, and £20 <b>on</b> books.
pay (for) sth.	I <b>paid</b> £200 <b>for</b> my new desk. (= it cost me £200) Where do I have to <b>pay</b> <b>for</b> these things?
cost	My new desk <b>cost</b> (me) £200. (= I <b>paid</b> £200)
charge	The mechanic <b>charged</b> me £100. (= asked me to pay £100 for the service he provided)
lend	Could you <b>lend</b> <b>me</b> some money? <i>or</i>
borrow	Could I <b>borrow</b> some money?
waste	Parents often think that children <b>waste</b> their money (= use it badly) on sweets and other things that they don't need.
save (up)	I'm <b>saving</b> <b>(up)</b> (= keeping some of my money when I receive it) for a new bike. I should have enough by the end of the year.

## C Adjectives

free	cheap	reasonable	quite expensive	very expensive	incredibly expensive
←					→
–	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$

## D Important words and phrases

I **can't afford** (= don't have enough money) to go on holiday this year.

How much is that watch **worth**? (= What is the **value** of that watch?)

It's **worth** about £50. (= the **value** is £50)

The **cost of living** (= how much people **pay** for things) is very high in places like Sweden or Norway, but people still have a good **standard of living** (= the level of money and comfort people have).



## Exercises

- 53.1** Fill the gaps using the past tense of verbs from the box. Be careful, most of them are irregular.

buy	spend	lose	pay	cost
sell	win	waste	find	give

- 1 My car was five years old, so I ..... it and ..... a new one.
- 2 I was very sad when I ..... my watch in the street. It was a present from my wife and it ..... her a lot of money. Fortunately, somebody ..... it the next day and took it to a Police Station.
- 3 I ..... over £2,000 for my computer, but it isn't worth very much now.
- 4 My father ..... me £50 last week but I ..... most of it on a ticket for a concert on Friday.
- 5 Last week somebody ..... £1m in a game on television. It was incredibly exciting.
- 6 I'm afraid I ..... my money on those CDs because I never play them.

- 53.2** What can you say in these situations? Complete the sentences but do not use the underlined words and phrases.

*Example:* You want to tell a friend that a restaurant wasn't cheap.

*The restaurant was quite expensive.*

- 1 You want to know the value of your friend's gold ring.  
How much is .....?
- 2 A friend wants to go to an expensive restaurant but you don't have enough money.  
I'm afraid I .....
- 3 You want to borrow some money from a friend.  
Could you .....?
- 4 You want to know how much a friend paid for her dictionary.  
How much .....?

- 53.3** How quickly can you answer these questions? Write down answers to all of them in one minute, then go back and check. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Is the currency in America called the dollar?
- 2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece?
- 3 If you lend something to someone, do they borrow it?
- 4 If you waste money, do you use it well?
- 5 Is 'sterling' a currency?
- 6 If you 'can't afford' something, do you have enough money for it?
- 7 Does 'cost of living' mean the same as 'standard of living'?
- 8 If someone tells you a hotel is reasonable, is it very expensive?

- 53.4** Write down the approximate price of six things in your country, e.g. a daily newspaper, a short bus journey, a cup of coffee in a bar/cafe, a ticket for the cinema, a takeaway hamburger, a pair of jeans, etc. Do you think the price is expensive, reasonable, cheap? Compare your answers with someone from the same town, and if possible, someone from a different country.

# 54 Health: illness and disease

## A Common problems



She's sneezing.



She's coughing.



She's got a  
a sore throat.



She's blowing  
her nose.



She's got  
a temperature.

### What's the matter?

I've got a cold

I've got **flu** (U) (more  
serious than a cold)

I've got **hay fever** (U)

I've got **diarrhoea** (U)

I feel sick

I've got a **hangover**

### How do you know? (the symptoms)

a sore throat, sneezing, a cough  
symptoms for a cold + aching  
muscles and a temperature, e.g. 39.5  
sneezing, runny nose, sore eyes

I keep going to the toilet  
I want to vomit (= be sick)  
headache, feeling sick

### Cause of illness

a virus  
a virus

allergic reaction to  
pollen from grass  
often food, or a virus  
many e.g. food, alcohol  
too much alcohol

**Note:** For these **illnesses**, you can either buy something from the **chemist**, or go to your doctor, who may give you a **prescription** (= a piece of paper with an order for some medicine) that you get from the chemist.

## B Aches and pains

**Nouns:** We only use **ache** with the following: I've got **toothache** (U), a **stomach-ache**, **backache** (U), **earache** (U) and a **headache**. For other parts of the body we use **pain**, e.g. I woke up in the night with a **terrible pain** in my chest.

**Verbs:** You can use **ache** for some things, e.g. my back aches; but **hurt** is more common to describe real pain, and it can be used with or without a direct object:

She **hurt** her foot when she jumped off the bus and fell over. (also **injured** here) or  
She **hurt** herself when she jumped off the bus and fell over.

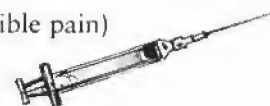
I hit my leg against the table and it **really hurts**. (= gives me a terrible pain)

**Adjectives:** The only common adjective is **painful** (≠ **painless**):

I had an **injection** yesterday and it was very **painful**.

A: Did it hurt when you had your filling? (= when the dentist fills a hole/cavity in the tooth)

B: No, it was **painless**.



## C Serious illnesses

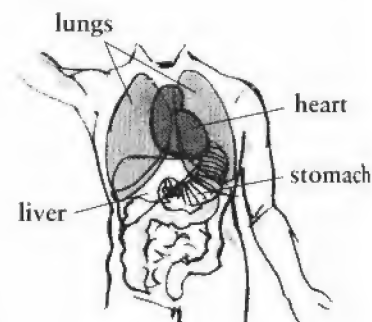
Doctors believe smoking is the major cause of **lung cancer**.

He had a **heart attack** and died almost immediately.

**Hepatitis** is a liver disease.

**Asthma** (chest illness causing **breathing problems**) has become more common.

**Note:** **Illness** and **disease** are often used in the same way, but **disease** is used for a serious condition caused by an infection e.g. a liver disease. **Illness** is a more general word.



## Exercises

**54.1** Write down the main symptom or symptoms for these conditions.

- 1 a cold: .....
- 2 flu: .....
- 3 hay fever: .....
- 4 a hangover: .....
- 5 diarrhoea: .....
- 6 asthma: .....

**54.2** Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.

- Examples:* ache      pain      *same*  
                   constipated      stomach      *different*
- |                   |                   |                 |                 |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 <u>d</u> isease | <u>d</u> iarrhoea | 4 <u>v</u> irus | <u>i</u> llness |
| 2 <u>c</u> hemist | <u>a</u> che      | 5 <u>f</u> lu   | <u>m</u> uscle  |
| 3 <u>h</u> urt    | <u>a</u> llergic  | 6 <u>c</u> ough | <u>e</u> nough  |

**54.3** Look at the pictures and write what happened in the space below. Try to use at least three or four words or phrases from the opposite page.



I had .....

**54.4** Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

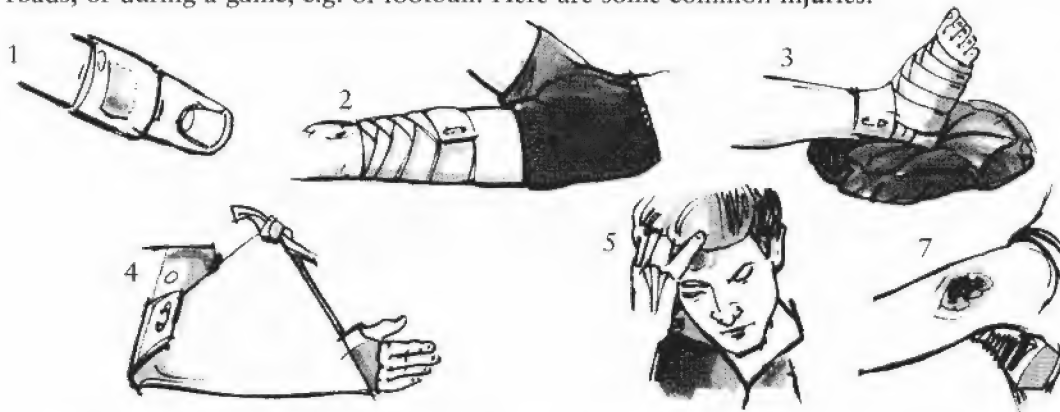
- 1 I hit my hand on the desk and it really .....
- 2 They say she died of a heart .....
- 3 She had some apples that weren't ready to eat and now she's got stomach-.....
- 4 I've got this terrible ..... in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position.
- 5 He died of ..... cancer even though he never smoked a cigarette in his life.
- 6 I went to the doctor, and she gave me a ..... for some tablets.
- 7 Pollution makes her ..... worse and it's difficult for her to breathe.
- 8 There are different forms of hepatitis; one is a more serious ..... than the other.
- 9 I hurt ..... when I fell off that chair.
- 10 My back ..... from sitting at that computer all day.

**54.5** Look at the opposite page again. Have you had any of these illnesses recently? Have you had any aches and pains recently? Make a list of the ones you have had. Are there any other illnesses you have had or still have? If so, find the name for it/them in English.

# 55 Health: injuries

## A Common injuries

An injury is damage to part of your body, usually caused by an accident in the home, on the roads, or during a game, e.g. of football. Here are some common injuries:



<i>What's the problem?</i>	<i>How did it happen?</i>	<i>Result</i>	<i>Solution</i>
1 I <b>cut</b> (v, n) my finger	using a knife	it's <b>bleeding</b> a bit	a <b>plaster</b>
2 I cut my leg quite badly	I fell over	it's bleeding quite a lot	a <b>bandage</b> (n, v)
3 I <b>twisted</b> my ankle	running for a bus	I can't walk on it easily	<b>rest</b>
4 I <b>broke</b> my arm	I fell off my bike	I can't use it	<b>plaster</b> (U) and a <b>sling</b>
5 I've got <b>concussion</b>	playing football	I'm confused; don't know where I am	<b>rest</b>
6 I <b>burnt</b> my hand	taking something out of a hot oven	it's very <b>painful</b>	<b>special cream</b>
7 I've got a <b>bruise</b> (n, v) on my arm	I hit it on the side of my desk	it's <b>swollen</b> and blue/black in colour	<b>ice pack</b>

## B Hospital treatment

Look carefully at the key words in these texts.

John fell off a chair, hit his head on the floor, and **knocked himself unconscious**. His wife called an **ambulance** but John was still **unconscious** when it arrived. He was **rushed** to hospital (= taken very quickly) where they kept him for two days for **blood tests**.

I jumped for the ball and **collided** with another player (= we ran into / hit each other). We both had **cuts** on our head, but I had to go to hospital for eight **stitches**.



## C Wounds and injuries

**Wound** (n, v) and **injury** are both used to describe damage to the body, but a **wound** is generally caused by a **weapon** (e.g. gun or knife) and it is usually intentional.

He shot the man in the chest. (= a **bullet wound** in the chest) [from a gun]

He **stabbed** the boy in the back. (= a **knife wound** in the back)

He got into a fight and got **beaten up**. He had a **black eye** and two **broken ribs**.



## Exercises

**55.1** Complete the table with the correct verb forms.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
cut wound injury shot		blood bandage bruise treatment	

**55.2** Look at the pictures and write the story.



Now compare your story with the model answer in the key.

**55.3** Complete these conversations in a suitable way.

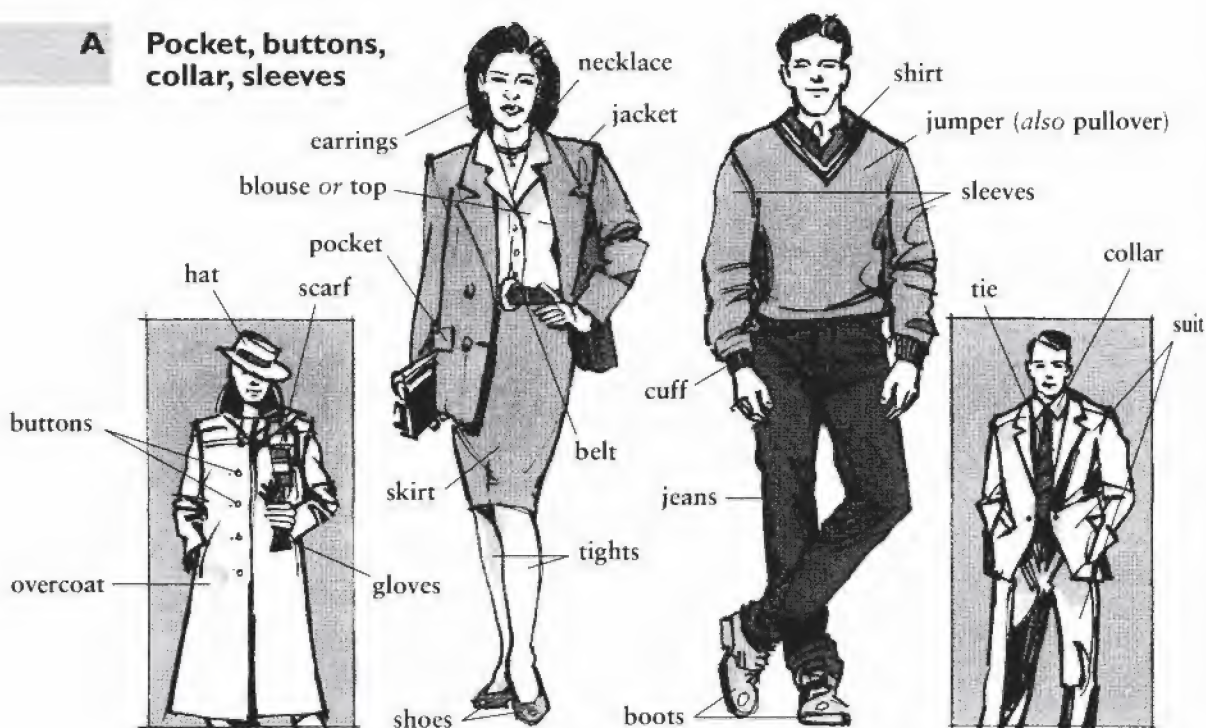
- A: ... bleeding quite a bit, so I had to put a plaster on it before I could finish.  
 B: How did you do it, anyway?  
 A: Oh, I was .....
- A: ... the next day the eye was really swollen and he had bruises down both his arms.  
 B: My goodness. What did he tell his parents?  
 A: More or less the truth. He said .....
- A: ... tried to get up again but I couldn't move. It was incredibly painful, but fortunately there were a few pedestrians around to help me.  
 B: That's lucky. But what were you doing?  
 A: .....
- A: ... my face was cut and he had a terrible bruise on his head.  
 B: Sounds very unpleasant. How did it happen exactly?  
 A: .....

**55.4** Answer these questions about yourself. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

- Have you ever broken your arm or leg?
- Have you ever needed stitches?
- Have you ever had concussion?
- Have you ever been unconscious?
- Have you ever had a blood test?
- Have you ever been in an ambulance?

# 56 Clothes

## A Pocket, buttons, collar, sleeves



*Note:* Some of these words are plural nouns, e.g. jeans and trousers. See Unit 27.

## B Important verbs

Use this text to guess the meaning of the key words.

I got up at 7.30, had a shower, **got dressed**, and had breakfast. It was a cold morning so I **put on** my overcoat and left home about 8.20. When I got to work I **took off** my coat and **hung it up** behind the door. It was hot in the office, so I **took** my jacket **off** as well. During my lunchbreak I had a look round the shops. I saw a nice jacket in one shop and **tried it on**, but it didn't fit me – it was too small and they didn't have a bigger size.

*Note:* Notice the different word order with the verbs put on, take off, hang up, and try on. If you want to know the rule about this, turn to Unit 17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style.

## C Too small and not long enough

The man is wearing a suit, but it doesn't fit him very well: the jacket is too small (= not big enough); the trousers are too short (= not long enough).



## Exercises

### 56.1 Finish this sentence with six different items of clothes.

I need a pair of .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 56.2 Find a logical order for these sentences.

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 He took off his trousers.       | 6 He paid for the suit.                |
| 2 He put his shoes back on.       | 7 He took off his shoes.               |
| 3 He tried on the suit.           | 8 He went back to the sales assistant. |
| 4 He went into the changing room. | 9 He put his trousers on again.        |
| 5 He took it off.                 |  |

### 56.3 What's missing? Write down anything that is missing in the second picture of the woman.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



### 56.4 Fill the gaps with suitable words. (More than one answer may be possible in some cases.)

- 1 She decided to wear a ..... and a ..... instead of a dress.
- 2 I tried on a .....; the jacket was fine but the ..... were too short.
- 3 It was hot in the office, so I took off my jacket and ....., and rolled up the sleeves of my .....
- 4 I wanted to buy the jacket, but unfortunately the one I tried on wasn't big ..... and they didn't have it in a bigger .....
- 5 I also wanted a new jumper, but unfortunately the medium size was ..... big and the small size wasn't big .....

### 56.5 Write down:

- 1 five things usually worn by women only; and five things worn by men and women.
- 2 a list of clothes you like and don't like wearing.
- 3 five more items of clothing you have at home in your wardrobe / chest of drawers.



# 57 Shops and Shopping

## A Shops and shopping

**shop assistant:** person who works in a shop; also called **sales assistant**

**shop window:** the window at the front of the shop

**shopping centre:** a place with many shops, outside or indoors

**window shopping:** to look round the shops but not buy anything

**shopping list:** a list of things to buy

I went shopping yesterday (= I went to the shops to buy food or clothes, etc.)

I did the shopping yesterday (= I bought food and household goods)

## B Types of shop (and what they sell)

<i>Name of shop</i>	<i>What it sells</i>
department store	almost everything (furniture, clothes, electrical appliances, e.g. TV and washing machine, toys, jewellery, etc. and sometimes food)
supermarket	food and household goods, e.g. cleaning products
newsagent(s)	newspapers, cigarettes, sweets, stationery, e.g. writing paper, cards, envelopes, etc.
butcher(s)	meat
greengrocer(s)	fruit and vegetables
boutique	fashionable clothes
chemist(s)	medicine, baby products, shampoo, soap, toothpaste, etc.

*Note:* Most other shops are just '+ shop', e.g. shoe shop, record shop, camera shop, etc.

## C Useful words and expressions

ASSISTANT: Can I help you? CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm **looking for** (= I want) a blue jumper.

ASSISTANT: Can I help you? CUSTOMER: No, I'm **just looking**, thanks. (= I don't need help)

ASSISTANT: Can I help you? CUSTOMER: I'm **being served**, thanks. (= another assistant is already serving/helping me)

ASSISTANT: What **size** are you looking for? (e.g. big? small? medium? 12? 14? 16?)

CUSTOMER: Where's the **changing room**? (= the room where you try on clothes; also called the **fitting room**)

ASSISTANT: It's down there on the right.

CUSTOMER: Yes, I'll **take** this one / these. (= Yes, I want to buy this one / these)

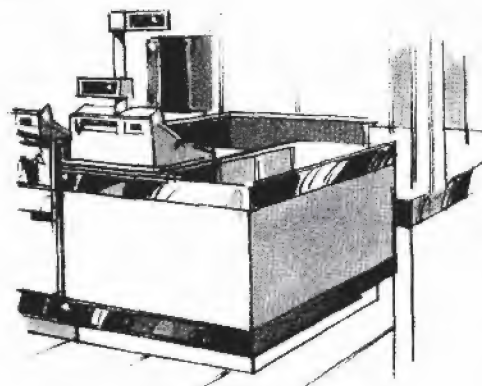
CUSTOMER: No, I'll **leave it** thanks. (= No, I don't want to buy it/them)

CUSTOMER: Excuse me. Where do I pay for these?

ASSISTANT: Over at the **cash desk/till**.

CUSTOMER: And can I **pay by cheque / credit card**?

ASSISTANT: Yes, of course.





## Exercises

**57.1** Can you find a 'general' word on the opposite page to describe each group of items below?

*Example:* ...fruit... e.g. apples, oranges and peaches

- 1 ..... e.g. shoes, a blouse, a jacket
- 2 ..... e.g. a sofa, an armchair, a table
- 3 ..... e.g. a television, a washing machine, a food mixer
- 4 ..... e.g. washing powder, soap, milk, toilet paper
- 5 ..... e.g. teddy bear, plastic gun, lego
- 6 ..... e.g. writing paper, envelopes

**57.2** Where would you buy each of the items on the left? Choose from the shops in the box.



newsagent  
chemist  
department store  
butcher  
greengrocer  
supermarket

Now write down two more things you could buy in each shop.

**57.3** What word or phrase is being defined in these sentences?

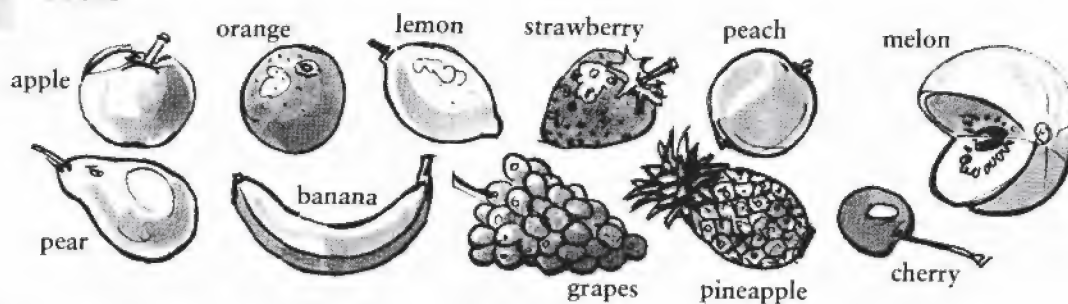
- 1 A shop where you can buy fashionable clothes.
- 2 A place with many shops, either outside or indoors.
- 3 A person who works in a shop.
- 4 The place where you can try on clothes in a shop.
- 5 The place where you pay for things in a shop.
- 6 To look round the shops without planning to buy anything.
- 7 The shop where you buy meat.
- 8 The shop where you buy medicines, baby products, shampoo, etc.

**57.4** Complete this shopping dialogue.

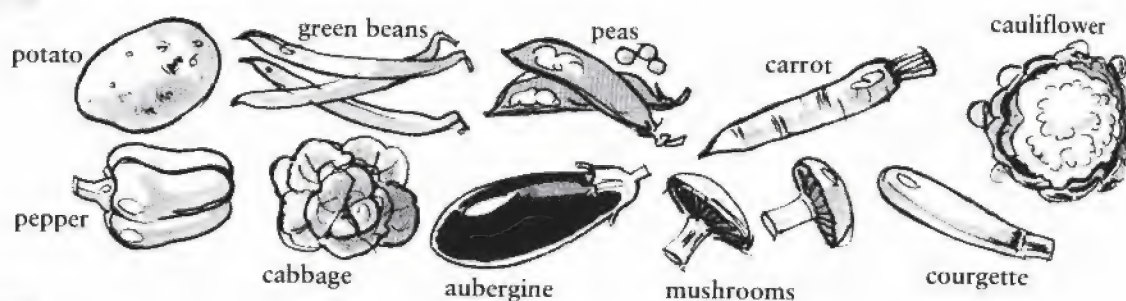
ASSISTANT 1: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm (1)..... a blouse like this, but in blue.  
 ASSISTANT 1: I see. And what (2)..... are you looking for?  
 CUSTOMER: Uh, 14 usually.  
 ASSISTANT 1: Ok, I'll just go and see if we've got any.  
 CUSTOMER: Thank you.  
 ASSISTANT 2: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER: No, it's OK, I'm (3)..... thanks.  
 ASSISTANT 1: Here we are. The last one in stock.  
 CUSTOMER: Great. Can I try it on?  
 ASSISTANT 1: Yes of course. The (4)..... is just over there.  
 ASSISTANT 1: How was it?  
 CUSTOMER: Fine. I'll (5).....  
 ASSISTANT: Right. Would you like to pay over there at the (6).....?

# 58 Food

## A Fruit

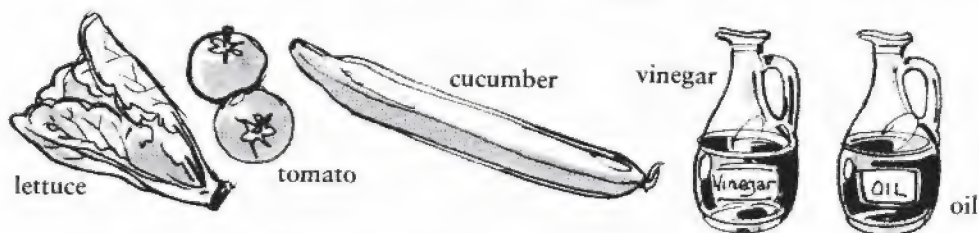


## B Vegetables



## C Salad

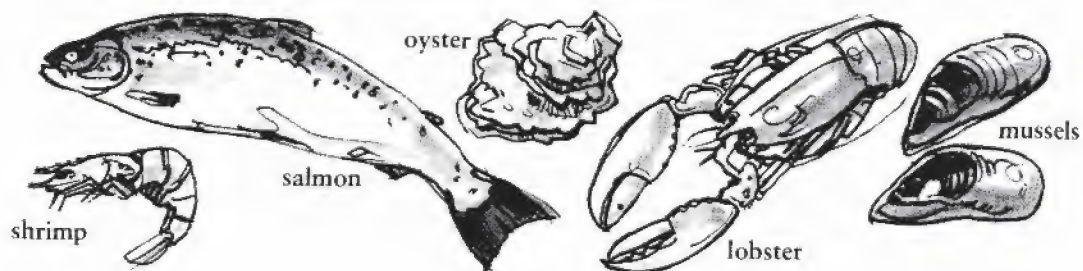
A salad is a mixture of uncooked vegetables. The main ingredient in a salad is lettuce, but it may also contain tomato, cucumber, and other things.



## D Animals (meat), fish and shellfish

animal: cow    calf (= young cow)    lamb (= young sheep)    pig  
meat: beef    veal    lamb    pork

Note: A person who does not eat meat is a vegetarian.



## Exercises

**58.1** Can you write down a vegetable and fruit:

	Vegetable	Fruit
1 beginning with the letter 'p'	..potato.....	.....
2 beginning with the letter 'b'	.....	.....
3 beginning with the letter 'm'	.....	.....
4 beginning with the letter 'c'	.....	.....
5 beginning with the letter 'a'	.....	.....

**58.2** Find a word in the right-hand box where the underlined letter(s) are pronounced in the same way as the underlined letter(s) in a word in the left-hand box. Be careful: there are two extra words in the right-hand box which you do not need.

lett <u>u</u> ce	o <u>n</u> ion
o <u>r</u> ange	ba <u>n</u> ana
au <u>u</u> bergine	sa <u>l</u> mon

tomato	melon
salad	chicken
calf	lamb
cauliflower	mushroom

**58.3** Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

- 1 pork      veal      salmon      beef
- 2 salmon      shrimp      oyster      lobster
- 3 lettuce      aubergine      tomato      cucumber
- 4 peach      onion      mushroom      courgette
- 5 chicken      lamb      beef      mussels

**58.4** Do you eat the skin (= the outside) of these fruits – always, usually, or never? Make three lists.

apples	pineapples	cherries	grapes
pears	bananas	peaches	mangoes
oranges	lemons	melons	strawberries

**58.5** Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else who has done this exercise.

- 1 In my country ..... is/are more common than .....
- 2 In my country ..... is/are more expensive than .....
- 3 In my country a mixed salad usually contains .....
- 4 In my country we don't grow .....
- 5 And we don't often eat .....
- 6 Personally, I prefer ..... to .....
- 7 I love ..... but I don't really like .....
- 8 My favourite meat is .....



# 59 Cooking and restaurants

## A Ways of cooking food

boil: in water, e.g. carrots

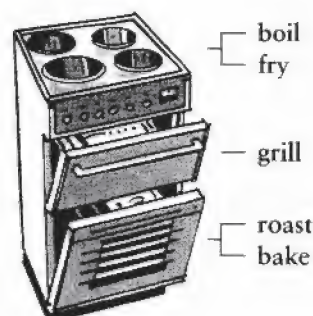
fry: in oil or butter above the heat, e.g. sausages

grill: under the heat, e.g. toast or meat

roast: in the oven using oil, e.g. meat

bake: in the oven without oil, e.g. cakes

*Note:* Food which is not cooked is **raw**.



## B Cooking steak

If you have steak you can eat it **rare** (= cooked very quickly and still red); **medium-rare** (cooked a bit longer and just red in the middle); **medium** (cooked a bit more and just pink); or **well-done** (cooked even longer and not pink at all).

## C Describing food

**tasty:** has lots of taste: a positive word; ≠ **tasteless:** a negative word

**bland:** without a strong taste; neutral in flavour, e.g. boiled rice

**sweet:** lots of sugar; ≠ **bitter**

**salty:** lots of salt

**hot/spicy:** lots of spice, e.g. curry

**fresh:** recently produced, e.g. fresh bread; recently picked, e.g. fresh fruit

**tender:** easy to cut; a positive word used to describe meat; ≠ **tough**

**fatty:** meat with a lot of fat; ≠ **lean**

**fattening:** food which makes you **put on weight** / **get fat**, e.g. cream, biscuits, etc.

## D Eating in restaurants

In Britain you often have three courses: a **starter** (e.g. soup), a **main course** (e.g. steak or chicken), and a **dessert** (e.g. strawberries or ice cream). You may also have an **aperitif** (= a drink before the meal, e.g. gin and tonic), and coffee after the meal. When you pay the **bill** (= the money for the meal; AmEng = **check**), you sometimes also leave a **tip** (= money) for the waiter if **service is not included** in the price. (10% is a normal tip.) If it is a popular restaurant, you may also need to **book** (= reserve) a table **in advance** (= before you go).

## E The menu

### Starters

*Broccoli Soup*

*Home-made Chicken Liver Paté*

*Tagliatelle with Courgettes, Cream and Bacon*

### Main Courses

*Baked Salmon with Spinach*

*Breast of Chicken in a White Wine Sauce with Mushrooms*

*Grilled Fillet Steak in a Pepper Sauce*

*Mushroom Risotto*

### Desserts

*Chocolate Mousse*

*Fruit Salad*

*Ice Cream*



## Exercises

### 59.1 Do you often eat the following food in your country? If so, do you eat it in the same way?

*Example:* In Britain, we often eat 'fish' but not usually 'raw fish'.

raw fish	fried rice
fried eggs	grilled sausages
baked potatoes	roast beef
raw spinach	roast peppers
fried bread	boiled eggs
grilled cheese	baked bananas

### 59.2 Look at the menu on the opposite page again, and answer these questions.

- 1 Which starter doesn't contain vegetables?
- 2 Which dish contains pasta?
- 3 Which dish may be rare or well-done?
- 4 Which dish is definitely cooked in the oven?
- 5 Which dish will probably be quite spicy?
- 6 Which dish contains alcohol?
- 7 Which meat may be fatty or tough if you are unlucky?
- 8 Which dessert(s) will be quite sweet?
- 9 Which dessert must be very fresh?
- 10 You are on a diet (= you are trying to lose weight) and you do not want to have a fattening meal. Which would probably be the best dish to choose for each course?

### 59.3 Choose a possible adjective from the opposite page to describe each of these foods.

	<i>Adjective</i>		<i>Adjective</i>
lemon	.....	ice cream	.....
chicken	.....	fillet steak	.....
honey	.....	chillies	.....
bacon	.....	avocado	.....

### 59.4 What about restaurants in your country, and your own taste in food? Answer these questions about yourself and your country.

- 1 Do you normally need to book a restaurant in advance?
- 2 Is it common to give the waiter a tip? If so, how much?
- 3 Do you normally eat three courses in a restaurant? If not, how many courses do you normally have?
- 4 How many of these do you normally find on the table in a restaurant in your country?  

salt	yes/no	pepper	yes/no	oil	yes/no
vinegar	yes/no	napkins	yes/no		
- 5 Generally, do you add more salt to your food when you eat in restaurants?
- 6 Do you like steak? If so, how do you like it cooked?
- 7 Would you say that food in your country is very spicy?
- 8 Would you say that food in your country is generally quite fattening?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.

# 60 Town and country

## A Towns

Here are some of the things you will find in most big towns.

a commercial centre: an area with lots of banks and company offices

shopping centres: places with many shops, either indoors or outdoors

car parks: places to leave many cars

factories: buildings where you make/manufacture things, e.g. cars

suburbs: areas outside the centre of town where people live

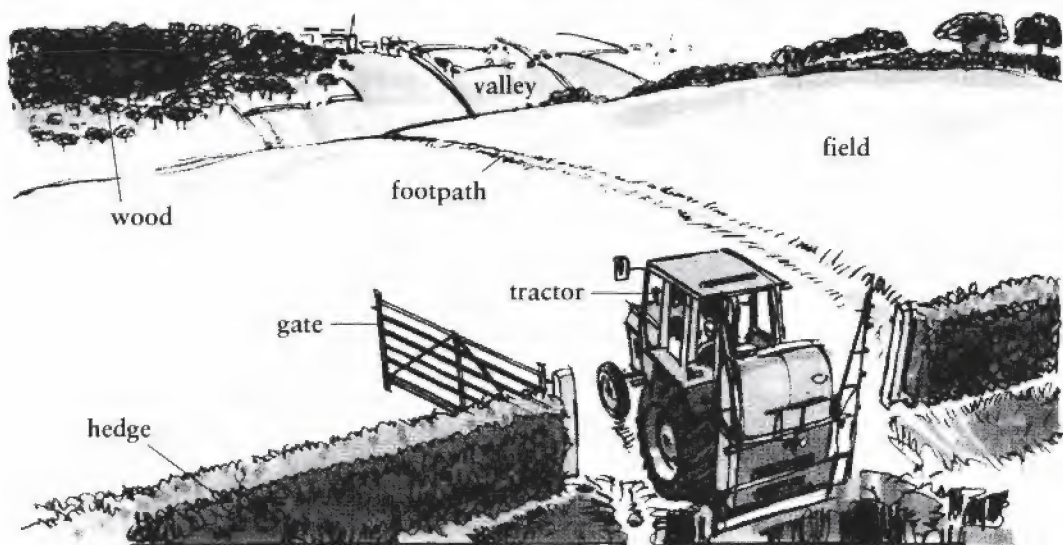
libraries: places where you can borrow books

pollution: dirty air because of smoke and petrol fumes

night-life: places to go at night, e.g. bars, restaurants, cinemas, theatres, discos, etc.

## B The country

Here are some of the things you will find in the countryside.



## C Advantages and disadvantages

People who prefer the countryside to big towns, often say this:

*Towns:*

are noisy

are dirty and polluted

are stressful

are crowded (= full of people)

are dangerous

*The countryside:*

is quiet and peaceful

is clean

is calm and relaxing

has lots of open space

is safe

People who prefer big towns have a different point of view:

*In towns:*

there are plenty (= lots) of things to do

it's exciting

there's a wide range of shops (= many different shops)

there's lots of night-life, e.g. bars, cinemas, discos

*In the countryside:*

there's nothing to do

it's boring

there are only a few shops

there's no night-life

## Exercises

### 60.1 Complete this table of opposites.

<i>Big towns and cities</i>	<i>Village life and the countryside</i>
.....	quiet and peaceful
.....	clean air
exciting	.....
stressful	.....
.....	lots of open spaces
.....	nothing to do in the evening
dangerous	.....

Do you agree with everything in the table above? Put a tick (✓) beside each answer you do, and a (✗) beside each answer you don't. If possible compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

### 60.2 Organise the words in the box into three groups: things that you usually find in towns (in your country), things you usually find in the country, and things you often find in both town and country.

fields	factories	gates	car parks
libraries	tractors	suburbs	villages
traffic	Town Hall	shopping centres	footpaths
pollution	valleys	night-life	woods

*Town*

*Country*

*Town and country*

### 60.3 Look at the picture on the opposite page for one minute, then cover it and complete this text based on the picture.

We opened the (1)....., said 'hello' to the man on the  
(2)....., and then followed the (3)..... across the  
(4)..... and down into the (5)..... We stopped and had a  
picnic by the river and then walked up through the (6)..... on the other  
side of the (7)..... A bit later we came to a (8)..... where  
we stopped and bought some bread.

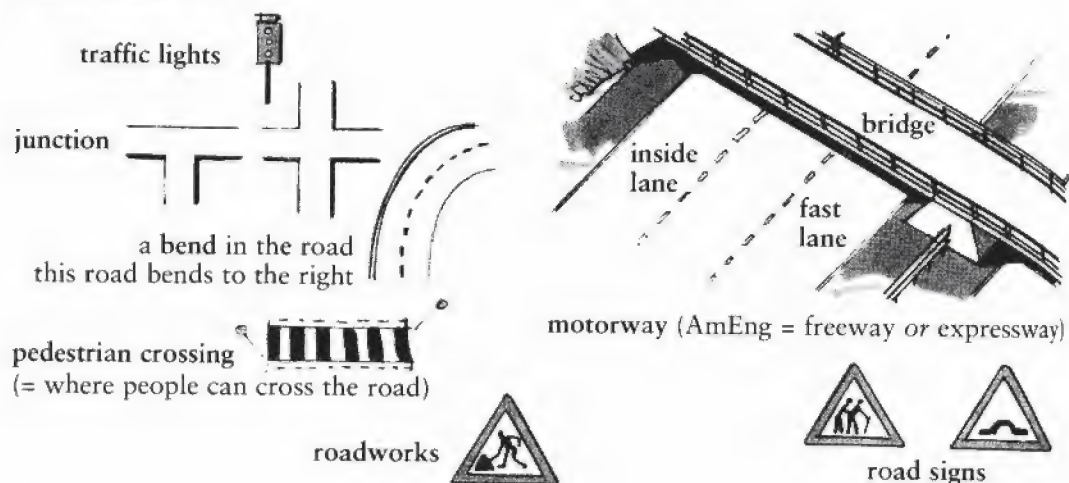
### 60.4 Think of your journey to school, college or work. How many of these things do you see or pass?

*a car park   factories   woods   a library   a museum   parking meters*  
*lots of traffic   commuters   a night club   fields   suburbs   a railway station*



# 61 On the road

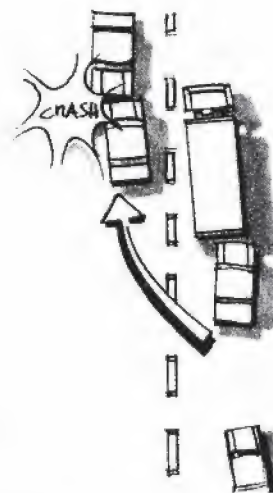
## A Road features



## B An accident

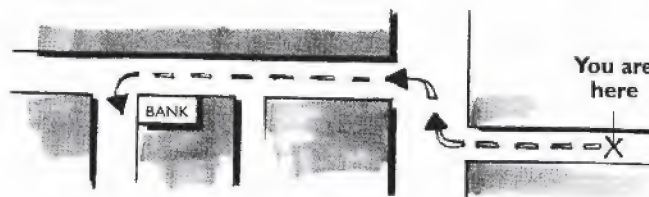
Read the text and use the context and the diagram to help you with the key words.

There was a serious **accident** on one of the **main roads** into Stuttgart this morning. An old lorry (AmEng = truck) **broke down** in the middle of the road, and the driver couldn't move it. It was eight o'clock, the middle of the **rush hour**, so it soon created a terrible **traffic jam**. Drivers got very angry and a man in a Mercedes tried to go round the lorry. Unfortunately another car was **coming in the opposite direction**. The driver **braked hard** and tried to stop, but he couldn't **prevent** the accident – the Mercedes **crashed into** the front of his car. The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was **badly injured** and both cars were very badly damaged.



## C Giving directions

Go along here, **turn right** into the main road, then **take the first turning on your left**. Keep going, and then **turn left** again when you get to the bank.



## D Important words and phrases

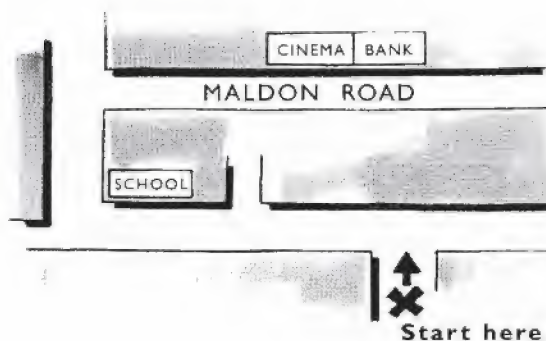
Taxis (AmEng = cab) use the road; pedestrians use the **pavement** (AmEng = sidewalk). The **speed limit** on motorways in Great Britain is 70 mph (120 kph). Most **petrol stations** (AmEng = gas station) in Great Britain are self-service. **Get in** the car and remember to **fasten your seat belt**. The other car was going very slowly, so I decided to **overtake** (= pass it on the outside lane).



## Exercises

### 61.1 Complete the text for directions to the bank using the map to help you.

Go ..... and  
..... at the junction. Then  
you ..... and ..... right  
when you ..... the ..... Then  
..... again ..... Road,  
and the bank is .....  
just ..... cinema.



### 61.2 Fill the gaps with the correct words.

- 1 Don't forget to ..... your ..... belt when you ..... the car.
- 2 There was a bad accident this morning. One driver died, the other driver was badly  
....., and both cars were badly .....
- 3 In the morning, the ..... starts at about 7 o'clock and goes on until at least 9.30.  
Then it starts again about 4.30 in the afternoon.
- 4 It was raining, so when I ..... the car didn't stop quickly enough, and I  
..... into the back of the car in front.
- 5 The bicycle hit me just as I stepped off the ..... to cross the road.
- 6 The car ....., so I phoned a garage and they sent someone to repair it.
- 7 There was a terrible ....., and that's why it took me two hours to  
get home in the car.
- 8 I was doing about 65 mph on the inside ..... of the motorway, and suddenly a  
car ..... me doing about 90 mph.

### 61.3 Many road signs are international. Do you know or can you guess what these mean?



1 You can't .....



4 There's only one .....



7 traffic .....



2 50 mph\* is the .....



5 end of .....



8 a low .....



3 you can't .....



6 a car .....



9 .....

(\*mph = miles per hour; 50 mph = 80 kph approximately)

### 61.4 Answer these questions about your own country.

- 1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
- 2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
- 3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings?
- 4 Are most petrol stations self-service, or do people serve you?

## 62 Transport

### A Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.

A: How did you get here?

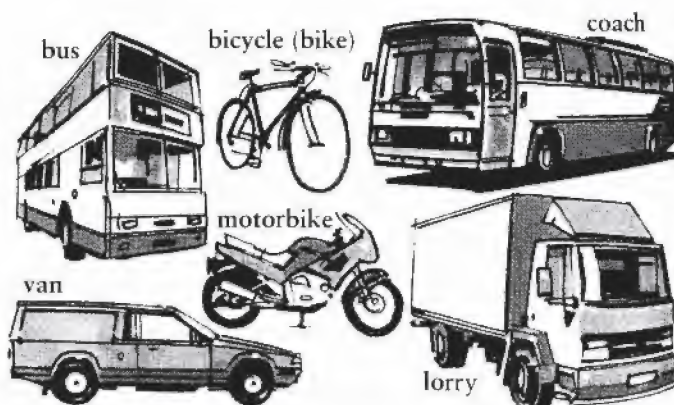
B: I came by bus.

A: And the others?

B: Sue and John came by car.

A: And Paul?

B: He missed the bus, so he had to take a taxi.

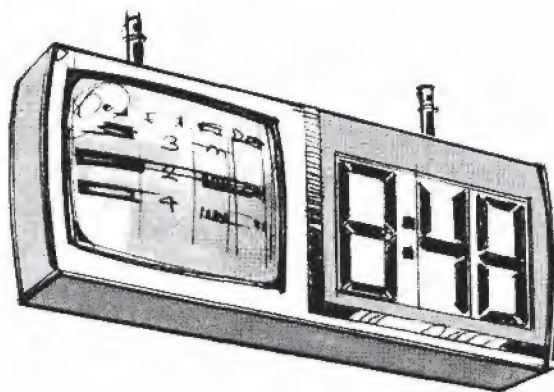


### B Catch a bus, take a taxi

<i>Bus</i>	<i>Train</i>	<i>Plane</i>	<i>Taxi</i>	<i>Bicycle</i>	<i>Car</i>
driver	driver	pilot	driver	cyclist	driver
drives	drives	flies	drives	rides	drives
(£) fare	fare	air fare	fare	—	—
catch/take	catch/take	take	take	go on (my)	go by
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	get in/out	get on/off	get in/out
bus station	railway station	airport	taxi rank	—	—

### C Railway stations

You may hear these announcements.



The train now arriving at platform 3 is the 8.48 to London Paddington, calling at Swindon and Reading. Passengers for Didcot **change** (= change trains) at Swindon. We apologise to passengers for the late arrival of the 8.52 to Oxford. This train will now arrive at platform 6 in approximately 20 minutes. The next train **due to** (= timetabled to) arrive at platform 4 is the 9.06 to Birmingham.

### D Buses

Sometimes buses are not very **punctual** (= they don't arrive at the correct time). Where I live buses should **run** (= come) every ten minutes, but sometimes I wait at the **bus stop** for half an hour with a long **queue** (AmEng = line) of people, and then three buses come together, and they're all **full up** (= full of people, and no more people can get on). On other occasions the bus is early and I **miss it** (= I don't catch it. NOT ~~lost the bus~~).

## Exercises

### 62.1 Cross out the incorrect word in these sentences.

- 1 You mustn't ride/drive a motorbike without a crash helmet.
- 2 She told him to get in / get on the car and fasten his seat belt.
- 3 Bus fares/tickets are getting more expensive.
- 4 Trains to the airport travel/run every half hour.
- 5 The pilot couldn't drive/fly the plane in such bad weather.
- 6 Have a look at the train schedule/timetable to find out when the next one arrives.
- 7 We were late, so we had to take/catch a taxi.
- 8 I left my house a bit late and I lost/missed the bus.

### 62.2 Write down two different words that can combine with each of the words below.

Example: miss the bus  
                  the train

- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 3 ..... | 5 ..... |
| fare    | station | get in  |
| .....   | .....   | .....   |
| 2 ..... | 4 ..... | 6 ..... |
| get on  | driver  | journey |
| .....   | .....   | .....   |

### 62.3 Identify these means of transport without looking at the opposite page.



- 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....

### 62.4 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

- 1 Our train leaves from ..... 7.
- 2 I waited at the ..... for ten minutes, and then two buses arrived.
- 3 I couldn't get on the first bus because it was .....
- 4 The train was half an hour late. I think the reason for the late ..... was bad weather.
- 5 Buses are not very ..... Sometimes they come every five minutes, then other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
- 6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long ..... of people.
- 7 The flight was fine but we had a terrible ..... from the airport to our hotel.
- 8 I think the next train is ..... to arrive in about ten minutes.

### 62.5 Are these statements *true* or *false* in your experience?

- 1 Trains are more reliable than buses.
- 2 Train fares are more expensive than bus fares.
- 3 Train journeys are more interesting than bus journeys.
- 4 Railway stations are nicer places than bus stations.
- 5 You get to the place you are going faster by taxi than by car.



## 63 Work: duties, conditions and pay

### A What do you do?

People may ask you about your job. They can ask and you can answer in different ways:

What do you do? I'm (+ job) e.g. a banker / an engineer / a teacher / a builder  
What's your job? I work in (+ place or general area) e.g. a bank / marketing  
What do you do for a living? I work for (+ name of company) e.g. Union Bank, ICI, Fiat

*Note:* 'Work' is usually an uncountable noun, so you cannot say 'a work'. If you want to use the indefinite article you must say 'a job', e.g. She hasn't got a job at the moment.

### B What does that involve? (= What do you do in your job?)

When people ask you to explain your work/job, they may want to know your main **responsibilities** (= your duties / what you have to do), or something about your daily **routine** (= what you do every day/week). They can ask like this: What does that (i.e. your job) involve?

*Main responsibilities*

I'm **in charge of** (= responsible for) all deliveries out of the factory.

I have to **deal with** any complaints (= take all necessary action if there are complaints).

I **run** the coffee bar and restaurant in the museum (= I am in control of it / I manage it).

*Note:* We often use **responsible for** / **in charge of** for part of something, e.g. a department or some of the workers; and **run** for control of all of something, e.g. a company or a shop.

*Daily duties/routines*

I have to **go to / attend** (*fml*) a lot of meetings.

I visit/see/meet **clients** (= people I do business with or for).

I **advise** clients (= give them help and my opinion).

It involves **doing** quite a lot of **paperwork** (a general word we use for routine work that involves paper e.g. writing letters, filling in forms, etc.). Note the **-ing** form after **involve**.

### C Pay

Most workers are **paid** (= receive money) every month and this **pay** goes directly into their bank account. It is called a **salary**. We can express the same idea using the verb **to earn**:

My salary is \$60,000 a year. (= I **earn** \$60,000 a year.)

With many jobs you **get** (= receive) **holiday pay** and **sick pay** (when you are ill). If you want to ask about holidays, you can say:

How **much** holiday do you get? or How **many** weeks' holiday do you get?

The total amount of money you receive in a year is called your **income**. This could be your salary from one job, or the salary from two different jobs you have. And on this income you have to **pay** part to the government – called **income tax**.

### D Working hours

For many people in Britain, these are 8.30–9.00 a.m. to 5.00–5.30 p.m. Consequently people often talk about a **nine-to-five job** (= regular working hours). Some people have **flexi-time** (= they can start an hour or so earlier or finish later); and some have to **do shiftwork** (= working at different times, e.g. days one week and nights the next week). Some people also **work overtime** (= work extra hours). Some people are paid to **do/work** overtime, others are not paid.



## Exercises

**63.1** Match the verbs on the left with the nouns or phrases on the right. Use each word once only.

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 earn      | overtime   |
| 2 work      | meetings   |
| 3 pay       | a shop     |
| 4 go to     | clients    |
| 5 deal with | £500       |
| 6 run       | income tax |

**63.2** Starting with the words you are given, rewrite each of these sentences using vocabulary from the opposite page. The basic meaning must stay the same.

*Example:* I'm a banker.

I work *in banking*.....

- 1 What do you do?  
What's .....
- 2 I earn \$50,000 dollars.  
My .....
- 3 I get £20,000 from my teaching job and another £10,000 from writing.  
My total .....
- 4 I am a chemist.  
I work for .....
- 5 In my job I have to look after and maintain all the computers in the building.  
My job involves .....
- 6 I'm responsible for one of the smaller departments.  
I'm in .....

**63.3** This is part of a conversation with a teacher about her job. Can you supply the missing questions?

A: .....

B: I usually start at nine and finish at four.

A: .....

B: Yes a bit. On certain courses I work until five o'clock, and then I get paid extra.

A: .....

B: Twelve weeks. That's one of the good things about being a teacher.

A: .....

B: No we don't, I'm afraid. That's one of the disadvantages of being a teacher. But I suppose money isn't everything.

**63.4** Can you answer these general knowledge questions about work?

- 1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
- 2 Can you name three jobs that get very high salaries in your country?
- 3 When you start paying income tax in your country, what is the minimum amount you have to pay?
- 4 What jobs often involve shiftwork? (Give at least two examples.)
- 5 Is flexi-time common in your company or your country?

**63.5** Think about your own job. How many of the things on the opposite page do you do? How is your work different? Can you explain your responsibilities and daily duties in English?

# 64 Jobs

## A The medical profession

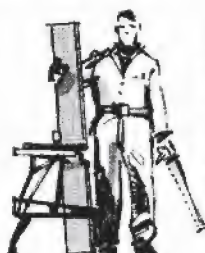
These people **treat** (= give medical treatment and try to solve a medical problem) and **look after** (= care for / take care of) others: **doctor**, **nurse**, **surgeon** (= a specialist doctor who works in a hospital and **operates on** people), **dentist**, and **vet** (= animal doctor). The word 'vet' is a short form for 'veterinary surgeon'.

## B Manual jobs

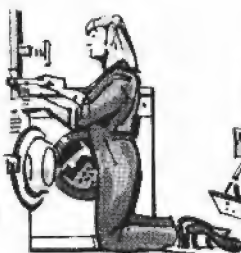
These are jobs where you work with your hands, and all the examples below are **skilled** jobs (= they need a lot of training).



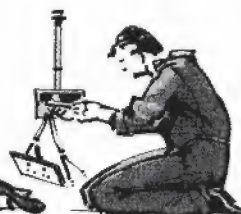
**bricklayer**  
(builds walls)



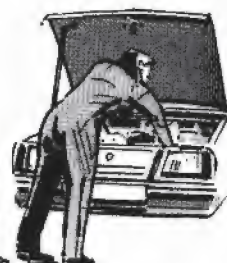
**carpenter**  
(makes things using wood)



**plumber**  
(fits and repairs water pipes, bathrooms, etc.)



**electrician**  
(fits and repairs electrical things)



**mechanic**  
(repairs cars)

## C Professional people

<i>Job</i>	<i>Definition</i>
architect	designs buildings
lawyer	represents people with legal problems
engineer	plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.
accountant	controls the financial situation of people and companies
university lecturer	teaches in a university
broker (stock market)	buys and sells stocks and shares

## D The armed forces and the emergency services



**soldier**  
(in the army)



**sailor**  
(in the navy)



**pilot**  
(in the air force)



**police officer**  
(in the police force)



**firefighter** (in the fire brigade)

## Exercises

**64.1** Write down at least one job from the opposite page that would probably be impossible for these people.

- 1 Someone who didn't go to university.
- 2 Someone with very bad eyesight (= cannot see very well).
- 3 Someone who is always seasick on a boat.
- 4 Someone who understands nothing about cars.
- 5 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends.
- 6 Someone who is afraid of dogs.
- 7 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places.
- 8 Someone who is terrible at numbers and figures.
- 9 Someone who can't stand the sight of blood.
- 10 Someone who is a pacifist, who is anti-war.

**64.2** Complete these definitions.

- 1 An architect *designs buildings.*
- 2 A university lecturer .....
- 3 An accountant .....
- 4 A vet .....
- 5 A lawyer .....
- 6 An engineer .....
- 7 A bricklayer .....
- 8 A stock broker .....
- 9 A mechanic .....
- 10 A surgeon .....

**64.3** Respond to the statements below, as in the example.

*Example:* A: He's a policeman.

B: *Really? When did he join the police force?*

- 1 A: He's a soldier.  
B: .....
- 2 A: He's a sailor.  
B: .....
- 3 A: He's a fighter pilot.  
B: .....
- 4 A: He's a firefighter.  
B: .....

**64.4** You have just bought a piece of land and you are planning to build a house on it. Write down at least six people from the opposite page that you may need to help you. What would you need their help for?

*Example: a bricklayer to build the walls*

**64.5** Write a list of friends, relatives and neighbours (just choose people who have jobs). Can you write down what each person does? Use a bilingual dictionary to help you if necessary.

*Example: My uncle Jim is an engineer. His wife is an accountant.*



## 65 The career ladder

### A Getting a job

When Paul left school he **applied for** (= wrote an official request for) a job in the accounts department of a local engineering company. They gave him a job as a **trainee** (= a very junior person in a company). He didn't earn very much but they gave him a lot of **training** (= organised help and advice with learning the job), and sent him on **training courses**.

*Note:* **Training** is an uncountable noun, so you cannot say 'a training'. You can only talk about **training** (in general), or a **training course** (if you want to refer to just one). Here you can use the verbs **do** or **go on**: I **did** / **went on** several training courses last year.

### B Moving up

Paul worked hard at the company and his **prospects** (= future possibilities in the job) looked good. After his first year he got a good **pay rise** (= more money), and after two years he was **promoted** (= given a higher position with more money and responsibility). After six years he was **in charge of** (= **responsible for** / the boss of) the accounts department with five other **employees** (= workers in the company) **under him** (= under his responsibility/authority).

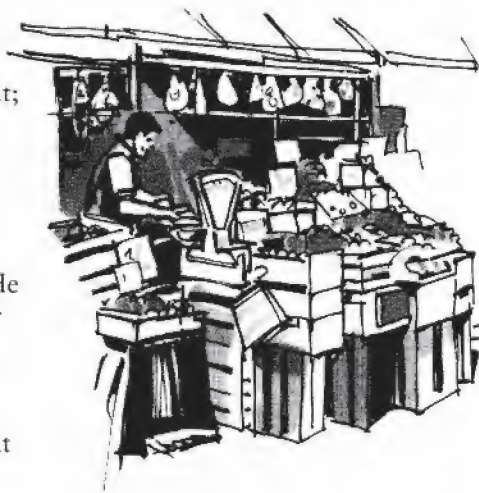
### C Leaving the company

By the time Paul was 30, however, he decided he wanted a **fresh challenge** (= a new exciting situation). He was keen to work abroad, so he **resigned** from his company (= officially told the company he was leaving his job; you can also say 'he **quit** the company') and started looking for a new job with a bigger company. After a couple of months he managed to find a job with an international company which **involved** (= included) a lot of foreign travel. He was very excited about the new job and at first he really enjoyed the travelling, but ...

### D Hard times

After about six months, Paul started to dislike the constant moving around, and after a year he hated it; he hated living in hotels, and he never really made any friends in the new company. Unfortunately his work was not satisfactory either and finally he was **sacked** (= told to leave the company / **dismissed** / **given the sack**) a year later.

After that, Paul found things much more difficult. He was **unemployed** (= **out of work** / without a job) for over a year. He had to sell his car and move out of his new house. Things were looking bad and in the end Paul had to accept a **part-time** job (= working only some of the day or some of the week) on a fruit and vegetable stall in a market.



### E Happier times

To his surprise, Paul loved the market. He made lots of friends and enjoyed working out in the open air. After two years, he **took over** (= took control of) the stall. Two years later he opened a second stall, and after ten years he had fifteen stalls. Last year Paul **retired** (= stopped working completely) at the age of 55, a very rich man.



## Exercises

**65.1** Write a single word synonym for each of these words/phrases.

- 1 given the sack = .....
- 2 out of work = .....
- 3 left the company = .....
- 4 was given a better position in the company = .....
- 5 future possibilities in a job = .....
- 6 stopped working for ever = .....
- 7 workers in a company = .....

**65.2** Find the logical answer on the right for each of the questions on the left.

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 Why did they sack him?        | a Because he was nearly 65.                         |
| 2 Why did they promote him?     | b Because he was late for work every day.           |
| 3 Why did he apply for the job? | c Because he needed more training.                  |
| 4 Why did he retire?            | d Because he was out of work.                       |
| 5 Why did he resign?            | e Because he was the best person in the department. |
| 6 Why did he go on the course?  | f Because he didn't like his boss.                  |

**65.3** Complete these sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work .....
- 2 She'd like to go on another training .....
- 3 I'm bored in my job. I need a fresh .....
- 4 He works on a stall in the .....
- 5 At the end of this year we should get a good pay .....
- 6 She's got more than a hundred workers under .....
- 7 I didn't know he was the new manager. When did he take .....?
- 8 It's a boring job and the pay is awful. Why did he .....?

**65.4** Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<i>Verb</i>	<i>General noun</i>	<i>Personal noun(s)</i>
promote	.....	-
employ	.....	.....
resign	.....	-
retire	.....	-
train	.....	.....

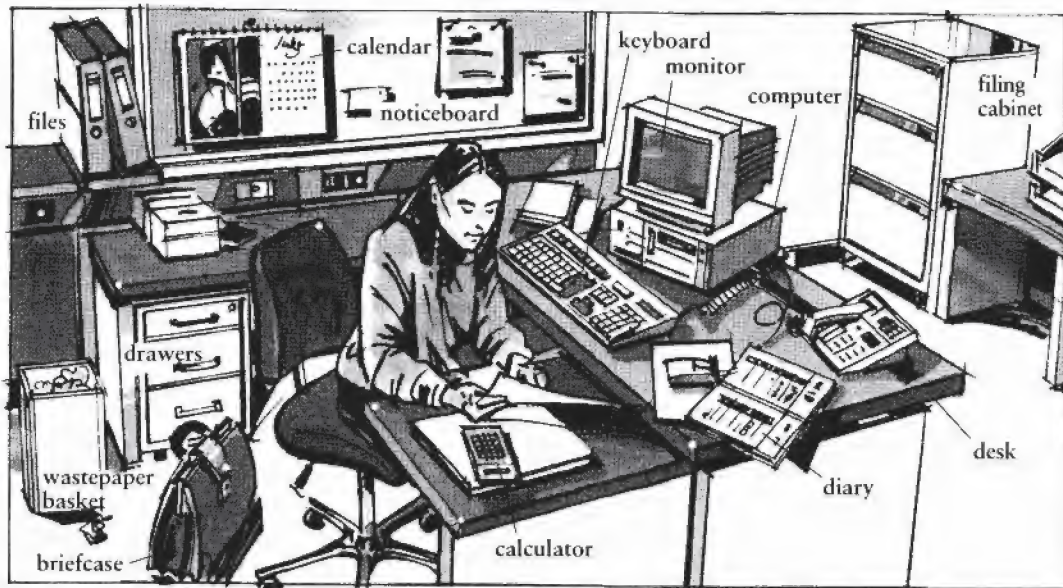
**65.5** Have you got a job in a company? If so, answer these questions as quickly as you can.

- 1 What does your job involve?
- 2 Are you responsible for anything or anyone?
- 3 Have you had much training from the company?
- 4 Have the company sent you on any training courses?
- 5 Have you been promoted since you started in the company?
- 6 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
- 7 How do you feel about your future prospects in the company?
- 8 Are you happy in the job or do you feel it is time for a fresh challenge in another company?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.

## 66 In the office and in the factory

### A The office



### B Office work

Brenda works for a company which produces furniture. She works in an office, which is just opposite the factory where the furniture is made. This is how she spends her day:

She works at a **computer** most of the time, where she writes letters and reports.

She answers phone calls, mostly from **retailers**. (= shops selling the factory's furniture)

She makes phone calls to retailers, and the factory making the furniture.

She **sends invoices** to customers. (= paper showing products sold and the money to pay)

She **shows visitors around** the factory.

She does **general paperwork**, e.g. filing reports, writing memos, answering letters.

She **arranges meetings** for her boss and other managers in the company.

### C The 'shop floor' of the factory

This is where products are **manufactured** (= made). Modern factories have fewer workers than in the past – this is because of **automation** (= machines do most of the work), and most factories use an **assembly line** (= an arrangement in which each worker makes a part of the product and then passes it on to the next person or machine). On an assembly line, workers **fit/assemble** the different parts, and **supervisors** (= people in charge/control) **check/inspect/examine** each stage to make sure the product **meets the required standard** (= is good enough).

### D Finished goods

Goods (*pl*) is the general word used for things that are made to be sold. When the product, e.g. a radio, is finished, it is **packaged** (= put in plastic and then in a box) and **stored** (= kept) in a **warehouse**. When a customer, e.g. an electrical shop, **orders** some of these goods, they are **delivered** to the shop (= taken to the shop) using road or rail.

## Exercises

**66.1** Write down three nouns that could follow each of these verbs. You can use the same noun more than once. Not all of them are on the left-hand page.

- |         |                 |           |       |
|---------|-----------------|-----------|-------|
| 1 write | <u>a letter</u> | 3 make    |       |
|         | .....           |           | ..... |
|         | .....           |           | ..... |
| 2 send  | .....           | 4 arrange | ..... |
|         | .....           |           | ..... |
|         | .....           |           | ..... |

**66.2** Fill the gaps with the correct word to form a compound noun in each case.

- I told him to put the details on the notice.....
- She has to check the goods when they come off the assembly .....
- I'm sure I took the reports out of the filing ..... and put them in my brief.....
- It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general paper.....
- I threw all that stuff in the wastepaper .....

**66.3** What words from the opposite page are being defined here?

- The place where you store finished products before they are sold.
- The process of using machines to do work that used to be done by men and women.
- A plural noun for things that are made to be sold.
- A thing you often hang on the wall, which tells you the date.
- A book where you often write down all your appointments and things you have to do.
- A piece of paper which shows the products that a customer bought and the money they have to pay.
- A person or business that sells goods to the public.
- A part of a desk where you often keep pens, paper, notes, etc.

**66.4** Replace the underlined verb using a different verb with the same meaning (in this context).

- This particular machine is made in Germany.
- I help them to assemble the different parts.
- The supervisor always inspects our work carefully
- When the books are printed they are kept in the warehouse.
- The factory said they'll be able to take the furniture to the shops next Monday.

**66.5** Have you got a job? If so, how many of these statements are true for you in your job? (If you haven't got a job, how many of these things would you like to do?)

- I work at a computer a lot of the time.
- I do quite a lot of general paperwork.
- I make a lot of phone calls.
- I send faxes occasionally.
- I show people around my workplace.
- I arrange meetings.
- I attend (= go to) quite a lot of meetings.
- I have to write letters and reports.
- I go to conferences.



# 67 Business and finance

## A Banks and businesses

Most businesses need to borrow money to **finance** (= pay for) **investments** (= things they need to buy in order to help the company, e.g. machines). The money they borrow from the bank is called a **loan**, and on this loan they have to **pay interest**, e.g. if you borrow £1,000 and the interest rate is 10%, then you have to **pay back** £1,000, plus £100 in interest.

## B Businesses and profit

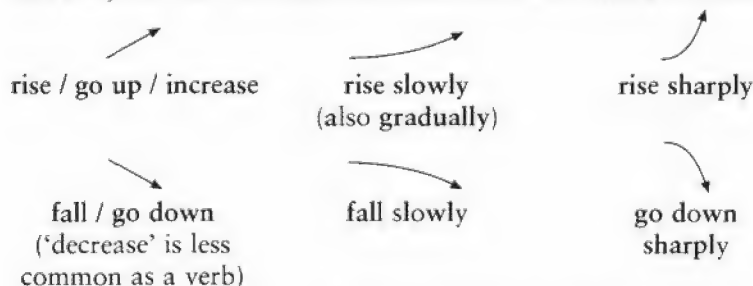
One of the main **aims/objectives** (= the things that you hope to do/achieve) of a company is to **make a profit** (= earn/receive more money than it spends) (≠ **make a loss**). If a company does not make a profit or a loss, it **breaks even**.

Most companies are happy if they can **break even** in their first year of business.

Companies receive money from selling their products – this money is called the **turnover**. The money that they spend is called the **expenditure** (*fml*). They **spend** money on these things: **raw materials** (= materials in their natural state used to make something else, e.g. coal and oil are important **raw materials** used to make plastics); **labour** (= employees); **overheads** (= necessary costs for a company, e.g. rent for buildings, electricity, telephone)

## C Rise and fall

Business people often need to talk about the movement of sales, prices, interest rates, profit and loss, etc. Here are some of the words used to describe these **trends** (= movements):



*Note:* rise, increase, and fall are also used as nouns: a **slow rise** in interest rates, a **steady increase** in sales, a **sharp fall** in profits, a **dramatic** (= sharp) **rise** in inflation. We can also use **be up/down**: prices are **up** by 10%; profits are **down** by £2m.

## D Businesses and the economy

In order to **grow/expand** (= get bigger) and **thrive/prosper** (= do well / be successful), many companies want or need the following:

**low inflation**, so prices do not go up

**low interest rates**, so the company can borrow money without paying a lot of interest

**economic and political stability** (= things remain steady and stable and there are no sudden changes in the economic and political situation)

a **healthy/strong economy** (= in good condition), and not an economy **in recession** (= in a period of reduced and slow business activity)

**tax cuts** (= tax reductions / lower taxes), so they can keep more of their profit. This often depends on government expenditure, e.g. The government will not be able to **reduce taxes** if **public expenditure** continues to rise.



## Exercises

### 67.1 What single word or phrase is being defined in each of these sentences?

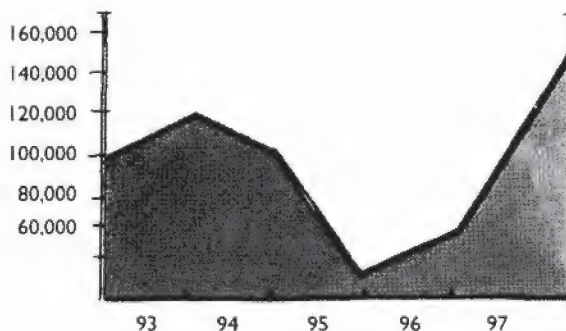
- 1 Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
- 2 What you must pay the bank if you borrow money.
- 3 The continuous increase in the price of things.
- 4 The things you hope to do/achieve within a period of time.
- 5 When a company does not make a profit or a loss.
- 6 When an economy is in a period of reduced and slow business activity.

### 67.2 Replace the underlined word(s) in each sentence with another word that has the same meaning.

- 1 There has been a slow rise in sales.
- 2 This comes after a dramatic fall last year.
- 3 Fortunately the company is doing well now.
- 4 And it's growing very quickly.
- 5 This is one of their main objectives.
- 6 Profits have risen considerably.

### 67.3 Look at the graph and complete the sentences on the left with one word for each gap.

- 1 In 1993 sales .....
- 2 In the following year they  
.....
- 3 In 1995 there was a .....  
..... in sales.
- 4 In 1996 business improved and there  
was a .....
- 5 And in 1997 sales .....
- 6 In the five-year period sales  
..... by 40,000.



### 67.4 Fill the gaps to form compound words or common phrases.

- |                     |              |                    |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 1 ..... expenditure | 3 tax .....  | 5 raw .....        |
| 2 ..... stability   | 4 ..... rate | 6 profit and ..... |

### 67.5 Can you answer these questions about your own country?

- 1 What is the current inflation rate?
- 2 If you borrowed \$10,000 from your bank, what would the interest rate be approximately?
- 3 What is the state of the economy at the moment? Is it strong? Is it in recession?
- 4 Do you think businesses are optimistic about the future?
- 5 Has the government reduced company taxes or personal taxes in the last twelve months?
- 6 Has public expenditure risen or fallen in the last twelve months?

## 68 Sales and marketing

### A What is marketing?

People talk about the **marketing mix**. This **consists of** (= it is formed from and includes):  
choosing the right **product** (= what a company produces/makes or offers)  
selling it at the right **price** (= what it costs to the buyer/consumer)  
using the right kind of **promotion** (= the ways to make the product popular and well-known; this includes **advertising**.)  
making it available in the right **place** (= where you sell the product and how it reaches the consumer; also known as **distribution**)

This 'mix' is often referred to as the four Ps, and marketing people have the job of matching these things to the needs of **consumers** (= the people who buy and use products). People who buy the products of a particular company are that company's **customers/clients**.

### B 'Sales' and 'market'

There are a number of words which combine with **sales** and **market** to form compound nouns and word partnerships which are very common in marketing.

**sales figures**: the amount you have sold

**sales target**: the amount you would like to sell in a future period

**sales forecast**: the amount you think you will sell in a future period, e.g. next year

**sales representative**: a person who sells a company's products; abbreviated to **sales rep**

**sales/marketing manager**: the person who runs the **sales/marketing department**

**market research**: collecting and studying information about what people want and need

**market share**: the % of a market that a company has, e.g. a 20% market share

**market leader**: the company or product with the biggest market share

### C Competition

Ford Motors is the **market leader** in the UK car industry. Its **main competitors** (= the most important companies in the same market) are Vauxhall and Rover, and it has had to work very hard in recent years to maintain its **market share**. Every time a competitor **launches** a new product (= introduces a new car onto the market), it is harder for Ford to stay in front.

### D A company's image

The **image** of a product/company (= the picture or idea that people have of the product/company) is very important in sales and marketing. Some companies want a **fashionable image** (= modern and up-to-date), others do not. For example:



**mass-produced** (= made in large numbers), **reliable** (= you can trust it), **good value** (= good for the money) functional but boring.



**young; exciting, glamorous** (= exciting + attractive); often fashionable, dangerous; not very practical.



**high quality** (= high standard/very good), **luxury** (= expensive and giving great comfort), **high status/prestige** (= important; driven by important people).

## Exercises

**68.1** The 'marketing mix' consists of the four Ps. Can you remember what they are? Write them down and then check on the opposite page.

**68.2** See how many different compound words and word partnerships you can form from the words in the box (you can use a word more than once), then complete the definitions below.

sales	market	manager	share	figures
marketing	leader	research	department	forecast

- 1 A sales ..... is what you think you are going to sell during a future period.
- 2 The marketing ..... will be responsible for all the activities in the marketing .....
- 3 Sales ..... tell you how much you have sold of a product.
- 4 The market ..... is the company with the largest market ..... in a particular market.
- 5 Market ..... gives you information about what people want, need and buy.

**68.3** What knowledge is necessary to be a good sales rep? Complete this text and then try to add a further sentence of your own.

First of all a good sales <sup>(1)</sup>..... needs to have an excellent knowledge of their company's <sup>(2)</sup>..... Secondly, he or she needs to know all about the <sup>(3)</sup>..... of their main <sup>(4)</sup>..... Thirdly, a sales representative should be familiar with the needs of <sup>(5)</sup>..... in their particular market, and should obviously be very familiar with the needs of their company's most important <sup>(6)</sup>.....

**68.4** Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Adjective</i>
.....	exciting	prestige	.....
.....	glamorous	luxury	.....
competition	.....	.....	reliable
fashion	.....	.....	dangerous

**68.5** Which nouns or adjectives from the last exercise (or any others from section D on the opposite page), do you associate with these companies and products?

Rolex .....	Benetton .....
Coca Cola .....	Sony .....
Ferrari .....	Levis .....
Swatch .....	mobile phones .....

**68.6** Can you answer these questions about your own country? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Which company is the market leader in the motor car industry in your country?
- 2 Do you know its approximate market share?
- 3 Which companies are its main competitors?
- 4 Write down the names of at least two cars that have been launched in the last six months.

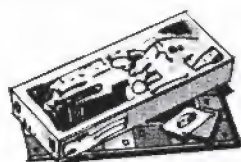
# 69 Hobbies

Hobbies are activities that we do in our **spare time** (= free time).

## A Things people play



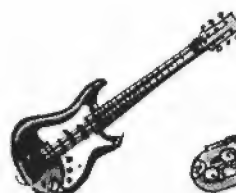
cards



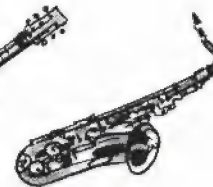
board games



chess



guitar



saxophone

musical instruments

*Note:* People join **clubs** (= become members of clubs) where they can play cards and chess.

## B Things people collect



stamps



coins



antiques

## C Outdoor activities



hiking



camping



rock climbing



hunting

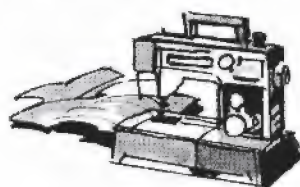


jogging

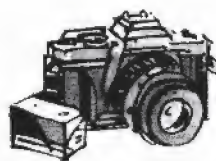
With these hobbies we can use two different verbs, **go** and **do**:

We often **go** camping in the summer. *or* I **do** a bit of / a lot of rock climbing in the summer.

## D Creative hobbies



Caroline **makes** her own clothes. (= she makes clothes for herself; she doesn't buy them)



Barbara **likes** photography.



Brigit is **mad about** (= really likes) **DIY**. (DIY = do-it-yourself)

*Note:* When we start a hobby for the first time we often use the phrasal verb **take up**, and when we stop doing the hobby for the final time, we often use the phrasal verb **give up**.

I **took up** golf when I was fifteen, but I **gave it up** last year.



## Exercises

### 69.1 Without looking at the opposite page, write down:

- 1 three things that people often play
- 2 three things that people often collect
- 3 five outdoor hobbies which include some physical exercise

### 69.2 Here are some people talking about their hobbies. Can you guess what the hobby is in each case?

- 1 I usually use colour, but sometimes you get a better effect with black and white. It really depends on the subject.
- 2 I really enjoy going round the shops and markets looking for a bargain.
- 3 I try to practise every day, but sometimes it's difficult because I don't like to disturb my neighbours too much. And one neighbour gets very angry if I play the same thing over and over again.
- 4 The great thing is you can do it when you like. I usually do it three or four times a week – either early in the morning, or after school. I only go for about 25 minutes but it really keeps me fit.
- 5 Obviously it saves me a lot of money; and in any case, I hate buying things in boutiques because so many things are badly made.
- 6 I joined a club because I wanted to get better, and I now play twice a week in the evenings. It has helped me a lot and I have a much better memory for all the different moves and strategies.
- 7 I think this is a very common hobby for people like me, who have a house but don't have much money. That's why I started, but now I think I do a better job than many professionals.

### 69.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable verb.

- 1 How often do you ..... jogging?
- 2 She ..... hiking because she wanted to get more exercise. Unfortunately, she didn't like it and she ..... it ..... about six months later.
- 3 She has always ..... her own clothes; it's much cheaper than buying them.
- 4 He ..... old coins.
- 5 I ..... quite a lot of rock climbing when I'm on holiday.
- 6 I learnt to ..... the piano when I was at school.
- 7 I wanted to improve my chess, so I ..... a chess club.
- 8 I don't really ..... anything in my spare time.

### 69.4 Answer these questions.

- 1 Have you got a hobby? If so, what is it?
- 2 How long have you had this hobby?
- 3 Is it an expensive hobby?
- 4 Why do you like it?
- 5 How much time do you spend on your hobby?
- 6 Is it a common hobby in your country?
- 7 Write down three other common hobbies in your country.

If possible, ask another person these questions.

## 70 Sport 1: games, people, and places

In English you normally **play a game** but **do a lot of / a bit of sport**:

In the winter I **do** quite a lot of skiing; in the summer I **play** tennis and cricket.

### A Ball games and equipment

football (AmEng = soccer)



rugby



volleyball



basketball



golf



baseball



tennis



table tennis



cricket



squash



badminton



hockey



For most ball games you need **boots** or **training shoes** (trainers).

For tennis, squash and badminton you need a **racket**.

For baseball and table tennis you need a **bat**. For golf you need **clubs**.

In tennis, volleyball and badminton there is a **net** across the middle of the court. There is also a **net** around each goal in football.

### B Things you can do with a ball



throw it



head it



pass it



hit it



catch it



kick it

### C Places and people

The playing area for football, rugby, hockey and cricket is called a **pitch**; for tennis, volleyball, basketball, squash and badminton it is a **court**; for golf it is a **course**.

*Note:* When you describe the playing area for football and the area around for the crowd (= the people who watch, also called **spectators**), it is called a **stadium**, e.g. Wembley Stadium.

*Players:* Some games are played by individuals, others are **team** games. In a team, one **player** is the **captain**, and there is a **manager** (e.g. in football) or a **coach** (e.g. in basketball).

*Officials:* Football, rugby and hockey have a **referee** but tennis, cricket and baseball have an **umpire**. In football the referee has a whistle to control the game and two **linesmen**. In tennis there are line **judges** to decide if the ball is 'in' or 'out'.

### D Other sports

<i>Name</i>	<i>Place</i>	<i>Equipment</i>
athletics	track	vest, shorts, running shoes or spikes
motor racing	track	crash helmet
swimming	pool	swimming costume (women); trunks (men)
boxing	ring	vest, shorts, gloves, boots
skiing	slopes (piste)	sticks, ski suit, ski boots

## Exercises

**70.1** Write down six things you can do with a ball. Cover the opposite page first.

..... it      ..... it      ..... it  
 ..... it      ..... it      ..... it

**70.2** Write down:

- 1 five games where you can hit the ball (with various kinds of equipment).
- 2 four games where you can pass the ball.
- 3 three games where you can catch the ball.
- 4 two games where you can kick the ball.
- 5 one game where you can head the ball.

**70.3** Organise these words and put them in the correct columns below? (You can put a word in more than one column if you wish.)

swimming    gloves    crash helmet    course    football    racket    track  
 ring    boots    pool    motor racing    clubs    tennis    net    court    golf  
 pitch    track    trunks    boxing    goals    costume    shorts    whistle    vest

<i>Sport</i>	<i>Place</i>	<i>Equipment</i>

**70.4** True or false? If false, correct the sentence to make it *true*.

- 1 The people who watch a football match are the audience.
- 2 The official who gives the score in tennis is the umpire.
- 3 Athletes wear shorts.
- 4 You need a stick to play hockey.
- 5 Boxers wear gloves.
- 6 Tennis is played on a pitch.
- 7 The referee in football has a whistle.
- 8 Women wear trunks for swimming.

**70.5** Answer these questions. If possible, ask a friend the same questions.

- 1 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page that you watch but don't play? If so, what are they and where do you watch them?
- 2 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page you play/do yourself? If so, which?
- 3 Are there any that you are good at?
- 4 Are there any that you hate?
- 5 Are there any that are not played much in your country?
- 6 Which game or sport is the most popular in your country?
- 7 Which game or sport on the opposite page is the most dangerous in your opinion?
- 8 Which game or sport requires the most strength?
- 9 Which one has the biggest crowds?
- 10 Can you write down at least three more games/sports not included opposite.

# 71 Sport 2: winning, losing, and scoring

## A Winning and losing

Notice how these key words are used:

Spain **beat** Switzerland 3–2. (= Switzerland **lost** to Spain 3–2) In other words:

Spain **won** the match. (= Switzerland **lost** the match)

Spain **defeated** Switzerland. (= Switzerland **were defeated** by Spain)

Spain **were** the **winners**. (= Switzerland **were** the **losers**)

If both teams or players have the same **score** (= number of goals or points), it is a **draw** (e.g. 2–2 is a **draw**). We can also use **draw** as a verb, e.g. we **drew** yesterday's **match/game** 2–2.

*Note:* A **match** is used for an organised game: We had a **game** of football with a few friends in the park, but we've got an important **match** against a very good team next week.

When the game is still in progress, we often use the verb **lead** to describe the position of the teams and players, or **latest** to describe the score:

HALF-TIME SCORE: SPAIN 2 SWITZERLAND 1

At half-time, Spain **are leading** Switzerland two–one. (= the **latest score** is two–one to Spain)

Sampras is **leading** three–two in the first set. (= the **latest score** is three–two to Sampras)

## B What's the score?

In most games you score **goals** (e.g. football, hockey) or **points** (e.g. table tennis, basketball). At the end of the game there is a **result** (= players/teams win, lose, or draw). However, the scoring system – and the way we describe it – is different from game to game.

### Football

Spain 0–0 Italy (we say nil–nil)

Spain 1–0 Italy (one–nil to Spain)

Spain 1–1 Italy (one–all)

Spain 1–2 Italy (two–one to Italy)

Spain 2–2 Italy (two–all)

If the **final score** is 2–2 in a cup match, you may have to play **extra time**. And if the score is still 2–2 at the end of extra time, there is a **penalty shoot-out**.

### Tennis

15–0 (fifteen–love)

30–0 (thirty–love)

30–30 (thirty–all)

40–40 (deuce) [pronounced like 'juice']

Advantage X

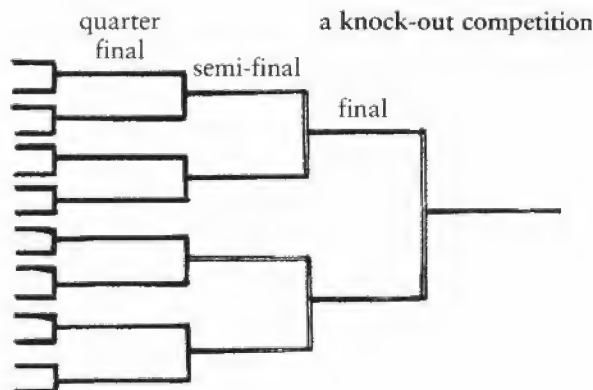
Game X

Game and set to X (e.g. 6–3 or 7–5)

If the **score** reaches 6–6 you have a **tie-break** to decide the set.

## C Competitions

In many sports, players and teams **play** every week in a **league** (the player/team that wins the most games in a season is the winner of the **league championship**). In most sports, there is also a **cup competition**, which is usually a **knock-out competition**.





## Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from the previous unit.

### 71.1 Complete the table with the correct forms.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Past participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Past participle</i>
win lose beat			lead catch draw		

### 71.2 How do we say these scores?

- 1 *Football*: 0–0      2–1      4–4  
 2 *Tennis*: 15–0      40–30      40–40

### 71.3 Fill the gaps in these texts with suitable words or phrases.

In the World Cup Final of 1994, Brazil <sup>(1)</sup>..... Italy 3–2 in a <sup>(2)</sup>..... shoot-out. After ninety minutes the <sup>(3)</sup>..... was 0–0; and it remained the same after thirty minutes of <sup>(4)</sup>....., but then Italy <sup>(5)</sup>..... 3–2 in the penalty shoot-out after Baresi and Baggio both missed. This was the fourth time that Brazil had <sup>(6)</sup>..... the World Cup.

Ivanisevic <sup>(7)</sup>..... to Sampras in the second round. He <sup>(8)</sup>..... the first <sup>(9)</sup>..... 6–4, but then <sup>(10)</sup>..... the second <sup>(11)</sup>..... on a <sup>(12)</sup>..... After that, Sampras dominated the rest of the <sup>(13)</sup>..... and won easily. The final <sup>(14)</sup>..... was 4–6, 7–6, 6–1, 6–2.

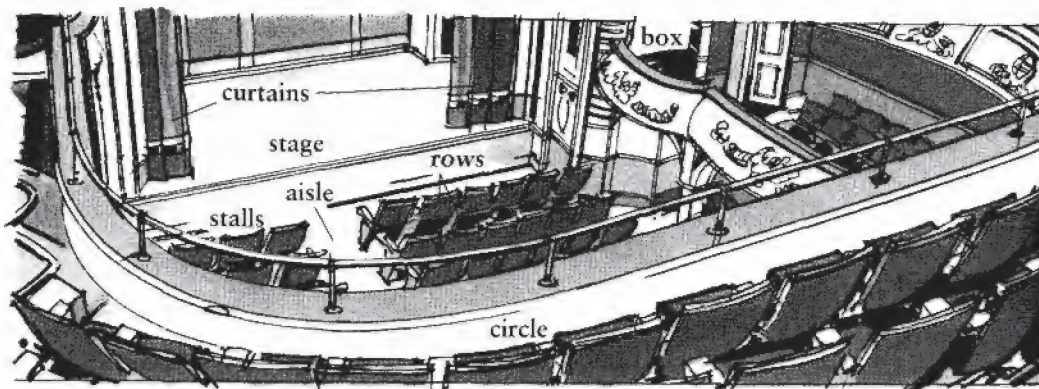
### 71.4 True or false? Check your answers by looking back at this unit and the previous unit.

- 1 Brazil won the football World Cup in 1994.
- 2 Football has an umpire.
- 3 A set in tennis is always decided on a tie-break.
- 4 If two teams have the same score at the end of the game, it is a draw.
- 5 Golf is played on a course.
- 6 If someone gives you the latest score, the game has finished.
- 7 Sticks are used in skiing and hockey.
- 8 In a knock-out competition, you can lose one or two games but still win the competition.

### 71.5 Which sport is being described in each sentence? (The underlined words are key words and you can look them up to increase your vocabulary in different sports.)

- 1 The referee gave the try although many people thought it was a forward pass.
- 2 He scored the winner with a beautiful free kick from just outside the penalty area.
- 3 He served fifteen aces and not one double fault.
- 4 The coach called a time out with just 45 seconds left and two points between the teams.
- 5 He crashed into the car in front with just two laps remaining.
- 6 First he was booked (= the yellow card) for a bad tackle, and then he handled the ball inside the penalty area, so the referee had to send him off (= the red card).
- 7 In the 200 metres freestyle, he overtook the Russian on the final length to win the race.
- 8 She sprinted away from the rest of the field on the final lap and won easily.

## 72 Cinema and theatre



### A Theatre

At the theatre you can see **plays**, e.g. *Hamlet* by Shakespeare, or **musicals**, e.g. *Phantom of the Opera* by Andrew Lloyd Webber. In a play the **cast** (= the total number of actors) is usually quite small, but musicals often have a very large cast.

One difference between the theatre and cinema is that you usually **book** (= reserve) tickets **in advance** (= some time before the actual performance) if you are going to the theatre.

Another difference is that the **audience** (= the people watching the play/musical) **clap** at the end of the **performance**. *This does not usually happen (in Britain) at the end of a film.*

### B Cinema

Plays are **performed** on stage, films are **shown** on screen. In your country, films in English are either shown with **subtitles** (= there is a translation across the bottom of the screen), or they are **dubbed** (= the English is removed and replaced by actors speaking in your own language).

Films are **set** (= take place) in many different periods and places, e.g. *Room with a View* is set in the early part of the 20th century; *Blade Runner* is set in the future. And when people talk about films, they often talk about the **director**, e.g. Spielberg, Bertolucci; and the **stars**, the most important actors and actresses, e.g. Tom Hanks and Jodie Foster.

### C Types of film

**western**: a film about America in the 19th century; often with cowboys and indians

**war film**, e.g. *Born on the 4th of July*      **action film**, e.g. *Indiana Jones*

**horror film**, e.g. *Dracula*; *Frankenstein*      **comedy**: a funny film that makes you laugh

**science fiction film**: about the future      **thriller**: an exciting story often about a crime

### D Describing plays and films

Journalists write articles in which they give their opinion of new films and plays. They are called **critics**, and their articles are called **reviews**. These are some words they may use:

**moving**: producing strong emotions, often of sadness; a positive word

**violent**: includes lots of scenes with fighting and death

**powerful**: has a big effect on our emotions

**gripping**: exciting and very interesting

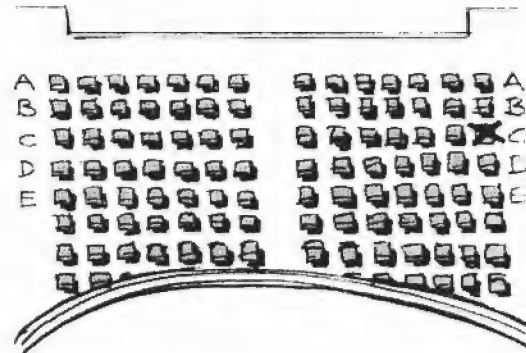
**good fun**: used to describe a film that may not be very serious or important but is enjoyable

**slow**: boring

## Exercises

**72.1** Look at the picture of your visit to the theatre and answer these questions.

- 1 Did you sit in the stalls or circle?
- 2 Which row were you in?
- 3 Were you next to an aisle?
- 4 Did you have a good view of the stage?



**72.2** What word or phrase is being defined?

- 1 A play or film in which part of the story is sung to music.
- 2 The total number of actors in a play or film.
- 3 The people who watch a play at the theatre.
- 4 What these people do with their hands at the end of a play.
- 5 The person who makes a film.
- 6 Journalists who write articles about films and plays.
- 7 The name of the articles they write.
- 8 The translation of the story of a film across the bottom of the screen.
- 9 To reserve tickets before the performance.
- 10 The most important actors or actresses in a film.

**72.3** Have you seen these famous films made in English over the last twenty years? If so, try to complete the rest of the table using words from the opposite page. Then write in the titles of three more films you have seen and complete the rest of the table for it.

<i>Film</i>	<i>Type of film</i>	<i>Subtitles or dubbed?</i>	<i>Description of film (adjectives)</i>
1 <i>Dirty Harry</i> with Clint Eastwood			
2 <i>Blade Runner</i> with Harrison Ford			
3 <i>Four Weddings and a Funeral</i> with Hugh Grant			
4 <i>Schindler's List</i> with Liam Neeson			
5 <i>Dances with Wolves</i> with Kevin Costner			
6			
7			
8			

# 73 Music, art and literature

## A Forms and people

	Forms	Person
Music	classical pop/rock	composer songwriter
Art	painting sculpture	painter sculptor } artist (general)
Literature	the novel short stories poetry plays	novelist short story writer poet dramatist/playwright } writer (general)

## B Music

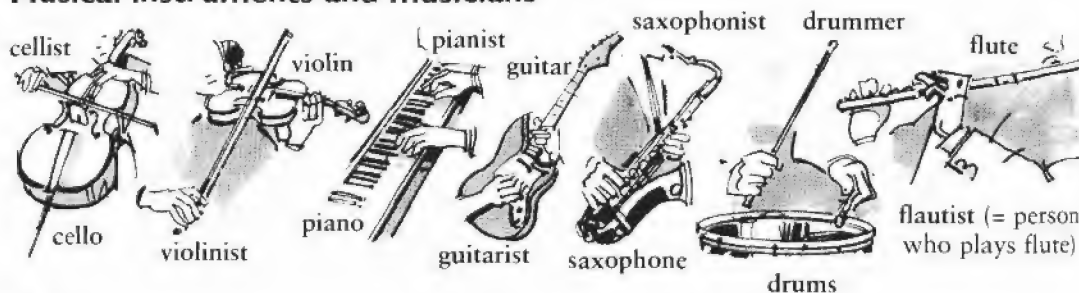
**Classical music:** e.g. Beethoven's piano concertos, Schubert's symphonies. Beethoven and Schubert are both **composers** (= people who write classical music) and most of their music is played by an **orchestra** (= large group of musicians including violins, cellos, etc.) which is led by a **conductor**, e.g. Georg Solti or Loren Maazel, as leader.

**Opera** (= a play in which the words are sung): e.g. *La Bohème* by Puccini, *Carmen* by Bizet.

**Rock and pop music:** e.g. U2, Bon Jovi, Maria Carey. This music is played by **groups/bands**, e.g. Bon Jovi, Simply Red; or **solo artists**, e.g. Madonna. Many solo artists, e.g. Phil Collins, are **singer-songwriters** (= they write and perform/play their own songs).

**Jazz:** e.g. Duke Ellington, Miles Davis, Stan Getz.

## C Musical instruments and musicians



## D Art

If you want to see the paintings of a famous artist, you need to go to an **art gallery** or museum. There you can see individual paintings and sometimes an **exhibition** (= a collection of paintings by one painter or **school of painters**, e.g. the Impressionists), e.g.

There's a Monet **exhibition** at the National Gallery next week.

There are many different types and styles of painting:

a **portrait** (= a painting of a person)

a **self-portrait** (= a painting of the artist by himself/herself)

a **landscape** (= a painting of part of the countryside)

an **abstract painting** (= a painting that is not realistic)



## Exercises

**73.1** What are or were these people? (painter? sculptor? novelist? poet? dramatist? songwriter? composer? conductor? rock star? pop star? musician? singer? pianist? etc.) Some of them may be more than one of these things.

- |                           |                     |                       |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Leo Tolstoy             | 7 Giuseppe Verdi    | 13 Henry Moore        |
| 2 William Wordsworth      | 8 Mick Jagger       | 14 Jorge Luis Borges  |
| 3 Henrik Ibsen            | 9 Milton Nascimento | 15 Pablo Picasso      |
| 4 Yukio Mishima           | 10 Paul Tortelier   | 16 Saki               |
| 5 Anton Chekhov           | 11 Paul Simon       | 17 Leonard Bernstein  |
| 6 Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart | 12 Mark Knopfler    | 18 Alberto Giacometti |

**73.2** What do you call the people who play the following instruments?

piano   guitar   drums   violin   cello   flute

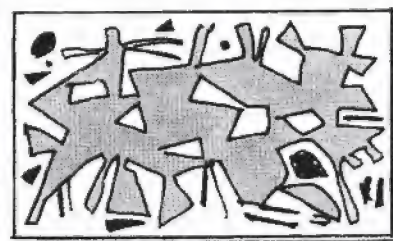
**73.3** What types of painting are these?



1



2



3

**73.4** Use the context and your own knowledge to fill the gaps in these sentences and dialogues.

- 1 He used to be conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic .....
- 2 Phil Collins was in a famous ..... called *Genesis* before he became a .....
- 3 A: Do you like ..... music?  
B: Yes, very much.  
A: And who's your favourite .....?  
B: It's hard to say, but I love Bach and Vivaldi.
- 4 There's going to be an ..... of his paintings at the new art .....
- 5 She used to ..... her own songs but now she mainly ..... material written by other people.
- 6 I haven't been to the ..... since I saw *The Marriage of Figaro* last year.
- 7 I think *The Great Gatsby* is Scott Fitzgerald's best .....
- 8 His first ..... was performed in a very small theatre.

# 74 Newspapers

## A Background

In Britain, most newspapers are **daily** (= they come out / are published every day); a few only come out on Sundays. Magazines are usually **weekly** (= they come out every week), or **monthly** (= published every month).



Some newspapers are **tabloids** (= small in size) e.g. *The Mirror*; others are called **broadsheets** (= larger in size) e.g. *The Times*. In general, the tabloids represent the **popular press** (short articles and lots of pictures) and the broadsheets represent the **quality press** (longer articles and more 'serious'). The largest **circulation** (= number of readers) is *The Sun*.

## B Contents

Most British papers contain the following:

**home news** (= news about Britain)

**foreign/international news** (= news about other countries)

**business news**

**sports news**

**features** (= longer articles about special subjects, e.g. a famous person or a political issue)

**radio and TV programmes**

**weather forecast** (= tells you what the weather will be like)

**reviews** (= when film, theatre and music **critics** write about new films, plays and records, and give their opinion of them)

## C People

**Editor**: the person in control of the daily production.

**Reporters/journalists**: people who report news and write articles; many journalists are **freelance** (= they work for themselves and are not employed by the newspaper).

## D Headlines

Certain words (usually very short) are often used in newspaper headlines. Here are some:

**row** (pronounced like 'cow') (= an argument)

**quit** (= to leave a job)

**bid** (n, v) (= an effort / a try / an attempt)

**cut** (v, n) (= to reduce / make less)

**back** (= to support)

**hit** (= to affect badly)

**talks** (= discussions)

**key** (= very important)

## E 'It said in the paper that ...'

When we refer to something in a newspaper we can use the verb **say** (NOT **write**), or the expression **according to**:

It **says** in *The Times* that they've found the missing girl.

**According to** *The Guardian*, the missing girl was found last night.

## Exercises

**74.1** Think about newspapers in your own country. Answer these questions.

- 1 How many daily national newspapers are there?
- 2 How many are tabloids?
- 3 Are any of the 'quality' papers in tabloid form?
- 4 How many broadsheets are there?
- 5 How many newspapers *only* come out on Sunday in your country?
- 6 Which newspaper has the largest circulation?
- 7 Can you name at least one editor of a daily paper; and two or three famous journalists who write for daily or weekly papers?
- 8 How often do you read the newspaper? How often do you buy a newspaper?

**74.2** Explain these headlines in your own words. Do not use the underlined words.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1 <b>Minister to quit</b></p> <p>2 <b>Government cuts spending on new hospitals</b></p> <p>3 <b>New bid to cut teenage smoking</b></p> <p>4 <b>Bad weather hits farmers</b></p> | <p>5 <b>Germany backs US plan</b></p> <p>6 <b>Ministers in tax row</b></p> <p>7 <b>POLICE DISCOVER KEY WITNESS</b></p> <p>8 <b>Japan and US enter fresh talks</b></p> |
|--|---|

**74.3** Buy two different newspapers (in English or your own language) and complete this table.

	<i>Paper 1</i> (no. of pages)	<i>Paper 2</i> (no. of pages)
home news foreign/international news feature articles business news sports news		

For the same two papers complete this table.

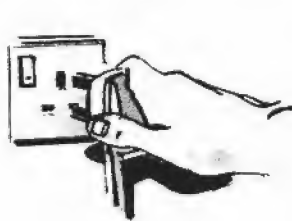
	<i>Paper 1</i> (yes/no)	<i>Paper 2</i> (yes/no)
weather forecast cartoons crossword radio and TV programmes reviews		

How many pages are left? What are they about? If possible, compare answers with a friend.

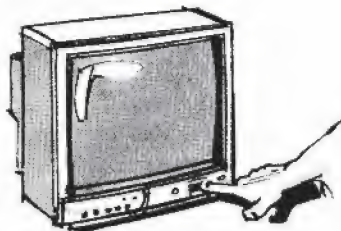


# 75 Television

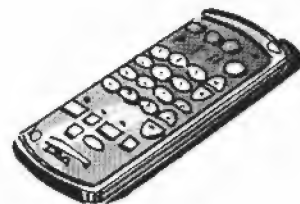
## A Operating a television



plug it in



turn it on (≠ turn it off)



remote control

You may also want to **turn it up** (= increase the volume because you can't hear) (≠ **turn it down**); and **turn over** (= change to a different **channel**, e.g. from 1 to 3)

*Note:* You can also say **switch on**, **switch off**, or **switch over** (but *not* switch it up/down).

## B Types of programme

Here are some types of TV programme:

**Soap opera:** a programme often on two or three times a week, which follows the lives of a group/community of people; the stories are often exciting, dramatic and hard to believe.

**Quiz show or Game show:** individuals, teams or families who answer questions or play different games against each other. The winner gets a **prize**, e.g. a car, a holiday, money.

**Chat show:** a programme where a **presenter** talks to famous people about their lives and careers; sometimes there is music as well.

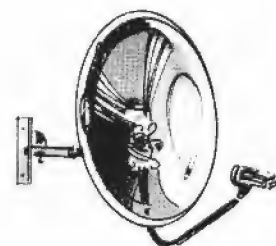
**Documentary:** a film with factual information, often analysing a problem in society.

**A series:** a number of programmes about the same situation or the same characters in different situations. This may be a **comedy series** (the programmes are intended to be funny), or a **drama series** (the programmes are intended to be exciting, with interesting characters and situations).

**Current affairs programme:** a programme about a current social/political problem. **Current** means that it is happening 'now / at the present time'.

## C TV in Great Britain

At the moment there are five 'terrestrial' **channels** (or **stations**) on TV (BBC 1, BBC 2, ITV, Channel 4, and Channel 5). If you pay extra, you can have a **satellite dish** and receive **satellite TV**; or pay to have **cable TV** – there are many channels available.



## D Talking TV

Here are some useful words and phrases connected with television:

What's on TV tonight? (= what programmes are showing on TV tonight?)

What time's the film on? (= what time does it start?)

How long do the **commercials** last? (= the advertisements between programmes)

What's your **favourite** programme? (= the programme you like most/best)

Are they showing the game **live** (= as it happens) or just **recorded highlights**? (= parts of the game after it has been played, e.g. later in the day/evening)

How much is a TV **licence**? (= money you have to pay the government if you have a TV)



## Exercises

- 75.1** You are watching TV with a friend. What could you say in each of the situations below? Look at the example first.

*Example:* You want to watch a programme on TV. Could you turn the TV on?

- 1 You can't hear the programme very well. Could you .....
- 2 You want to watch a different programme. Could you .....
- 3 Now it's too loud for you. Could you .....
- 4 You don't want to watch any more. Could you .....

- 75.2** Here is part of an evening from three British TV channels. Can you find at least one example of: a documentary, a quiz show, a game show, a drama series, and a current affairs programme? There is also one example of a comedy series and two soap operas. Can you guess which programmes they might be?

### 7.00 Telly Addicts

Noel Edmonds hosts the quiz in which teams have their television knowledge put to the test.

### 7.30 Watchdog

Anne Robinson presents the stories that affect consumers in the 1990s. With Alice Beer and reporters Chris Choi and Johnathan Maitland.

### 8.00 EastEnders

Kathy tries to come to terms with Ted's revelations. Michelle receives a letter that could change her life.

For cast see Tuesday  
Stereo Subtitled .....5500

### 8.30 2 Point 4 Children

*The Deep.* There's something fishy going on when Bill and Ben are asked to look after their neighbour's house.

### 9.00 Nine O'Clock News

With Peter Sissons.  
Subtitled

#### Regional News

**Weather** Rob McElwee .....3245

### 7.00 The Krypton Factor

Four new contestants compete for a place in the November final.  
Director Tony Prescott; Producer Wayne Garvie Stereo Subtitled .....9448

### 7.30 Coronation Street

It's farewell time at the Rovers. Episode written by Stephen Mallatrat. For cast see Wednesday. Repeated on Wednesday at 1.25pm Subtitled .....239

◆ **Bet's off:** page 22

### 8.00 Bruce's Price Is Right

Game show testing knowledge of the price of consumer goods.


Director Bill Morton; Producer Howard Huntridge Stereo Subtitled .....2968

### 8.30 World in Action

In a classroom fitted with cameras, *World in Action* reveals what is really going on in Britain's overcrowded schools and asks who is to blame.

### 9.00 New series

#### Cracker

 Brotherly Love (part 1). In the first of this three-part thriller, a prostitute is found raped and murdered, opening old wounds at the station. See today's choices.

### 7.00 Channel 4 News

Presented by Jon Snow and Cathy Smith. Including **Weather**  
Subtitled .....829535

### 7.55 The Slot

The daily soapbox offering viewers the chance to air their opinions.

Stereo .....141603

### 8.00 New series Desperately Seeking Something


A four-part series in which Pete McCarthy explores the strange universe of alternative beliefs.

### 8.30 Baby It's You

Continuing the six-part series which uses natural history filming techniques to observe the first two years of a baby's life.

### 9.00 Cutting Edge

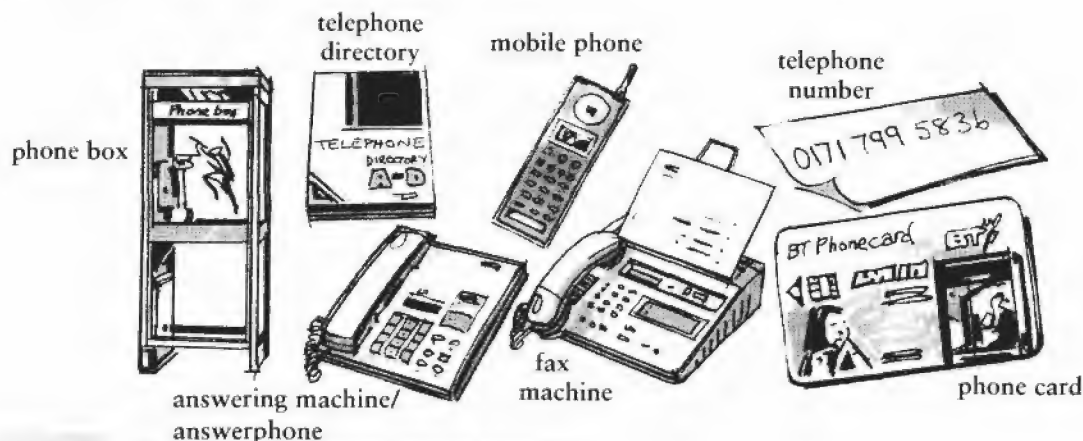
#### The Trouble with Money

 Strange though it seems to some, not everyone enjoys winning the lottery. This documentary explores the joys and pitfalls of getting rich quick.

- 75.3** Answer these questions about TV in your own country.

- 1 How many 'terrestrial' channels are there?
- 2 Do you watch satellite TV and/or cable TV?
- 3 In total, how much TV do you watch every week?
- 4 What are your favourite programmes on TV at the moment?
- 5 What night are they on?
- 6 Do you enjoy watching the commercials?
- 7 Do you often watch football matches live on TV? If not, do you watch the highlights?
- 8 Do you need a TV licence in your country? If so, how much is it?

## 76 On the phone



### A Starting a phone conversation

The first example is an informal situation; the second example is a more formal call.

A: Hello.

B: Is that Mary? [~~NOT Are you Mary?~~ or ~~Is it Mary?~~]

A: Yeah.

B: Hi. It's Ruth. [~~NOT I am Ruth,~~ or ~~Here is Ruth~~]

*Note:* When British people answer the phone at home they usually just say 'hello' and sometimes they also give their number. They do not give their name.

C: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.

D: Oh good morning. **Could I** speak to Mrs Gordon, please?

C: Yes. **Who's calling**, please?

D: **My name** is Paul Scott. (This is usually how you introduce yourself in a formal situation.)

C: Right, Mr Scott. I'll **put you through**. (= I will connect you with Mrs Gordon)

### B Telephone problems

4.20 p.m. You try to phone your sister Susan but the **line is engaged** (= the line is busy). In other words, someone is already **on the phone** (= using the phone).

4.30 p.m. You phone your sister again but it's the **wrong number** (= you have **dialled** another number, e.g. 637 424 and not 627 424, and a stranger answers).

4.35 p.m. You **get through to** your sister's number (= make contact) but she's **out** (= not at home). Her husband answers and says that Susan **won't be back** (= will not return) for a couple of hours, so you **leave a message**, e.g. Could you ask Susan to ring me when she gets back? The husband agrees to give Susan the message.

7.30 p.m. Susan **phones you back** but you are out. She leaves a message on your answerphone. Her message is: Jean, this is Susan. I'm just returning your **call** (= phone call). I'll **give you a ring** (= phone you) tomorrow.

### C Useful vocabulary

A **reverse charge call** (AmEng = **collect call**). This is when the person you ring agrees to pay for the phone call. If you **make a reverse charge call**, you must go through the **operator**. If you have someone's name and address, you can call **Directory Enquiries** to get their phone number. If you phone another town or city, you need to know the code, e.g. the code for Cambridge is 01223. This type of call is a **long distance call** (≠ a local call).

## Exercises

**76.1** Write down five words or expressions including the word 'phone' or 'telephone'.

**76.2** Fill the gaps in these phone conversations with suitable words or phrases.

- A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?  
 B: Yes. <sup>(1)</sup>..... Paul Mathews and I'm trying to contact Mr Patterson. He actually left a <sup>(2)</sup>..... on my answerphone yesterday afternoon.  
 A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Patterson's <sup>(3)</sup>..... at the moment. Can I ask him to <sup>(4)</sup>..... later?  
 B: Yes please. I shall be here until lunchtime. My <sup>(5)</sup>..... is 748 7267.
- B: Hello.  
 B: Hi. <sup>(6)</sup>..... Sandra?  
 A: No, sorry. I'm <sup>(7)</sup>..... Sandra's not here at the moment.  
 B: Oh. Do you know when she'll <sup>(8)</sup>.....?  
 A: No, I've no idea.  
 B: OK. Well in that case, could I <sup>(9)</sup>..... a ..... for her?  
 A: Yes, of course.  
 B: Could you ask her to <sup>(10)</sup>..... this evening, please?  
 A: Sure. What's your name?  
 B: Catherine. I'm a colleague from work. She's got my number.  
 A: Right. I'll tell her.  
 B: Thanks very much. Bye bye.  
 A: Bye.
- C: Hello?  
 B: <sup>(11)</sup>..... Carlos?  
 A: Yeah, speaking.  
 B: Hi Carlos. <sup>(12)</sup>..... Serena.  
 A: Oh hello. I was expecting you to ring yesterday.  
 B: I did – or at least I tried. I <sup>(13)</sup>..... your number about six times last night but I couldn't <sup>(14)</sup>..... It was <sup>(15)</sup>..... all the time.  
 A: Oh yes, I'm sorry about that. I was <sup>(16)</sup>..... the phone to my brother for about an hour and then someone from school rang me about the table tennis tournament next week.  
 B: Oh well, never mind. Anyway I'm phoning about ...

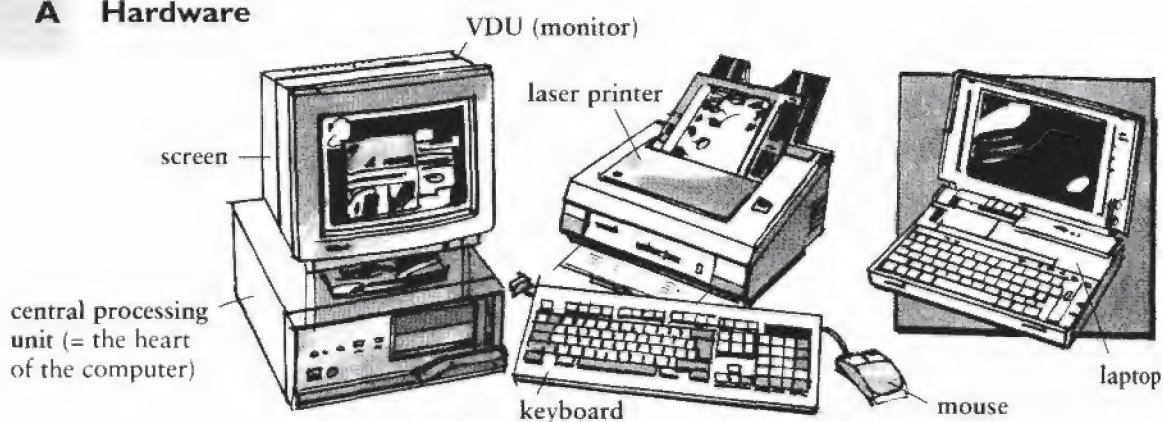
**76.3** Can you answer these questions?

- 1 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police, fire brigade or ambulance?
- 2 Is there a Directory Enquiries? What number is it?
- 3 From your country, what's the dialling code for the United Kingdom?
- 4 How much does it cost to make a local call?
- 5 How often do you have to pay your phone bill?
- 6 Is it cheaper to phone during the night?
- 7 What's the phone number of your English school?
- 8 Have you ever made a reverse charge call? If so, who was it to?

If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone from the same country.

# 77 Computers

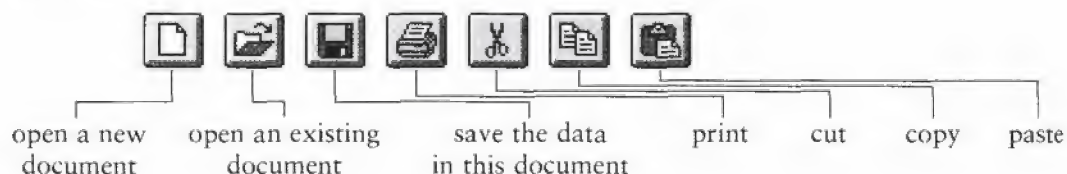
## A Hardware



As well as the **hardware** (= the machines), you also need **software** (= the programs needed to work the machines). These programs are on disks, e.g. the **hard disk** inside the computer, or **floppy disks** or on CD-ROMs (= Compact Disc Read Only Memory, a CD on which you can put a large amount of information).

## B Operating a computer

Using the **mouse**, you can do a number of things by **clicking on** different **icons** (= moving the mouse to point at different pictures at the top of the screen).



## C What do people use computers for?

A **word processor** is a computer used to prepare documents or letters, or the software that is used for this purpose. Many people use their computers for **word processing**, e.g. writing letters and reports. A lot of business people use **spreadsheets** (= a program used to enter and arrange numbers and financial information) and **databases** (= programs which allow you to store, look at or change a large amount of information quickly and easily). Some people also use **graphics** (= the pictures and symbols a computer program can produce).

## D Important vocabulary

More and more people are becoming **computer-literate** (= have experience of working with computers and know how to use them) as many programs and machines are so **user-friendly** (= easy to use). You can now connect your computer to computers all over the world using the **Internet** (= a system that allows computers to connect using telephone lines). People send each other **e-mail** (electronic mail) messages using this system or **network**. If your computer is slow it may need more **memory**. It may **crash** (= stop working) if there is not enough memory or if it has a **bug** (= a software problem; also a virus). Make sure you make a **back-up** copy of your work (= an extra copy on a floppy disk).

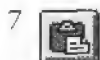


## Exercises

### 77.1 Add another word, abbreviation, or part of a word, to complete common 'computer' words and phrases.

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1 soft.....      | 7 a computer ..... |
| 2 a word .....   | 8 .....-ROM        |
| 3 floppy .....   | 9 laser .....      |
| 4 .....-friendly | 10 lap.....        |
| 5 .....-literate | 11 spread.....     |
| 6 key.....       | 12 .....-mail      |

### 77.2 Can you remember what these symbols mean?



### 77.3 Complete this text about using a computer for word processing.

I wrote a report on the <sup>(1)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ this morning. When I finished, I <sup>(2)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ out two copies – one for me and one for my boss. Then, without any warning, the computer went <sup>(3)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, and I'm afraid I lost the whole document. This is very unusual because normally I <sup>(4)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the data while I'm writing and then make a <sup>(5)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ copy when I have finished; this morning I forgot.

Anyway, I gave the report to my boss, hoping that she would not ask me to change it in any way. She did. She thought it was a bit long and said it would be better if I used more <sup>(6)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to illustrate some of the written information. She also thought it would make the report look more attractive.

I went back and rewrote most of the report when the computer was OK, only I <sup>(7)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ part of the middle section which was rather repetitive, and I added extra <sup>(8)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ as my boss advised. It did look better by the time I'd finished, and this time I remembered to <sup>(9)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it and make a <sup>(10)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ copy.

### 77.4 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- Do you have a computer at home? If so, what is it?
- Do you use computers at school/college/university/work? If so, what type?
- What do you use them for?
- Would you say you are computer-literate?
- Do you find most computers user-friendly?
- What software programs are you familiar with?
- Do you use e-mail?
- Have you used CD-ROM? If so, what programs did you use and why?
- Do you think 'The Internet' will have an important influence on our daily lives? Do you think it will be important in helping people from different countries to learn English?

# 78 Education: school

## A The system

Most children in England and Wales follow this route in the **state system** (= free education).

Age

- 3 some go to **nursery school**
- 5 everyone starts **primary school**
- 11 pupils go to a **secondary school** (AmEng = **high school**). This may be a **comprehensive** (= mixed ability) or a **grammar school** (= children selected for their **academic ability**)
- 16 they **leave school** and get a job, or go to a college for **vocational** (= job) training, e.g. hotel management, secretarial courses; or **stay at school** for two more years
- 18 they leave school and get a job or 

go to university

go to a college for further education/training, e.g. teaching, business studies.

*Note:*

- You **go to school** (as a pupil to study) and **go to university** (as a student to study). You don't use the definite article 'the' here. Other expressions like this are **go to bed** (to sleep); **go into hospital** (when you are ill); **go to church** (to pray / to worship).
- In some areas of the UK there are not many grammar schools.
- There are also **public schools**. In fact, these are private, and parents pay to send their children there. Some are expensive. About 5% of the population go to public schools.

## B A school timetable

	MON	TUES	WED	THURS	FRI
Lesson 1	Religious Education	Maths	Social Education	English	Visual Art
(break)					
Lesson 2	History	Science	Music	Science	Geography
Lesson 3	English		French	Physical Education (PE)	Maths
(lunch)					
Lesson 4	Maths*	History	Information Technology	Maths	Physical Education
Lesson 5	Geography	Visual Art		French	English

\* Maths is an abbreviation of mathematics.

As you can see, the **pupils** have five **lessons** every day, and altogether they do (= study) eleven **subjects** a week plus Physical Education (PE). Every morning they have a twenty-minute **break**. There are three **terms** (= periods of continuous work) in a school year, and the timetable changes every year.

*Note:* Some words in English which end in 's' look plural, but in fact they are singular:

Maths **isn't** my favourite subject, and physics **is** very difficult.

Most nouns of this type refer to subjects; other examples are **economics** and **politics**.

## Exercises

**78.1** Here are some school subjects but the letters are mixed up. What are the subjects?

*Example:* MGREAN *German* .....

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 TAHMS .....      | 6 EHGORAGPY .....  |
| 2 IRTHOSY .....    | 7 RAT .....        |
| 3 CNECSEI .....    | 8 SIMCU .....      |
| 4 NISGEHL .....    | 9 EHNFCR .....     |
| 5 HOGTCEYNLO ..... | 10 NEOCCIOSM ..... |

**78.2** How much can you remember? Try to answer these questions or complete the sentences without looking at the opposite page.

- At what age do children go to nursery school?
- At what age do they start primary school?
- When they go to secondary school it is either a grammar school or a .....
- At what age can English and Welsh children leave school?
- According to the timetable the foreign languages studied is .....
- Not including PE, how many subjects do the children do?
- What happens if children fail all the exams they take at the age of 16?
- What can they do if they pass all their exams at the age of 18?

**78.3** What about you and your country? Answer these questions.

- Did you go to nursery school?
- Do most children start primary school at the age of five?
- Is the secondary school system similar or different?
- How many subjects did/do you study at secondary school?
- Did/do you study any subjects which are not included opposite?
- What was/is your favourite subject?
- How many lessons did/do you have every day?
- Is/was your school a state school or public school?
- At what age can you leave school?
- How many terms are there in a school year?

**78.4** Complete these sentences with the correct expression.

- When she was a child she went ..... in a small village with only fifty other pupils.
- He didn't go to school last term because he was very ill and he had to go .....
- I was very tired, so after I finished my homework I went .....
- When I left school I went ..... and studied medicine.
- It was a religious school, so we had to go ..... quite a lot.

**78.5** The next unit is about university and further education. Can you think of six subjects you can study at university which you do not usually study at school? Write down your answers, then turn to the next page.

## 79 Education: university

### A Subjects

You can normally **do/study** these **subjects** at university but not always at school:

<u>m</u> edicine	law	<u>ph</u> ilosophy	<u>eng</u> ineering
<u>ps</u> ychology	sociology	<u>ar</u> chitecture	<u>po</u> litics
<u>bu</u> siness studies	<u>ag</u> riculture	<u>hi</u> story of <u>ar</u> t	

*Note:* The underlined letters in some of the words above show the syllable with the main stress. Also note that the first syllable of **psychology** is pronounced /saɪ/ like 'my'.

### B Studying at (a British) university

If you want to go to (= **enter** *fml*) university, you must first **pass examinations** that most students take at the age of eighteen (called 'A' levels). Most students take three 'A' levels (three examinations in three different subjects) and they must do well in order to **get/obtain** a place at university because the places are limited. At the moment, approximately 30% of young adults go to university in Britain.

If you get a place at university, the **tuition** (= the teaching) is free, and some students also get (= receive) a **grant** (= money to pay for living expenses, e.g. food and accommodation) as well. Students at university are called **undergraduates** while they are studying for their first degree.

Most university courses **last** (= go on for / continue for) three years, some courses last four years, and one or two courses, e.g. medicine, may be even longer. During this period students can say that they are **doing/studying** history, or **doing / studying** for a degree in history, for example. When they finish the course and pass their examinations, they receive a **degree** (the qualification when you complete a university course successfully). This can be a **BA** (= Bachelor of Arts) or a **BSc** (= Bachelor of Science), e.g. I have a friend who has a BA in history, and another who has a BSc in chemistry.

### C Postgraduate courses

When you complete your first degree, you are a **graduate**. (In the US, students also use this word as a verb and say, they 'graduated in history' or 'graduated in chemistry', for example.) Some students then go on to do a second course or degree (**postgraduate course / postgraduate degree**). These students are then **postgraduates**. There are usually three possible degrees:

MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science); usually one year

MPhil (Master of Philosophy); usually two years

PhD (Doctor of Philosophy); at least three years

When people study one subject in great detail (often to find new information), we say they are **conducting / doing / carrying out research** (U); e.g.

I'm doing some research **into/on** the languages of different African tribes.

### D School vs. university

At school, you have **teachers** and **lessons**, at university, you have **lecturers** and **lectures**.

When a lecturer **gives/does** a lecture, the students listen and **take/make notes** (= write down the important information), but do not usually say much, except to ask occasional questions.



## Exercises

### 79.1 Read these sentences spoken by university students. What is each person studying?

- 1 We have to know every bone in a person's body.
- 2 I'm concentrating on the modernist style and the work of Le Corbusier and Frank Lloyd Wright.
- 3 The way we use fertilizers is much more precise than twenty years ago.
- 4 We're going to concentrate on Freud and Jung this term.
- 5 I've been reading some books on time management.
- 6 Expressionism was really a reaction to the work of the Impressionists.
- 7 We've spent a lot of time on American foreign policy and how it has been affected by various domestic problems.
- 8 You must know this case – it's one of the most famous in legal history.

Now mark the stress on each of your answers, check with the answer key, and practise saying the words.

### 79.2 What do you call:

- 1 the money some students receive if they get a place at university?
- 2 the qualification you get at the end of university?
- 3 the name we give students during this period at university?
- 4 teachers at university?
- 5 students when they have completed their first degree?
- 6 students studying for a second degree?
- 7 the study of one subject in great depth and detail, often to get new information?
- 8 the talks that students go to while they are at university?

### 79.3 Replace the underlined verbs with different verbs that have the same meaning in the context.

- 1 Who is giving the lecture today?
- 2 Did she receive a grant for her course?
- 3 Is it more difficult to obtain a place at university?
- 4 You have to pass the exams before you can enter university.
- 5 He's studying physics, I think.
- 6 I think they're carrying out some research into the cause of asthma.
- 7 I didn't take any notes in the lecture yesterday.
- 8 The course goes on for three years.

### 79.4 How similar is university education in your own country? Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else from your own country and/or someone from a different country.

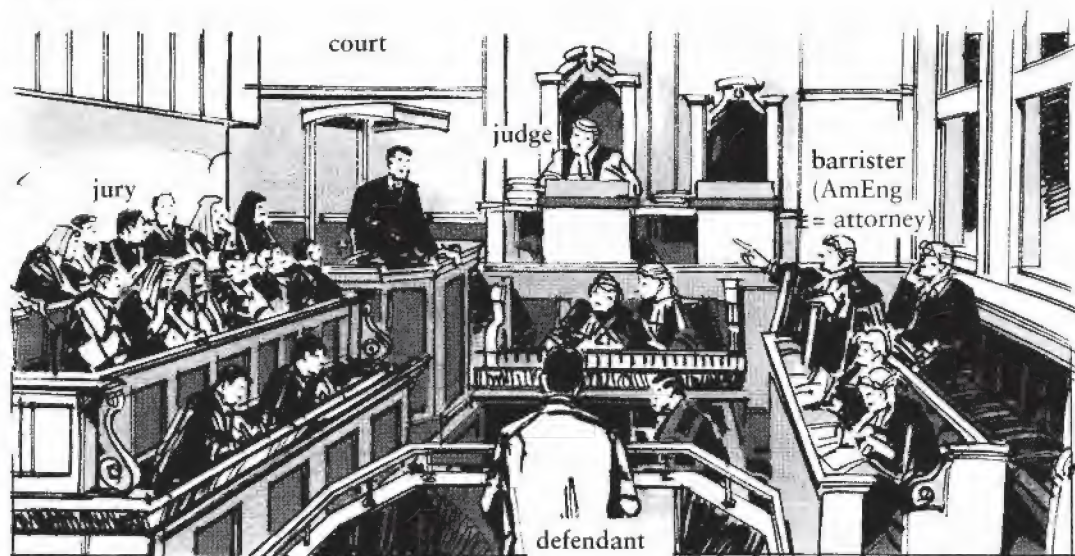
- 1 Do you need to pass examinations before you can go to university?
- 2 Do some students get a grant to study at university?
- 3 Is the tuition free if you go to university?
- 4 Do most students go to university at the age of 18 or 19?
- 5 Do more students go to university in your country than in Britain?
- 6 Do most degree courses last three years?
- 7 What is your equivalent of the British BA or BSc?
- 8 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?

## 80 Law and order

### A The police

They do a number of things. When someone **commits a crime** (= **breaks the law** and does something **wrong / illegal / against the law**) the police must **investigate** (= try to find out what happened / who is responsible). If they find the person responsible for the crime, they **arrest** them (= take them to the police station). At the police station, they **question** them (= ask them questions to find out what they know) and if they are sure the person committed the crime, the person is **charged with** the crime (= the police make an official statement that they believe the person committed the crime). The person must then go to court for trial.

### B The court



In **court**, the person charged with the crime (now called the **defendant** or **accused**) must try to **prove** (= provide facts to show something is true) that they did not commit the crime; in other words prove that they are **innocent** ( $\neq$  **guilty**). The **jury** listens to all the **evidence** (= information about the crime, for and against the defendant) and then makes their decision.

### C Punishment

If the defendant is **convicted of** the crime (= the jury decides that the defendant is guilty), the judge will give the **sentence** (= the punishment). For example, if a person is convicted of murder, the sentence will be many years in **prison**. The person then becomes a **prisoner**, and the room they live in is called a **cell**.

For crimes that are not serious (often called **minor offences**, e.g. illegal parking), the punishment is usually a **fine** (= money you have to pay).

## Exercises

### 80.1 Put this story in the correct order.

- 1 they found both men guilty.
- 2 and charged them with the robbery.
- 3 £10,000 was stolen from a bank in the High Street.
- 4 After the jury had listened to all the evidence
- 5 They were sent to prison for seven years.
- 6 The trial took place two months later.
- 7 and they finally arrested two men.
- 8 They questioned them at the police station
- 9 The police questioned a number of people about the crime

### 80.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Who investigates crimes?
- 2 Who sentences people?
- 3 Who live in cells?
- 4 Who decides if someone is innocent or guilty?
- 5 Who defend people and present evidence?
- 6 Who commit crimes?

### 80.3 Fill the gaps with suitable words.

- 1 I have never ..... the law and ..... a crime.
- 2 In Britain it is ..... the law to drive a car without insurance.
- 3 If you park illegally you will have to pay a .....
- 4 The police were fairly sure the man committed the crime, but they knew it would be difficult to ..... it in court.
- 5 The jury must decide if the accused is innocent or .....
- 6 In order to reach their decision, the jury must listen carefully to the .....
- 7 If the accused is ..... of murder, the ..... may be at least ten years in prison.
- 8 He has been in trouble with the police once before, but it was only a minor .....

### 80.4 Read this short story, then write down your response to the questions below, based on your knowledge of the law in your own country.

Two fifteen-year-old boys broke into a house in the middle of the day when the owner was out, and took money and jewellery worth about £900. The owner reported the crime to the police when she returned home at 6 p.m.

- 1 Will the police investigate this crime?
- 2 How will they investigate? What will they do?
- 3 Do you think the police will catch the two boys?
- 4 If they do, what crime will they be charged with?
- 5 Can the boys be sent to prison?
- 6 What do you think the sentence would be? Do you think this is the correct sentence?

Compare your answers with the answer key (based on the situation in the United Kingdom). If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.



# 81 Crime

## A Against the law

If you do something **illegal** (= wrong / **against the law**), then you have **committed a crime**. Most people commit a crime at some time in their lives, e.g. driving above the speed limit, parking illegally, stealing sweets from a shop when they were children, etc.

## B Crimes

<i>Crime</i>	<i>Criminal</i> (= person)	<i>Verb</i>
theft (= general word for stealing)	thief	steal (also <b>take</b> )
robbery (= steal from people or places)	robber	rob
burglary (= <b>break into</b> a shop/house and steal things)	burglar	burgle / break into
shoplifting (= steal from shops when open)	shoplifter	shoplift
murder (= kill someone by intention)	murderer	murder
manslaughter (= kill someone by accident)	–	–
rape (= force someone to have sex)	rapist	rape

## C Crime prevention

What can governments do to **fight** crime (= take action to stop crime)? These things happen in some countries, although many people may think they are not a good idea.

Police carry (= have) guns.

Police **are allowed to** (= are permitted to) stop anyone in the street and question them.

The courts give **tougher punishments** for crimes committed than in the past (e.g. bigger fines or longer prison sentences than in the past).

There is **capital punishment** (= death, e.g. by electric chair or hanging) for some crimes.

What can individuals do to **prevent** a crime **from** happening (= stop a crime happening)?

Here are things some people do to **protect themselves** and their **property** (= home and land), although you may not think they are all a good idea.

Don't walk along dark streets **late at night** (e.g. midnight) **on your own** (= alone).

**Lock** all doors and windows when you go out.

Don't wear expensive jewellery.

**Leave** lights **on** at home when you go out.

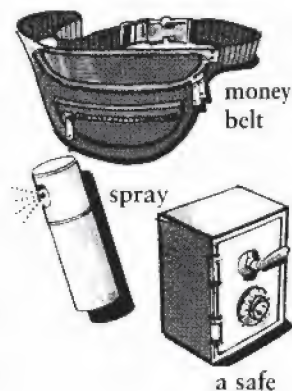
**Fit** (= install) a **burglar alarm** (= a machine which makes a noise if someone enters your home).

Make sure your money is safe, e.g. wear a **money belt**.

Carry a mace **spray**. (This is a chemical and if you spray it in someone's face, it is very unpleasant. In some countries you are allowed to carry this type of spray.)

Put money and **valuables** (= valuable possessions) in a **safe** (= a strong metal box, which is very difficult to open or break).

Keep a gun in your house for **self-defence** (= to protect yourself if someone attacks you).





## Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from Unit 80.

### 81.1 Organise the words in the box into three groups: crimes, people, and places.

murder	thief	prison	barrister	robbery	
burglar	cell	criminal	court	rape	shoplifting
manslaughter		judge	prisoner	jury	police station

### 81.2 Respond to these statements or questions confirming the crime in each one.

- A: He broke into the house, didn't he?  
B: Yes, he's been charged with .....
- A: He killed his wife?  
B: Yes, he's been charged .....
- A: She stole clothes and jewellery from that department store, didn't she?  
B: Yes, and she's been .....
- A: The man on the motorbike didn't mean to kill the boy.  
B: No, but he's been charged .....
- A: He took the money from her bag?  
B: Yes, but they caught him and he's been .....

### 81.3 How safe and secure are you? Answer these questions, *yes* or *no*.

- |   |         |        |
|---|---------|--------|
| 1 Do you often walk in areas which are not very safe?                       | yes = 1 | no = 0 |
| 2 Do you often walk on your own in these areas late at night?               | yes = 2 | no = 0 |
| 3 Do you wear a money belt when you go out?                                 | yes = 0 | no = 1 |
| 4 Do you wear an expensive watch or expensive jewellery?                    | yes = 1 | no = 0 |
| 5 Do you check doors and windows before you go out when your home is empty? | yes = 0 | no = 2 |
| 6 Do you have a burglar alarm?  | yes = 0 | no = 1 |
| 7 Do you leave lights on when you go out?                                   | yes = 0 | no = 1 |
| 8 Is there someone who protects the building while you are out?             | yes = 0 | no = 2 |
| 9 Do you have a safe in your home?  | yes = 0 | no = 1 |

Now add up your score: less than 3 = very, very safe; 3–5 = quite safe; 6–8 = you could take a lot more care; more than 8 = you are a dangerous person to know!

### 81.4 Fill the gaps in these questions with a suitable word.

- Do you think the police should ..... guns?
- Do you think the police should be ..... to stop and question people without a special reason?
- Do you agree with capital ..... for certain crimes such as murder?
- Do you think it should be legal for people to carry a mace .....?
- Do you think people should be allowed to use a gun or knife in self-.....?
- Do you think tougher punishments will help to ..... crime?

What is your opinion on these questions? Discuss them with another person if possible.

## 82 Politics

### A Types of government

**Monarchy:** a state ruled by a king or queen. There are also countries that have a monarchy, but the monarch is not the ruler, e.g. The United Kingdom.

**Republic:** a state governed by **representatives** (= men or women chosen by the people) and a president, e.g. USA or France. People who believe in this system are **republicans**.

**Democracy:** a system of government in which leaders are chosen by the people, e.g. France or the UK. People who believe in this system are **democrats**.

**Dictatorship:** a system of government in which one person rules the country (= one person has total power). This person is called a **dictator**.

### B Political beliefs

<i>Abstract noun</i>	<i>Personal noun/adjective</i>
conservatism	conservative
socialism	socialist
social democracy	social democrat
liberalism	liberal
communism	communist
fascism	fascist

People who believe in **social democracy** are **social democrats**.

### C Political positions

What does it mean to be a **socialist** or a **conservative**? Often, it means different things in different countries, but in Britain we often talk about someone's political position like this:

<b>left-wing / on the left</b> (= socialist)	<b>middle of the road /</b> <b>in the centre (= liberal)</b>	<b>right-wing / on the right</b> (= conservative)
---	---	--

### D Elections

In a democracy, people **vote for** (= they choose in a formal way / elect) the **political party** (e.g. conservatives, liberals or socialists) that they want to **form** (= make) the government. They do this in an **election**, and in many countries elections **take place / are held** (= they happen) every four or five years.

42% **voted for** the socialists in the last **election** (= the socialists got 42% of the votes).  
The president **was elected** two years ago.

### E Government

Political systems are different all over the world. In the UK, when a political party wins a **majority** (= 51% or more) of **seats** (= official positions in parliament) in an election, they become the government of the country, their **leader** (= the head of the party / person in control) becomes **Prime Minister** and they are **in power**.

The government must have **policies** (= programmes of action) to **run** (= manage) the country. This means, for example, an **economic policy** (for the economy), and a **foreign policy** (for actions taken by the country in other parts of the world).

## Exercises

**82.1** Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

<i>Abstract noun</i>	<i>Person</i>	<i>Adjective</i>
politics democracy dictatorship socialism conservatism liberalism		

**82.2** Fill the gaps to complete this text about the political system in the United Kingdom. One word in each gap.

In the UK <sup>(1)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ are held every five years. (The <sup>(2)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ Minister may decide to hold one after four years, but five years is the maximum.)  
Some countries have a system of proportional representation: this means in theory, that a political party with 30% of the <sup>(3)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ should get 30% of the seats in <sup>(4)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. In the UK, the political <sup>(5)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ is different: here the winner takes all. This means that the person with the most votes in each political area (called a constituency) wins the seat; and the political <sup>(6)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ which wins a <sup>(7)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of the seats will <sup>(8)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the government on their own. As a result of this system, it is possible for a party to be in <sup>(9)</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with only 40% of the total vote. Some people think this system is unfair.

What do you think? What possible reasons could there be to justify (= support) this system? Think about your answer, then compare it with the ideas suggested in the key.

**82.3** Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Which party is in power at the moment?
- 2 When were they elected?
- 3 Who is the leader of this party?
- 4 Is this person the President or Prime Minister of your country?
- 5 Do you agree with most of their policies?
- 6 Would you describe yourself as left-wing, right-wing, or in the centre?
- 7 Do you think your political views have changed much during your lifetime?
- 8 How many major (= important) political parties are there?
- 9 Who did you vote for in the last election?
- 10 Do you think this party will win the next election? Will you vote for them again?

**82.4** You can increase your English vocabulary in politics quite easily:

Buy three newspapers (in English if you are in an English speaking country, or your own language if you are in your own country), and find the same political story in each one. Read the articles and underline any words that appear in all of them, and any other words you think are important. If you are reading a newspaper in English, try to guess the meaning of these words and then use a dictionary to check.

This exercise is equally useful if you read articles in your own language. You use a bilingual dictionary to find the English translation/explanation for your underlined words, and you can then look up these words in a monolingual dictionary as well.

## 83 Bureaucracy

### A What is it?

Bureaucracy refers to the official rules and procedures used by officials (= **bureaucrats**) to control an organisation or country. For many people it is a negative word as it often means unnecessary rules, long waits, and lots of documents and forms.

### B Documents

When you need to **obtain** (= get) or show documents, it is important that you know the names of them. Here are some important ones:

**passport**

**identity card**: a card with your name, date of birth and photo to show who you are. Great

Britain is one of the few countries where people still do not have identity cards.

**driving licence**: the official document which permits you to drive on public roads.

**visa**: this gives you permission to enter, pass through or leave a country.

**certificates**: official pieces of paper stating certain facts, e.g. a **birth certificate** gives facts about your birth, and **exam certificates** state you have passed certain exams.

Officials often **check** (= look at and examine) your documents, e.g. the police may check your driving licence; passport officials may check your identity card.

Some of these documents are for a fixed period of time, e.g. a visa may be for six months.

At the end of that time, your visa **runs out** (*infml*) / **expires** (*fml*) (= it finishes / comes to an end). If you want to stay in the country you must **renew** it (= have a new one for a further period of time). You can **renew** a visa, a passport, a membership card for a club, etc.

### C Forms

There are also situations where you need to **fill in** (= complete) forms. Here are some:

**landing card**: a form you may have to fill in when you enter another country.

**enrolment form**: a form you often fill in when you do a course, go to a school or college, etc. It may also be called a **registration form**.

**application form**: a form to write details of yourself, often when applying for a job.

With almost all forms, you will need to **sign** them (= write your **signature**), e.g:

signed



### D Formal language

Here are some formal written expressions and their spoken English meanings.

Written	Spoken
date of birth	= When were you born?
country of origin	= Where do you come from?
marital status	= Are you single or married?
date of arrival	= When did you arrive?
date of departure	= When are you leaving?(or when did you leave?)

### E Bureaucratic problems

We often associate bureaucracy with problems. For example, you may have to **queue** (v, n) (= wait in a line) to get an official piece of paper or have it **stamped**.



## Exercises

**83.1** Write down at least two words which can be used before these nouns.

- |         |             |         |         |
|---------|-------------|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | card        | 3 ..... | licence |
| .....   |             | .....   |         |
| 2 ..... | certificate | 4 ..... | form    |
| .....   |             | .....   |         |

**83.2** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- Will you need to ..... a visa if you go to the United States?
- I was surprised that nobody ..... my passport when we arrived in France.
- Could you ..... this form, please?
- They sent the form back to me because I had forgotten to ..... it at the bottom.
- I'm afraid my visa ..... next week, so if I want to stay here I will have to ..... it. But I don't think it'll be a problem.
- You should get there early because there are always long ....., and you may have to wait quite a long time.
- I want to do an English course in London, so I wrote to a few schools and asked them to send me an ..... form.

**83.3** How many of these documents do you have?

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| a passport             | an identity card   |
| a driving licence      | a TV licence   |
| a birth certificate    | a degree certificate (from a university)                                 |
| a marriage certificate | an exam certificate for an English exam, e.g. Cambridge, Oxford or ARELS |

**83.4** Complete these sentences with a suitable paraphrase.

- What's your date of birth? In other words, when .....?
- What's your country of origin? .....
- What's your marital status? .....
- What was your date of arrival? .....
- When's your date of departure? .....

**83.5** I asked some English people what they felt about bureaucracy and also about problems they had had with bureaucracy. What about you? How do you feel? Have you had any problems? Write down your thoughts and problems, then compare them with the replies from British people in the answer key.

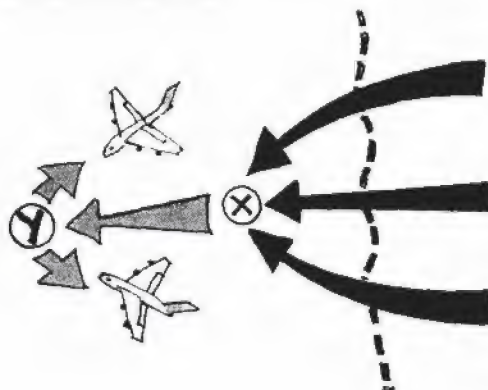
- .....
- .....
- .....

## 84 War and peace

### A The outbreak (= start) of war

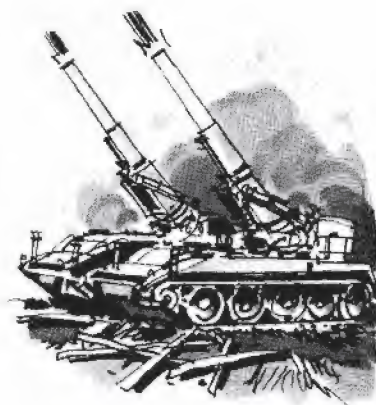
Wars often start because of a **conflict** (= strong disagreement) between countries or groups of people, about **territory** (= land that belongs to one group or country). Look at the diagram on the right and read the text on the left.

Country A **invades** country B (= A enters B by force and in large numbers), and **captures** (also **takes** / **takes control of**) the city of X. Soldiers from country B have to **retreat** (= go backwards; ≠ to advance) to the city of Y. A's army and air force continue to **attack** the city of Y (= take violent action to damage it), but B's soldiers **defend** it (= take action to protect it) successfully.



### B A war zone

The area around the city of Y is now the main **war zone** (= the area where the fighting is happening). Country B has asked for help from its **allies** (= countries who are friends with country B). The allies send aid (= help) in the form of extra **troops** (= large groups of soldiers) and **supplies** (= food and other things that are needed every day, e.g. blankets and medicine) to help. There is **shelling** (= firing of guns and explosives) of the city every day and hundreds of soldiers are either killed or **wounded** (= injured while fighting). Many **civilians** (= ordinary people who are not in the army) are killed as well.



### C Peace talks

For the civilians who are still **alive** (≠ dead), the situation gets worse. As winter approaches, food supplies **run out** (= they are almost gone/finished) and there is no electricity. The soldiers get tired, and both sides begin to see that neither side can win the war; they agree to meet for **peace talks** (*pl*) (= talks to try to negotiate a **peace settlement** / an end to the war). After some time they agree to a **ceasefire** (= a period of no fighting).

### D Terrorism

This is violent action for political reasons. People who do this are **terrorists**, and a common terrorist crime is **hijacking** (= to take control of a bus, train, ship or plane; the people on board then become prisoners). The main purpose of hijacking is to use the prisoners (called **hostages**) in order to **bargain** for something (= to demand something in exchange for the hostages). The terrorists may agree to **release** (v, n) the hostages (= permit the hostages to go free) if a government agrees to give the terrorists money or release other terrorists.

## Exercises

### 84.1 Match the words on the left with the correct definition on the right.

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| 1 ally      | a land controlled by a country                        |
| 2 release   | b stop fighting                                       |
| 3 conflict  | c permit to go free                                   |
| 4 troops    | d injure while fighting                               |
| 5 invade    | e large groups of soldiers                            |
| 6 wound     | f friendly country                                    |
| 7 territory | g strong disagreement                                 |
| 8 ceasefire | h enter another country by force and in large numbers |

### 84.2 Use opposites to contradict what the speaker says in the sentences below. Look at the example first.

**Example:** A: Is the soldier dead?

B: No, he's still alive.

- 1 A: Will they agree to a ceasefire?  
B: No, they'll .....
- 2 A: Do you think the army will try to advance when the weather improves?  
B: No, I think .....
- 3 A: Do the people still have lots of food?  
B: No, they're beginning to .....
- 4 A: Is the town mostly full of soldiers?  
B: No, they're .....
- 5 A: Do you think they'll keep the hostages for a long time?  
B: No, I'm sure they'll .....

### 84.3 When we repeat an idea in a text we often try to avoid using the same word twice. Read this text and find examples of words being used as synonyms for previous ideas. The first one has been done for you (food and medicine = supplies).

THERE is a desperate need for food and medicine, but with the town surrounded, the lorries are unable to bring in essential supplies. We have seen ordinary people in the street giving some of their meagre rations of food to the soldiers who are defending them, but very soon the troops will be just as hungry as the civilians if the situation gets any worse.

Meanwhile, the centre of the town is being slowly destroyed. There is almost daily shelling of the buildings that still stand, and this morning we witnessed gunmen firing at almost

anyone who dared to go out into the streets. One old woman was hit in the leg and we saw at least two others who were quite badly wounded as well.

Aid agencies have appealed to the soldiers to allow them to enter the town, but so far the General in command has even refused to let anyone in, including doctors and nurses. Many fear it is now only a matter of days before the town is captured, and if this happens, the army could take control of the whole region within weeks.

### 84.4 Can you answer these questions with two reasons for each one? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else before checking with the key.

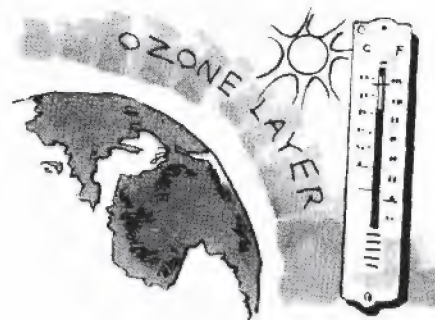
- 1 Why do terrorists take hostages?
- 2 Why do some governments always refuse to agree to terrorist demands?



# 85 Pollution and the environment

## A Important definitions

People are more worried about the **environment** (= the air, water, and land around us) as a result of the **harmful** (= dangerous/damaging) effects of human activity. Some of these activities cause **pollution** (= dirty air, land and water) and some are **destroying** the environment (= damaging it so badly that soon parts will not exist). Here are some of the problems:



**the ozone layer:** a layer of gases which stop harmful radiation from the sun reaching the earth; recent research shows that there is now a hole in parts of the ozone layer.

**global warming:** an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in carbon dioxide.

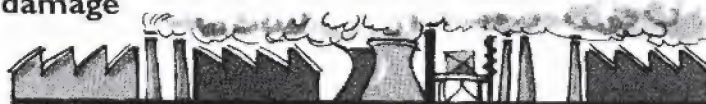
**acid rain:** rain that contains dangerous chemicals; this is caused by smoke from factories.

## B The 'greens'

Because of these problems, there are many groups of people whose aim is **conservation** (= the protection of natural things, e.g. plants and animals). They are often referred to as **greens**, e.g. 'Greenpeace' and 'Friends of the Earth'.

## C Common causes of damage

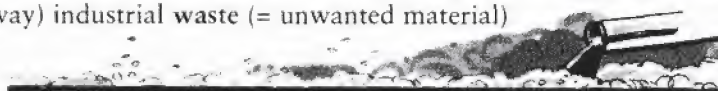
smoke from factories



car exhaust fumes



**dumping** (= throwing away) industrial waste (= unwanted material) in seas and rivers



**aerosol cans** (usually called **sprays**). Some of these contain **CFCs** (= a chemical) which can damage the ozone layer.



**cutting down tropical rainforests** (e.g. The Amazon). This increases carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.



## D How can we help?

- Don't **throw away** bottles, newspapers, etc. Take them to a **bottle bank** or **newspaper bank**, and then they can be **recycled** (= used again).
- **Plant** more trees.
- Don't **waste** (= use badly) **resources**, e.g. water, gas. Try to **save** (≠ waste) them.

*Note:* a **resource** is a valuable possession. There are **natural resources**, e.g. water or gold; and **human resources**, e.g. knowledge and skills. The word is usually plural.



## Exercises

**85.1** Fill the gaps to form a compound noun or phrase from the opposite page.

- |                   |                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 the ..... layer | 5 ..... warming          |
| 2 ..... rain      | 6 ..... fumes            |
| 3 ..... waste     | 7 ..... rainforests      |
| 4 a bottle .....  | 8 natural or human ..... |

**85.2** Complete these word-building tables. If necessary, use a dictionary to help you.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Adjective
waste	.....	damage	.....
.....	protect	environment	.....
.....	destroy	harm	.....
pollution	.....	danger	.....
damage	.....	.....	safe

**85.3** Complete the definitions.

- Conservation is the protection of natural things, e.g. .... and .....
- Acid rain is rain that contains dangerous chemicals. It is caused by .....
- The ozone layer is a layer of gases that stop dangerous radiation from the sun from reaching .....
- Global warming is an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in .....
- CFC (chlorofluorocarbon) is a chemical which .....

**85.4** If we want to look after the environment, there are certain things we should and shouldn't do. Complete these two lists in suitable ways.

We should:

- ..... paper, bottles and clothes.
- ..... tropical rainforests.
- ..... more trees.
- ..... water and energy.

We shouldn't:

- ..... paper, bottles and clothes.
- ..... the ozone layer.
- ..... water and energy.
- ..... tropical rainforests.

**85.5** Test your knowledge of words from the opposite page and 'green' issues. Are these statements *true* or *false*?

- CFCs protect the ozone layer.
- 'Greens' believe in conservation.
- A hole in the ozone layer could increase skin cancer.
- Cutting down tropical rainforests increases the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
- Plastic cannot be recycled.

## 86 Air travel

### A Departures

This is the usual sequence of activities when you get to the airport.

First you go to the **check-in desk** where they weigh your **luggage**. Usually you are permitted 20 kilos, but if your bags weigh more, you may have to pay **excess baggage** (= you pay extra). The airline representative checks your ticket and gives you a **boarding card** for the plane with your seat number on it. Then you go through **passport control** where an official checks [NOT controls] your passport, and into the **departure lounge**. Here, you can also buy things in the **duty-free**, e.g. perfume, alcohol and cigarettes. About half an hour or forty minutes before **take-off**, you are told to go to a gate number, e.g. gate 14, where you wait before you get on the plane. When you **board** (= get on) the plane, you find your seat. If you have **hand luggage**, you can put it under your seat or in the **overhead locker** above your seat.



The plane then **taxis** (= moves slowly) towards the **runway**, and when it has permission to **take off**, it accelerates along the runway and takes off.

*Note:* The verb to **taxi** is generally only used in this context.

### B The flight

You may want or need to understand certain announcements; these come from the **captain** (= the pilot) or from an **air steward** or **stewardess** / **cabin crew** / **flight attendants** (= people who look after the passengers):

Please **fasten your seat belt** and put your seat in the **upright position**.



We are now **cruising** (= flying comfortably) at an **altitude** (= height) of 10,000 metres.

May we **remind** passengers (= ask passengers to remember) that there is no smoking until you are inside the **terminal building** (= where passengers arrive and depart).

The **cabin crew** (= air stewards) are now coming round with **landing cards**. (These are cards you sometimes have to fill in when you enter certain countries.)

### C Arrival

When the plane **lands** (= arrives on the ground), you have to wait for it to stop / come to a halt. When the doors are open, you **get off** the plane and walk through the **terminal building** and go to the **baggage reclaim** where you collect your luggage. You then **pass through customs** (green = nothing to declare; red = goods to declare; blue = European Union citizens). If you are lucky, you can then get a bus, taxi or train to the centre of town without waiting too long. You can also **hire** a car (= **rent** a car) at most airports.

*Note:* In British English you normally **hire** something for a short period, e.g. hire a room for a party, and **rent** something for a long period, e.g. a flat; for a car, you can use both words.

## Exercises

**86.1** Complete the words or phrases below using words from the box.

off	control	free	card	baggage
in	lounge	luggage	reclaim	locker

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 boarding ..... | 6 duty .....      |
| 2 baggage .....  | 7 overhead .....  |
| 3 excess .....   | 8 take-.....      |
| 4 passport ..... | 9 departure ..... |
| 5 hand .....     | 10 check-.....    |

**86.2** What do you call:

- The place where you go when you arrive at the airport with your luggage?
- The card they give you with the seat number on it?
- The money you have to pay if your luggage is very heavy?
- The place where you sit and have a drink when you are waiting for your flight to be called?
- The bags you carry onto the plane with you?
- The place above your head where you can put your hand luggage?
- The part of the airport where the plane accelerates and takes off?
- The people who look after you on the plane?
- The part of the airport you walk through when you arrive or depart?
- The place where you collect your luggage after you land?

**86.3** Complete this part of a letter about an unpleasant flight.

Dear Tom

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible flight. We <sup>(1)</sup> two hours late because of bad weather, and then over the channel we hit more bad weather. The <sup>(2)</sup> announced that we had to <sup>(3)</sup> our seat belts, which was a bit worrying, and for half an hour we <sup>(4)</sup> through a terrible storm. It was still raining and very windy when we <sup>(5)</sup> in Rome and I was really glad to <sup>(6)</sup> the plane and get into the airport building.

Fortunately things have improved since then but I really hope the return <sup>(7)</sup> is a lot better.

**86.4** Think about the whole experience of flying (from check-in to the time you leave the airport at your destination) and answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

- What is the most interesting part, and what is the most boring part?
- Where do you often have delays, and why?
- Is there any part that frightens or worries you?
- What do you usually do during most flights?
- Do you always eat the food they give you?
- Is there one thing which would improve flying and make the experience more interesting?

# 87 Hotels

## A Types of hotel

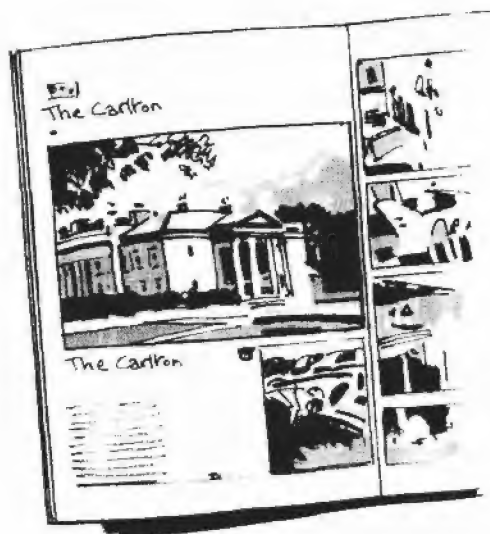
Hotels in Britain are graded with stars from one-star to five-star (five-star hotels are the best and most expensive). You can also stay in a **Bed & Breakfast (B&B)** (also called **Guest Houses**) where you pay for a bedroom, possibly an **ensuite** (= room with private bathroom) and breakfast.

## B Types of hotel accommodation

a single room: for one person with a single bed  
a double room: for two people with one large double bed  
a twin room: for two people with two single beds  
full board: includes breakfast, lunch and dinner  
half board: includes breakfast and dinner  
B & B: just the room and breakfast

## C A visit to a hotel

We stayed in the Carlton Hotel for three nights in July, but I **booked** (= reserved) our room three months **in advance** (= before; in other words, in April) because it was the middle of the tourist season. When we arrived we **checked in at reception**, then the **porter** carried our suitcases up to our room. I gave him a small **tip** (n, v) – about 50p, I think. The staff were very friendly – we had a very nice **chambermaid** (= the woman who cleans the room) – and the room was very comfortable. The only problem we had, in fact, was with the shower which didn't **work** (= function) very well. (You could also say 'There was something wrong with the shower'.)



## D Useful words and expressions

Could I **book** (= reserve) a room for next Thursday?  
Could I have an **early morning call** at 7 a.m. please? (= Could you wake me at 7 a.m.?)  
Could you **put it on my bill**, please? (= add the cost to the bill, e.g. for a drink you have in the hotel bar)  
Could I **pay my bill**, please? (= pay for everything)  
Could you **order** (= call) a taxi for me to go to the airport?  
Are you **fully booked** (= completely full) next week?  
Is breakfast/dinner **included**? (= Does the price include breakfast/dinner?)  
Where's the **lift**? (= the machine which takes you up or down a floor) [AmEng = elevator]  
Excuse me. How do I get to the underground station from here?



## Exercises

### 87.1 Put these sentences in a logical order.

- 1 I paid my bill.
- 2 I checked in at reception.
- 3 I left the hotel.
- 4 I went up to my room.
- 5 I spent the night in the hotel.
- 6 I had an early morning call at seven o'clock.
- 7 I booked a room at the hotel.
- 8 I went out for dinner in a local restaurant.
- 9 I arrived at the hotel.
- 10 I got up and had a shower.
- 11 I had breakfast.
- 12 I tipped the porter who carried my luggage upstairs.

### 87.2 What would you say in these situations?

- 1 You want to stay in a hotel for two nights next week with your husband/wife. You phone the hotel. What do you ask or say?  
.....
- 2 You are at the hotel reception and you are planning to leave in about 15 minutes. What could you ask the receptionist?  
.....
- 3 You want to wake up at 7 a.m. but you don't have an alarm clock. What do you ask at reception?  
.....
- 4 You have a drink in the hotel bar. The barman asks how you want to pay. What's your reply?  
.....
- 5 When you turn on the shower in your room, the water comes out very very slowly. What could you say at reception?  
.....
- 6 You want to go to the nearest bank but don't know where it is. What do you ask at reception?  
.....

### 87.3 You are staying in quite a good hotel (e.g. two-star or three-star) in your country. Would you expect to have the following?

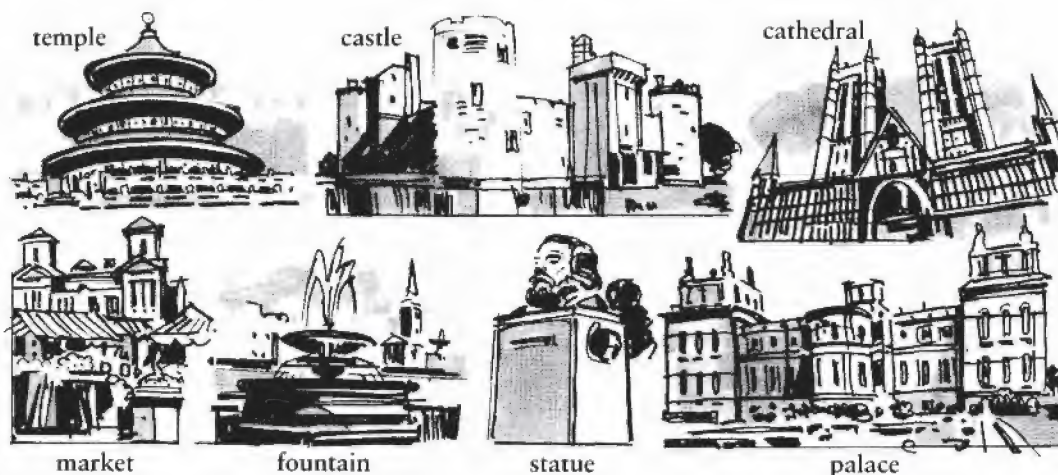
- 1 a room without a private bathroom
- 2 a hairdryer in the bathroom
- 3 a colour television in the room
- 4 a telephone in the room
- 5 writing paper in the room
- 6 a machine for making tea and coffee in the room
- 7 an electric trouser press (= a machine which presses/irons your trousers for you) in the room
- 8 air conditioning in the room

If possible, compare your answers with someone from a different country.

# 88 A sightseeing holiday

## A Sightseeing

You may do a bit of sightseeing on holiday, or you may do a lot of sightseeing, but you will probably go to a museum or art gallery, and see or visit some of these things:



Many people go on a sightseeing tour of a town (usually in a bus); they can also go on a tour of the castle / the cathedral / the art gallery, etc. When you are sightseeing, it helps to buy a guidebook (= a book of information for tourists) and a map of the town you are in.

## B Things that tourists often do on holiday

look round the shops / have a look round the shops  
 take photographs  
 spend a lot of / lots of money  
 buy souvenirs (= typical products from the country)  
 get lost (= lose their way)  
 go out most evenings (= go to different places for social reasons, e.g. restaurant or disco)  
 have a good/great time (= enjoy themselves)

## C Describing 'places'

The word **place** is very common and can describe a building, an area, a town, or country:  
 Bruges is a lovely **place** (= town) and we found a really nice **place** (= hotel) to stay.  
 The town is full of interesting **places** (= areas/buildings).

These words are often used when we describe places:

Venice is beautiful but it's always **packed** (= very crowded/full) with tourists in the summer.  
 New York is very **cosmopolitan**. (= full of people from different countries and cultures)  
 Vienna has lots of **historical monuments**. (= places, e.g. castles, built a long time ago)  
 Many beautiful cities have become very **touristy**. (= a negative word: 'too much tourism')  
 Sao Paulo is a really **lively** place (= full of life and activity) and the **night-life** is fantastic.

*Note:* If you want to ask if it is 'a good idea' to visit a place, you can use **worth + -ing**:

A: If I go to Scotland, is it **worth** spending a few days in Glasgow?

B: Yes definitely. And if you want to travel round a bit, it's **worth** renting a car.

## Exercises

- 88. I** Complete this postcard that John sent to his family while he was on holiday. You may need a word or phrase in each space.

Hi everyone, I've been in Paris for almost a week now and I'm having a (1) \_\_\_\_\_. I spent the first few days (2) \_\_\_\_\_ - The Eiffel Tower, Notre Dame, and all the usual tourist attractions. Most places are absolutely (3) \_\_\_\_\_ with tourists (it's the time of the year I suppose), so yesterday I decided to have (4) \_\_\_\_\_ round the shops and I bought a few (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Today I've been to a couple of very interesting art (6) \_\_\_\_\_. I got (7) \_\_\_\_\_ on my way back to the hotel but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with lots of little stalls selling just about everything from apples to antiques. I ate in the hotel the first night but usually I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ and have dinner in a restaurant - the food is fantastic. I'm afraid I've (10) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money, but it's a great place and I've (11) \_\_\_\_\_ lots of photographs so you'll be able to see for yourself when I get back home on the 24th. See you then, John

- 88.2** Which of these places do you usually visit or go to when you are on holiday?

museums      art galleries      churches/cathedrals      tourist shops      concerts  
discos / night clubs      castles/palaces/temples      the cinema      markets      restaurants  
bars      the theatre

- 88.3** Confirm the information in the questions without repeating the same words and phrases. Use words and phrases from the opposite page.

**Example:** A: You've got quite a few pictures, haven't you?

B: Yes, we took lots of photos.

- 1 A: Is it a nice city?  
B: Yes, it's a .....
- 2 A: There's a big mix of people in New York, isn't there?  
B: Yes, it's very .....
- 3 A: Was it very crowded?  
B: Yes, it was .....
- 4 A: There's a lot to do in the evenings, isn't there?  
B: Yes, the .....
- 5 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?  
B: Yes, we .....

- 88.4** Without using one town more than twice, name a town or city in your country which is:

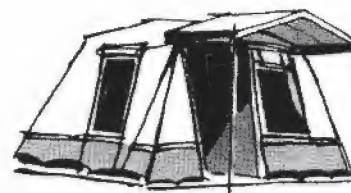
lively	packed with tourists in the summer
cosmopolitan	famous for its historical monuments
very touristy	really worth visiting if you are interested in architecture
not worth visiting	



## On the beach and in the country

### A Places to stay

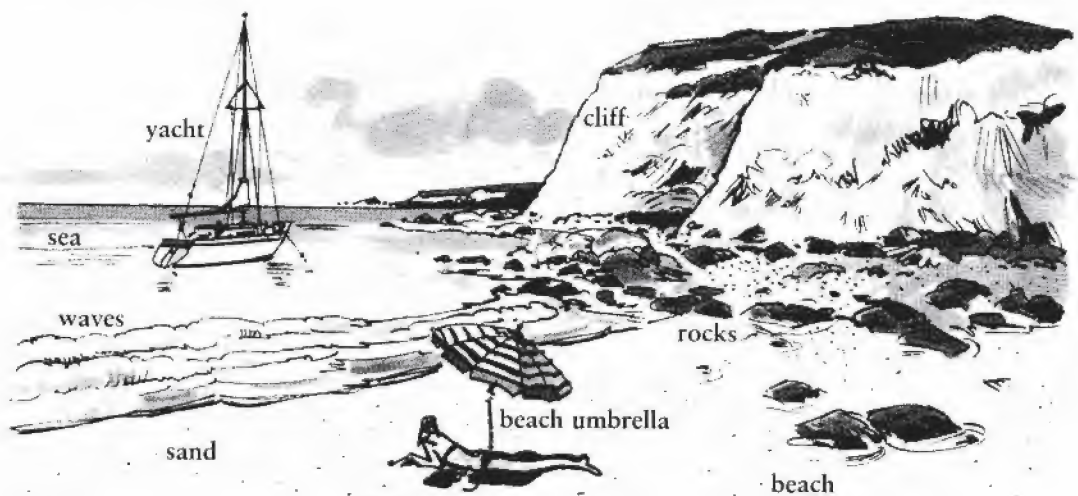
When people go on holiday they stay in various places (= a number of different places): some go to hotels; others rent an **apartment** (a 'holiday' flat) or **villa** (= a house by the sea or in the countryside; often in the Mediterranean / southern Europe); some prefer sleeping in a **tent** at a campsite.



### B At the beach

Many people spend their holiday in **seaside resorts** (= towns by the sea for tourists, e.g. Malaga, St. Tropez, Okinawa) where they can spend most of their time on the beach. Some people enjoy swimming, others love **sunbathing** (= lying on the beach in order to get a **suntan**). If you like sunbathing, you should use **suntan lotion** to help you get a **tan** and **protect your skin**. If you don't have any protection, you may get **sunburn**, which is painful and can be dangerous. And if you want total protection you should use **sunblock**, or sit under a **beach umbrella**.

Swimming can also be dangerous if there are **rocks** under the water or if the sea is **rough**, e.g. with big waves.



### C In the country

People who live in large towns often like to **get away** (= leave the place where they live) at weekends or in the summer, and enjoy the **peace and quiet** (= calm and tranquillity) of the country (also called the **countryside**). Some people just like to **put their feet up** (= relax and do nothing) and occasionally go for a **stroll** (= a slow casual walk); while others enjoy **hiking** (= long walks, often hill walking) across hills and valleys. And the countryside is a great place to have a **picnic** (= eating a prepared meal of cold food outside).

*Note:* Learners sometimes say 'I love to be in the nature'. This is usually a translation from their first language and it is not correct in English. The nearest we can say is probably 'I love being in the countryside'.



## Exercises

- 89.1** Write down at least five words beginning with 'sun'. You can check your answers on the opposite page and in the index.

sun..... sun..... sun.....  
sun..... sun.....

- 89.2** Match a word from the left with a word from the right to form eight words or phrases.

1 sandy	waves
2 suntan	bathe
3 beach	beach
4 rough	lotion
5 sun	sea
6 sea	cliff
7 big	side
8 steep	umbrella

Now write answers to these questions.

- Why do most people go to seaside resorts?
- Why do people sunbathe?
- Why do they use sunblock?
- Why do they use suntan lotion?
- How does it feel if you get sunburn?
- What sport requires big waves?
- Have you been in a boat when the sea was very rough? Were you seasick?

- 89.3** Complete this short text with a suitable word or phrase in each gap.

I live and work in Milan but I like to ..... at the weekend if possible. My parents have a small house in the ....., about 100 kilometres from Milan, and it's a great place to go if you want a bit of peace and ....., In the summer you can just ..... by the pool during the hottest part of the day, then in the evening go for a ..... through the village or over the fields. Sometimes we go out for the whole day and have a ..... somewhere, by the lake or next to one of the many vineyards.

- 89.4** Fill the gaps with a suitable word. (One word only for each gap.)

- Would you prefer a holiday in a seaside ..... or a holiday in the country?
- Would you prefer to stay in one place, or would you rather (= prefer to) go to ..... places?
- Would you prefer to spend your time ..... on a beach or would you rather go for long walks?
- Would you prefer to stay in a hotel or ..... an apartment?
- Would you prefer to eat in a restaurant or have a ..... in the open air?
- Would you prefer somewhere that was quite lively, or would you rather go to a place where there was peace and .....

Look at the questions again. Which would you prefer? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

# 90 Time

## A Prepositions: at, on, in



e.g. at 8 o'clock, at 3.30, at midnight  
on a day e.g. on Monday, on July 14, on the second day  
in a period e.g. in the morning, in April, in 1995

Important exceptions are: at Christmas, at Easter, at the weekend, at night

## B Words often confused

Some time prepositions are easily confused. These are common problems:

I will stay here **until** she phones. (= I will go after she has phoned)

I will be in the office **until** 4 o'clock. (= I will leave the office at 4 o'clock)

I will be in the office **by** 4 o'clock. (= I will arrive at the office not later than 4 o'clock)

I'll be back home **by** lunchtime. (= I will arrive home not later than lunchtime)

I've worked in this office **for** six months. (for + a period of time)

I've worked in this office **since** May. (since + a point in time)

I worked for a newspaper **during** the war / 1990 / the summer. (this tells you 'when')

I worked for a newspaper **for** four years / six months. (this tells you 'how long')

[NOT I worked for the newspaper ~~during~~ four years.]

**Note:** **During** a period may mean a part of that period or the whole period, e.g. 'during the war' can mean part of the war or the whole war. The context usually makes it clear, but if we want to stress or emphasise that an action occupied the whole period, we often use **throughout**, e.g. It rained throughout the night. (= it didn't stop raining)

I'm going back to Spain **in** ten days' time. (= ten days from now)

We arranged our next meeting **for** April 7th. (= to be on April 7th)

## C Approximate times: past and future

I've known my dentist **for ages** (= for a long time), but I haven't been for a check-up **recently/lately** (= e.g. in the last few months).

I haven't seen Tom **recently/lately** (= e.g. in the last few weeks).

I used to go to an Australian dentist but that was a **long time ago** (e.g. 5–10 years ago).

My sister went to the dentist **the other day** (= a few days ago).

This dictionary will be OK **for the time being** (= for now / until I need a better one).

## D Periods of time

There are 60 **seconds** in a minute; 60 minutes in an hour, 24 hours in a day, 7 days in a week, 2 weeks in a **fortnight**, 52 weeks in a year, 10 years in a **decade**; 100 years in a **century**.

## E Time passing: take and last

My English course **lasts** ten weeks. (= it continues for ten weeks)

How long does the film **last**? (= How long is it from the beginning to the end?)

It **takes** me (= I need) half an hour to get to school.

We can walk but it'll **take** (= we'll need) a long time.

## Exercises

### 90.1 Complete the text with *at*, *on*, or *in*.

There's one bus from London which gets here (1)..... ten o'clock (2)..... the morning and then another which gets in (3)..... four o'clock (4)..... the afternoon. That's (5)..... weekdays, but (6)..... the weekend the timetable is a bit different. (7)..... Saturday there are still two buses but the second one arrives (8)..... five thirty; (9)..... Sunday there is just the one bus (10)..... two o'clock. And (11)..... the winter, the service doesn't run at all (12)..... Sundays.

### 90.2 Cross out the incorrect answers.

- 1 The teacher told us to finish our homework by/until Monday.
- 2 We can't leave by/until the others get back.
- 3 I've been in the army for/since I was eighteen.
- 4 They've worked here for/since/during six months.
- 5 I visit my uncle every week for/since/during the winter.
- 6 I was at university for/since/during four years.
- 7 She's going back to France in/after three months' time.
- 8 He left the office during/throughout the lunch break.
- 9 It was hot during/throughout August; we didn't have one day under 30 degrees.
- 10 I booked a table in the restaurant by/for next Saturday. I hope that's OK.

### 90.3 Can you complete these sentences with the correct number?

- 1 The Olympic Games usually lasts about ..... weeks.
- 2 Rembrandt was born in the ..... th century.
- 3 President Kennedy died in ..... That's ..... years ago.
- 4 It takes approximately ..... hours to fly from Tokyo to New York.
- 5 Some athletes can run 100 metres in less than ..... seconds.
- 6 The ..... was the decade in which the USA and USSR (at that time) were both trying to be the first country to put a man on the moon.

### 90.4 Replace the underlined time expressions with more 'approximate' time expressions.

- 1 I went to the library three days ago.
- 2 This dictionary isn't great but it'll be OK until I'm more advanced.
- 3 I haven't been to the cinema for the last three weeks.
- 4 And I haven't been to a concert for three or four years.
- 5 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago.

### 90.5 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.

- 1 On weekdays I usually get up at ..... and leave home at .....
- 2 I always clean my teeth in .....
- 3 I don't go to school/college/work on .....
- 4 I usually have a holiday in .....
- 5 I have been in my present school/college/job for .....
- 6 I have been studying English since .....
- 7 I haven't spoken English since .....
- 8 It takes me ..... to get to school/college/work.
- 9 You can't get a driving licence until .....
- 10 It rains quite a lot during .....

# 91 Numbers

## A Cardinal numbers

379 = three **hundred and** seventy nine      2,860 = two **thousand** eight hundred **and** sixty  
 5,084 = five thousand **and** eighty-four      470,000 = four hundred **and** seventy thousand  
 2,550,000 = two **million**, five hundred **and** fifty thousand  
 3,000,000,000 = three **billion**

*Note:* There is no plural 's' after hundred, thousand, million and billion when they are part of a number. On their own, they can be plural, e.g. **thousands** of people; **millions** of insects.

## B Ordinal numbers and dates

One of the problems with dates is that we write them and say them in a different way:

We write **4 January** (or 4th January), but say **the fourth of January** or **January the fourth**.

We write **21 May** (or 21st May), but say **the twenty-first of May** or **May the twenty-first**.

1997 = **nineteen ninety seven**

1905 = **nineteen hundred and five** or **nineteen oh five**

## C Fractions and decimals

$1\frac{1}{4}$  = one and **a quarter**

$1\frac{1}{3}$  = one and **a third**

1.75 = one point seven five

$1\frac{1}{2}$  = one and **a half**

1.25 = one **point two five**

1.33 = one point three three

$1\frac{3}{4}$  = one and **three quarters**

1.5 = one point five

## D Percentages

26% = **twenty-six per cent**

More than 50% is the **majority**; less than 50% is the **minority**.

## E Arithmetic

There are four basic processes for **working out** (= calculating) a problem:

+ = **addition**      e.g.  $6 + 4 = 10$  (six **plus/and** four **equals/is** ten)

- = **subtraction**      e.g.  $6 - 4 = 2$  (six **minus** four **equals/is** two)

× = **multiplication**      e.g.  $6 \times 4 = 24$  (six **times / multiplied by** four **equals/is** twenty-four)

÷ = **division**      e.g.  $4 \div 2 = 2$  (four **divided by** two **equals/is** two)

## F Saying '0'

This can be spoken in different ways in different contexts.

telephone number: 603 724 = six **oh** three, seven two four (AmEng = six **zero** three)

mathematics: 0.7 = **nought** point seven, 6.02 = six point **oh** two

temperature: -10 degrees = ten degrees below **zero** / minus ten degrees

football: 2-0 = two **nil**      tennis: 40-0 = forty **love**

## G Talking numbers

Here are several useful words and expressions connected with numbers:

The streets have got **odd** numbers (e.g. 3, 5, 7) on the left and **even** numbers (e.g. 4, 6, 8) on the right.

I got 16 **out** of 20 in our last test.

*16/20*



## Exercises

### 91.1 How do you say these numbers in English? Write your answers after each one.

- 1 462 .....
- 2  $2\frac{1}{2}$  .....
- 3 2,345 .....
- 4 6.75 .....
- 5 0.25 .....
- 6  $3\frac{1}{3}$  .....
- 7 1,250,000 .....
- 8 10.04 .....
- 9 47% .....
- 10 10 September .....
- 11 3 July .....
- 12 602 8477 (phone number) .....
- 13 -5 centigrade .....
- 14 In 1903 .....
- 15 In 1876 .....

Now practise saying them. If possible, record yourself saying them and then record a native speaker of English saying them or someone from your country who speaks English very well. Listen to both. How do you sound?

### 91.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 After the game I heard the crowd was over twenty thousands.
- 2 We arrived on the ten September.
- 3 There were two hundred twenty altogether.
- 4 I got twenty-five from forty in my test.
- 5 My birthday is thirty-one August.
- 6 My phone number is seven twenty three, six nought nine.

### 91.3 Write answers to these problems.

- 1 23 and 36 is .....
- 2 24 times 8 is .....
- 3 80 minus 20 is .....
- 4 65 divided by 13 is .....
- 5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 8, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. What have you got left?
- 6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What number is left?

### 91.4 Answer these questions. Write your answers in words.

- 1 When were you born?
- 2 How much do you weigh?
- 3 What is the number of the flat or house where you live?
- 4 Is that an odd or an even number?
- 5 What is the approximate population of your town?
- 6 What is the approximate population of your country?
- 7 What is the normal temperature of a healthy person?
- 8 How many kilometres are there in a mile?

# 92 Distance, size and dimension

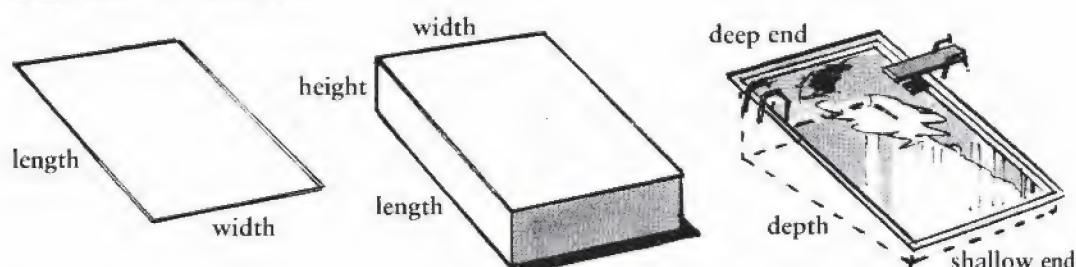
## A Distance

The most common way of asking about distance is probably: **How far is it?** Here are two more common questions, and some expressions often used in the reply.

Is it a long way?	No, just round the corner. / a couple of minutes' walk (= very near).
Is it very far?	No, not far. / No, about five or ten minutes' walk (= quite near).
Is it a long way?	Yeah quite a long way. / Yeah, over a mile.
Is it very far?	Yes it's a long way. / Yes it's miles. / Yes it's too far to walk.

*Note:* We can use **far** in a question or negative but not in a positive statement on its own, e.g. we don't say 'it's far', we say 'it's a long way'. But we can say 'it's too far to walk'.

## B Size and dimension



We can describe size using the nouns above or the adjectives formed from them, like this:  
What's the length/width/height/depth/size of ...? or How long/wide/high/tall/deep/big is ...?

*Note:*

- We generally use **tall** to describe people, trees and buildings; and **high** to describe mountains. We also say **high-rise buildings**.
- Notice also that in the answer to these questions, an adjective follows the measurement:  
The garden is about ten metres **wide**. (= The width is about ten metres.)

## C Size in people and things

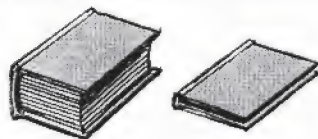
We use different words to describe the size of people and things:

a **tall** girl (≠ a **short** girl)

a **fat** person (≠ a **thin** person) See Unit 43 for more details.

a **long** book (= many pages) (≠ a **short** book)

a **deep** lake (= many metres) (≠ a **shallow** lake)



a **thick** book (≠ a **thin** book)



a **wide** road (≠ a **narrow** road)

*Note:* We can use **big** or **large** to describe size in English, but not **great**. For English speaking people, **great** (*informal*) = fantastic. But we can use **great** before **big** to say that something is very big, e.g. I saw a **great big** dog in the park.

If you want to ask about size in clothes, you say: **What size are you?** or **What size (shoes) do you take?** If you don't know, then you need someone to **measure** you.

## Exercises

**92.1** Think about the room/place you are in now and answer these questions, using some of the expressions from the opposite page.

- 1 How far is it to the nearest shop?
- 2 How far is it to a bank?
- 3 Is it very far to the nearest bus stop?
- 4 Is it very far to a post office?
- 5 Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool?
- 6 Is it a long way to the next big town?
- 7 How far is the nearest railway station?
- 8 Is it far to the centre of town?

If possible, ask someone else the same questions and compare your answers.

**92.2** Write down eight different questions you could ask about the distance, size or dimensions of the things in the pictures.



**92.3** Contradict the speaker in the sentences below. Look at the example first.

*Example:* A: Is it a long film?

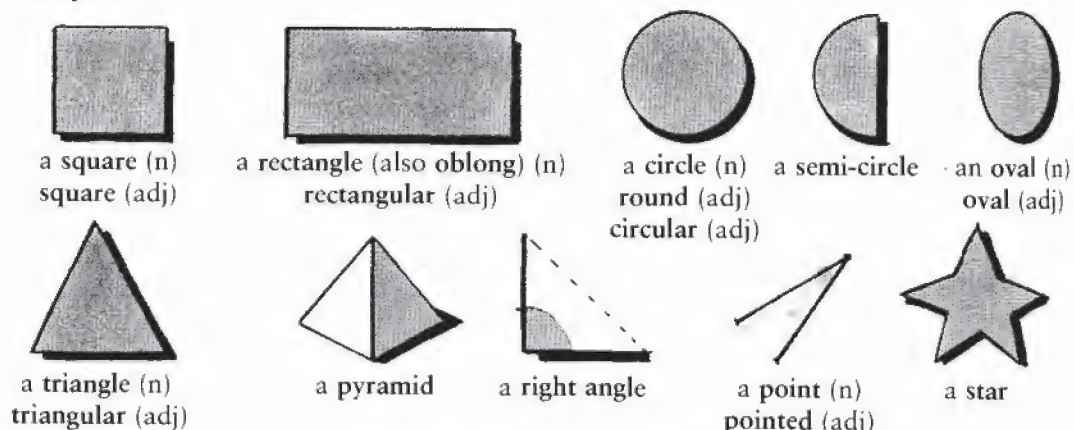
B: *No, it's quite short.*

- 1 A: Is he a bit fat?  
B: No, he's .....
- 2 A: The water's quite deep, isn't it?  
B: No, .....
- 3 A: Their office is in quite a low building, isn't it?  
B: No, .....
- 4 A: Is the road very wide at that point?  
B: No, .....
- 5 A: It's a fairly boring place, isn't it?  
B: No, .....
- 6 A: He's quite tall, isn't he?  
B: No, .....
- 7 A: They only live in a small place, don't they?  
B: No, it's .....



## 93 Shapes, colours and patterns

### A Shapes



a square box, a round table, a pointed end, a rectangular field, an oval shape

*Note:* We can also form adjectives to describe shapes in this way:

The ball was egg-shaped; a heart-shaped wedding cake; a diamond-shaped bag.

### B Colours

You will already know most of the common colours. Here are some that are less common:

Mix black and white to form **grey**. Mix red and blue to form **purple**.

Mix green and blue to form **turquoise**. Pink is a colour between red and white.

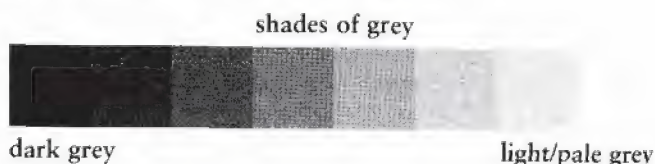
Beige is a very light brown with some yellow in it.

### C Shades of colour (= degrees and variation of colour)

She bought a **dark green** skirt.

He was wearing **light blue** jeans.

My new shirt is **pale yellow**.



*Note:* With some colours, we use **pale** rather than **light**, e.g. pale yellow, pale pink.

### D Patterns (also called 'designs')



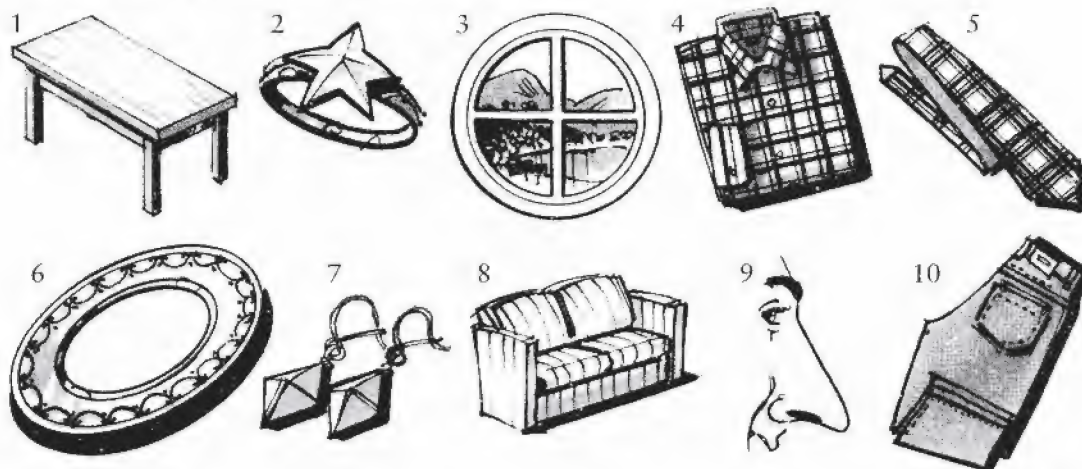
### E Use of the suffix -ish

When we want to say that a shape is almost round or a colour nearly green, we can express this idea by adding the suffix **-ish**: a roundish face; a greenish tie; a yellowish colour.



## Exercises

**93.1** Describe these pictures using the correct noun and a suitable adjective.



**93.2** What object is being described in each of these sentences?

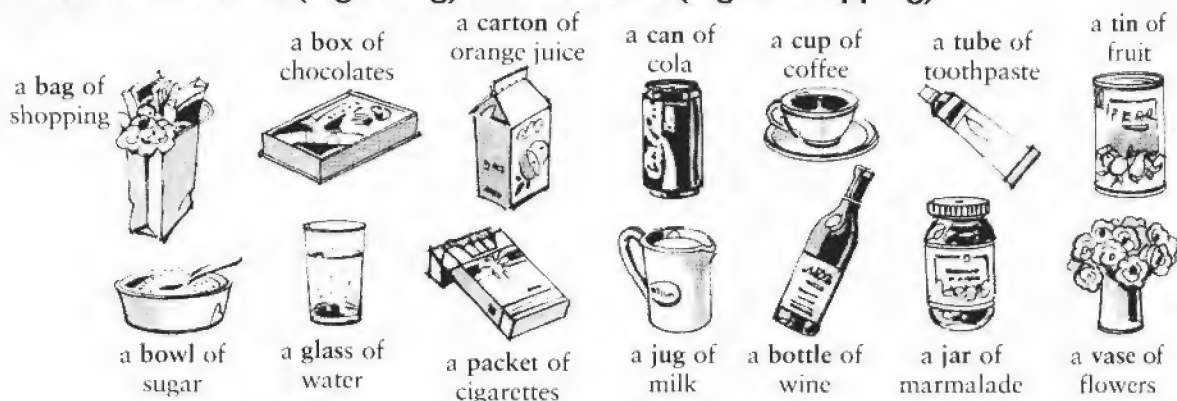
- 1 It's got a point at one end and that's the end you use to write with.
- 2 It's greyish on the outside, pink on the inside, it swims and you eat it.
- 3 The shape is rectangular and it's usually green. There are lots of other lines on it, and people play on it.
- 4 It's a reddish-orange in colour, quite long and usually pointed at one end, and you eat it.
- 5 At certain times of the month it's completely round; at other times, it's closer to a semi-circle but not quite.
- 6 It can look pale blue, more often dark blue, and sometimes a greenish blue. It really depends where it is and whether the sun is shining on it.
- 7 It's oval-shaped, white or beige or light brown in colour, hard on the outside, and you eat it usually when it is cooked.
- 8 It is triangular, and in some countries you have to carry one in the boot of your car.
- 9 The bottom part is triangular, and at the top there is another bit in the shape of a semi-circle. You put things on the triangular part and hang them using the semi-circular part.
- 10 It has four sides and four right angles.

**93.3** What are you wearing? Write down a detailed description of what you are wearing, including the exact colour of everything. If there is a colour or design you cannot describe, try to find it using a bilingual dictionary.

# 94 Partitives

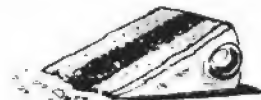
There are many different words used to describe a particular quantity of something. Usually the word is joined to the noun it describes with 'of'.

## A Containers (e.g. a bag) and contents (e.g. of shopping)



## B With uncountable nouns

When we use uncountable nouns (e.g. advice), we sometimes want to talk about one of something. We cannot say ~~an~~ advice or ~~one~~ advice, but we can use certain words to make these nouns singular: a **sheet of paper** (= one piece of paper) or a **slice of bread** (= one piece of bread). We can actually use the word **piece** with many nouns:



a piece of cake



a piece of wood

You can use **piece** with some abstract nouns, e.g. a **piece of information**, a **piece of luck**.

The most common partitive is a **bit**, which is informal and used with many nouns. It usually means a small amount but can be quite general. It can be used with the examples above, and more: a **bit of butter**, a **bit of time**, etc.

## C A pair of ...

Some nouns have two parts, e.g. trousers (two legs) and shoes (left and right). You can use a **pair of** to specify the number, e.g. a **pair of skis**, two pairs of shoes, three pairs of tights.

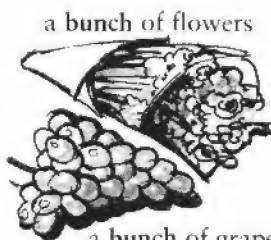
## D Groups of things



a herd of cows



a group of people



a bunch of flowers

a bunch of grapes

a gang of youths/  
kids/teenagers



**Gang** has a negative meaning: it suggests a group of young people who may cause trouble.

## Exercises

- 94.1** Some of these containers do not look exactly the same as the ones on the opposite page, but the names are the same. Can you decide what the missing words are?



1 a ..... of milk



2 a ..... of water



3 a ..... of fruit



4 a ..... of matches



5 a ..... of biscuits



6 a ..... of apples



7 a ..... of paint



8 a ..... of coffee

- 94.2** Contents come in different containers. Would you be surprised to see any of the following?

a glass of soup

a vase of coffee

a bowl of milk

a jug of wine

a tube of cigarettes

a tin of tomatoes

a jar of mustard

a bag of salt

a carton of toothpaste

- 94.3** Complete these sentences with a suitable noun.

- 1 They gave her a big ..... of flowers for her birthday.
- 2 They're looking for a ..... of youths who may be responsible for the damage.
- 3 I cut about six ..... of ham and put them on a plate.
- 4 They own a large ..... of land on the coast.
- 5 I did a ..... of homework last night, then went out.
- 6 She told us to take out a blank ..... of paper, then write our names at the top.
- 7 A small ..... of people gathered outside the embassy.
- 8 I need at least two ..... of socks inside these shoes.
- 9 I asked him for a ..... of advice.
- 10 I like to put a ..... of cream in my coffee.
- 11 Have you seen that old ..... of boots I use for gardening?
- 12 I've got a ..... of time, so I can help you now if you like.

- 94.4** Cross out any answers which are wrong in these sentences.

- 1 I asked her for a bit/piece of advice.
- 2 I ordered a piece/sheet of cake.
- 3 There was a group/gang of journalists outside her house.
- 4 My lunch consisted of two slices/pieces of bread and a small bunch/group of grapes.
- 5 She hit me over the head with a small piece/bit of wood.
- 6 I'm in a hurry but I've still got a bit/piece of time.
- 7 We had a piece/bit of luck this morning: we won some money!
- 8 Could I have a piece/bit/drop of milk in my coffee?

# 95 The senses

## A The five basic senses

These are: **sight**, **hearing**, **taste**, **touch** and **smell**. For each one we use a basic verb, which can be followed by an adjective or noun in these constructions:

It <b>looks</b> terrible. (from what I could see)	It <b>looks like</b> a wedding cake.
He <b>sounds</b> German. (from what I heard)	It <b>sounds like</b> a good idea.
It <b>tastes</b> strange. (from tasting it)	This <b>tastes like</b> bread.
It <b>feels</b> soft. (from touching it)	It <b>feels like</b> a blanket.
It <b>smells</b> wonderful. (from smelling it)	This <b>smells like</b> garlic.

We can also use the verbs as nouns. These are very common:

I didn't like <b>the look</b> of the fish.	I really like <b>the sound</b> of church bells.
I don't like <b>the taste</b> of olives.	I hate <b>the smell</b> of petrol.

## B See, look (at) and watch

**See** is the ability to use your eyes (the verb is not normally used in the progressive); **look (at)** often means to look carefully / pay attention to something that is not moving; and **watch** often means to pay attention to something that is moving:

I can't see a thing without my glasses. (= I'm not able to see / I am blind)  
 I can't find my keys and I've **looked** (= searched / looked carefully) everywhere.  
 I want the doctor to **look at** (= look carefully and examine) my knee.  
 The police have been **watching** that man for weeks.  
 I **watched** the match and then went for a drink with friends.  
**Look** (= look carefully) in the corner of my eye; you can **see** (= are able to see) the mark.  
 He ran into me because he wasn't **looking**. (= paying attention; the speaker seems angry)  
 He ran into me because he didn't see me. (= wasn't able to see me; the speaker is not angry)

Sometimes two verbs are possible in one context; sometimes only one:

I **saw** a great film last night. (= at the cinema; we cannot use **watch** here)  
 I **saw/watched** a great programme last night. (= on TV; we can use either verb here)

## C Hear and listen (to)

**Hear** means able to hear; **listen (to)** means to pay attention to things you hear:

I couldn't **hear** what she said. (= I was physically unable to hear)  
 I can sometimes **hear** the trains from my bedroom. (= I am able to hear without trying)  
 I don't know what she said because I wasn't **listening**. (= I wasn't paying attention)  
 I often **listen to** the early evening news on the television. (= I make an effort to listen)  
 I was **listening to** the radio when I **heard** a strange noise outside.

Sometimes it is possible to use **hear** (but not in the progressive form) to mean 'listen to':

I know he's dead – I **heard** it on the radio last night. (= I heard it when I was listening)

## D Touch

Don't **touch** those wires – they're dangerous.  
 You have to **press** that button to start the machine.  
 I don't feel safe up here. Could you **hold** my hand?





## Exercises

**95.1** Complete the sentences using words from the box. Use a dictionary to help you.

water	sore	cod	donkey	photo	silk	fresh
new	washing powder	ripe	door bell	horrible		

- 1 I don't think I'll eat this peach; it doesn't feel .....
- 2 Those shoes look ..... When did you buy them?
- 3 This milk smells ..... I'll open another bottle.
- 4 This coffee tastes like ..... Who made it?
- 5 My feet are feeling ..... after that run.
- 6 I love the smell of ..... bread.
- 7 That painting looks like a .....
- 8 I know it's a horse but it looks like a .....
- 9 British people eat a lot of haddock. It's a white fish and tastes like .....
- 10 I'm sure it is expensive perfume, but to me it smells like .....
- 11 Your telephone sounds just like a .....
- 12 This blouse was very cheap but it feels like .....

**95.2** Complete the sentences below the pictures using *looks/tastes/feels* + adjective.



- 1 This man ..... 2 This pillow ..... 3 This apple .....

**95.3** Cross out any answers which are wrong.

- 1 I was listening to / hearing the radio when I listened to / heard a terrible noise outside.
- 2 The government is going to introduce new laws about noisy neighbours – I listened to / heard it on the radio this morning.
- 3 She turned up the volume but I still couldn't listen to / hear it.
- 4 I don't know if this is an antique; we'll have to get an expert to come and look at / see it.
- 5 They wanted to stay and watch / look at the programme, but it was a bit late.
- 6 I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn't hearing / listening when I spoke to him.
- 7 Can you bend over and touch / press your toes?
- 8 You have to touch / press the eject button if you want to get the video out.
- 9 Could you touch / hold this video for a moment while I move the TV?
- 10 If you watch / look carefully, you can look / see how the man does the trick with those cards.

**95.4** Write down a smell, taste, and sound that you like and hate. Complete these sentences, and then try to compare your answers with someone else.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| I love the smell of ..... | I hate the smell of ..... |
| I love the sound of ..... | I hate the sound of ..... |
| I love the taste of ..... | I hate the taste of ..... |

# 96 Notices and warnings

## A Informative notices

Some notices give you information:

### OUT OF ORDER

for a machine that is not working, e.g. phone or washing machine

### NO VACANCIES

in the window of a B&B (cheap hotel). It means the hotel is full

### SOLD OUT

outside a cinema or concert – there are no tickets left. All sold

## B Do this!

Some notices tell you to do certain things:

### PLEASE QUEUE OTHER SIDE

(= wait in a line on the other side of this notice) e.g. in a bank or post office

### KEEP RIGHT

(= stay on the right side, and continue on the right side) e.g. in airports

## C Don't do this!

Some notices tell you not to do certain things:

### NO SMOKING

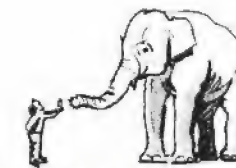
### No Parking

### NO EXIT

DO NOT LEAN  
OUT OF THE WINDOW



PLEASE  
DO NOT  
DISTURB



Please Do Not Feed  
The Animals

Keep off the grass

**SILENCE**  
EXAMINATION IN  
PROGRESS

DO NOT LEAVE  
BAGS  
UNATTENDED



## D Watch out!

Some notices are warnings – they tell you to be careful because something bad may happen:

### MIND YOUR HEAD

(= be careful you don't hit your head e.g. in front of a low door)

### MIND THE STEP

(= be careful you don't hit the step and fall e.g. in front of a step)

### FRAGILE

(= be careful, this will break easily)

### BEWARE OF PICKPOCKETS

(= be careful, there are people here who will steal things from your bag or pocket without you knowing)

## Exercises

- 96.1** Can you complete these notices and warnings in possible ways, without looking at the opposite page?

PLEASE QUEUE .....	BEWARE OF .....	
MIND THE .....	MIND YOUR .....	SOLD .....
PLEASE DO NOT .....	OUT OF .....	
NO .....	KEEP .....	

- 96.2** Where would you expect to see these notices or warnings?

1	No vacancies	5	OUT OF ORDER
2	Beware of pickpockets	6	Sold out
3	Nothing to declare	7	FRAGILE
4	Please queue other side	8	Keep off the grass

- 96.3** What notice(s) is/are possible in each of these places?

- a zoo
- a waiting area in a busy airport
- the door of a hotel room at 9 o'clock in the morning
- in front of garage doors
- above the window of a train
- inside a theatre
- on the underground
- a door going into a low room

- 96.4** Now write some different notices of your own. Think of six possible notices you could put in one of these places:

- a school
- a university
- a language school
- a place where people work, e.g. bank, factory, hospital

Where would you put these notices? If possible, do this activity with another person or show it to another person.

- 96.5** Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language. Try to find six more notices in the next week.

## 97 Vague language

Vague means 'not clear or precise or exact'. For example, we can say:

I have a **vague idea** where it is. (= I know the general area but I don't know exactly where)

I have a **vague memory** of the game. (= I can remember bits of it but not very clearly)

In spoken English we often use words which are very vague.

### A Thing(s)

- To refer to actions, ideas and facts:

The main **thing** (= fact) about John is that he likes everything to be organised.

Hitting that young child was a terrible **thing** (= action) to do.

- To refer to countable objects (often the speaker and listener know what the object is, or the speaker has forgotten the name of it at the moment of speaking):

What's that **thing** (bicycle) doing in the house?

Put those **things** (cups and saucers) in the cupboard.

- To refer to a general situation:

How are **things** at school? (= school in general)

Recently, **things** (= life in general) have been going really well.

### B Stuff

We generally use **stuff** (*informal*) to refer to uncountable nouns (or a group of countable nouns) when it is not necessary to be precise and give the exact name. Often the listener knows what the speaker is talking about.

Just leave that **stuff** (= different items of clothes) on the floor. I'll clear it up.

I never use that biological **stuff** (= washing powder) in my machine.

### C (A) sort of ...

This is used to describe something when you are not being very exact or precise. Sometimes it is not possible to be exact, and sometimes you cannot find the exact word you want.

The walls are a **sort of** yellowy colour. (= not exactly yellow, but similar to yellow)

It's a **sort of** horror film. (= not exactly a horror film, but similar to one)

He gets ... uh sort of ... nervous when you mention the word 'exams'.

### D A bit

It often means 'a little', but it is very common in spoken English, and sometimes it may be used more generally to mean a little or even quite a lot.

Could you speak up a **bit** (= a little). I can't hear you very well.

I thought the hotel was a **bit** (= quite) expensive, actually.

### E Approximately

These words have the same meaning but **approximately** is more formal than the others:

The train should arrive in **approximately** twenty minutes.

It's **about** three miles to the house.

There were **roughly** twenty people at the party.

We are expecting 100 guests, **more or less**.



## Exercises

### 97.1 What could *thing(s)* and *stuff* refer to in these sentences?

- 1 I never wear that stuff; it's got such a strong smell.
- 2 This thing has got stuck in the lock.
- 3 I bought a couple of bottles when I was in Scotland. It's great stuff.
- 4 We don't need these things. We can eat the chicken with our fingers.
- 5 What's that white stuff called that you mix with water to make bread?
- 6 There was a great thing on television last night about elephants.
- 7 I couldn't get any more stuff in my suitcase.
- 8 It's a wonderful thing and keeps my young children occupied for ages.
- 9 I don't know why I bought that thing – it's too heavy for me to carry even when it's empty.
- 10 It's good stuff. My hair feels really soft, and it didn't cost a lot.

### 97.2 Add a few words and phrases from the opposite page to make this conversation less precise and more natural.

- A: How many people were at the conference?  
 B: 400  
 A: Did you enjoy it?  
 B: Yes  
 A: You don't seem very sure.  
 B: Well, there were some good events, but it was too long.  
 A: And did you go to John's talk?  
 B: Naturally  
 A: How did it go?  
 B: Well he was nervous at the beginning, but he soon got more confident and I think it went really well.  
 A: Did he have a big audience?  
 B: 75  
 A: That's good, isn't?  
 B: I think John was disappointed – he wanted at least a hundred.

### 97.3 Reply to each of these questions with a suitable 'vague' response.

- 1 A: Did you get everything you wanted?  
 B: Yeah .....
- 2 A: Was it expensive?  
 B: Yeah .....
- 3 A: Did you say the walls were blue?  
 B: Yeah .....
- 4 A: Will there be twenty chairs in the room?  
 B: Yeah .....
- 5 A: Is it a very serious film?  
 B: Yeah .....
- 6 A: Are you tired?  
 B: Yeah .....

### 97.4 Think about similar words and phrases that you use when speaking your own language. How many direct translations can you find for the words and phrases on the opposite page?

# 98 American English

## A British English and American English

People in Britain and America understand each other perfectly most of the time, but there are differences in grammar, vocabulary, spelling and pronunciation. With vocabulary, the same word may have a different meaning, e.g. British **chips** are American **french fries**; and American **chips** are British **crisps**. Sometimes there are completely different words for the same thing: a **lorry** in British English is called a **truck** in American English.

## B Vocabulary

Here are some important differences. The British English word comes first in each case. Most of the words are explained in other units. Use the index to help you.

### Roads and transport

taxi / cab/taxi  
return (ticket) / round trip  
petrol / gas (gasoline)  
main road / highway  
motorway/freeway  
underground/subway  
subway/underpass  
pavement/sidewalk  
lorry/truck  
car park / parking lot

### Education

secondary school / high school  
term/semester (= periods in  
a college year)  
university/college

### Time

autumn/fall  
holiday/vacation  
fortnight / two weeks

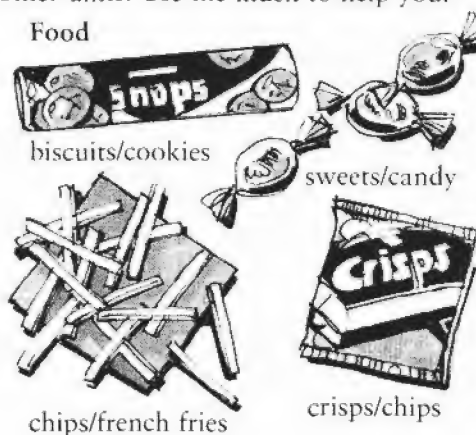
### Homes

tap/faucet  
rubbish / garbage/trash  
dustbin/trashcan  
toilet/bathroom  
wardrobe/closet

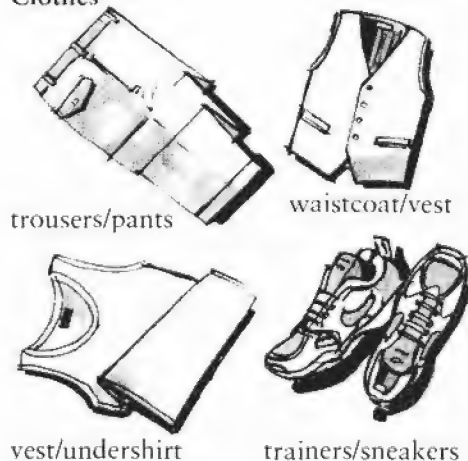
### Buildings

flat/apartment  
ground floor / first floor  
lift/elevator  
toilet (gents/ladies) / bathroom (men's/ladies' room)

### Food



### Clothes



*Note:* Some American English words are now becoming more common in British English, e.g. movie (Br. = film); apartment (Br. = flat); semester (Br. = term). One special problem is that **guys** in American English can refer to men and/or women, but in British English it is only used to refer to men.

## Exercises

**98.1** Decide if the speaker is using British English or American English, and cross out the incorrect answer.

- 1 We've decided to take our vacation in the autumn/fall this year.
- 2 At my son's high school the new term/semester starts next week.
- 3 I never eat biscuits or sweets/candy.
- 4 Put that garbage in the dustbin/trashcan.
- 5 The trousers look nice with that waistcoat/vest.
- 6 The lorry/truck came past us on the highway.
- 7 My apartment is on the fourth floor but I'm afraid there's no lift/elevator.
- 8 The people next door are on holiday/vacation. They'll be away for a fortnight.
- 9 We left the car in the car park / parking lot and took the subway to the centre.
- 10 My trainers are in the wardrobe/closet.

**98.2** Now complete this table.

<i>British English</i>	<i>American English</i>
.....	vacation
trousers	.....
.....	apartment
trainers	.....
.....	high school
biscuits	.....
.....	garbage
.....	highway
fortnight	.....
.....	subway

**98.3** This text includes some words used in American English. Underline them and write the British English words on the right-hand side.

It was getting near lunchtime and I needed some gas, so I left	1 .....
the freeway and drove towards the nearest town. There was	2 .....
a gas station just outside the town and I decided to stop and	3 .....
have a look round. I put the car in a parking lot and took a	4 .....
cab to the centre. It was midday and very hot, so I stopped at	5 .....
a little cafe with tables on the sidewalk. I started talking to a	6 .....
truck driver, who gave me a history of the town, and afterwards	7 .....
he took me on a guided tour. It made a very nice break.	

**98.4** Here are some more American English words that are explained in different parts of this book. What is the British English equivalent?

- |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>American English</i>   | <i>British English</i> |
| 1 stand/wait in line      |                        |
| 2 drapes                  |                        |
| 3 collect call            |                        |
| 4 attorney                |                        |
| 5 check (in a restaurant) |                        |

## 99

## Formal and informal English

Most English that you learn can be used in a wide range of situations. But you will also hear or see language that is formal or informal, and sometimes very formal or very informal. You need to be more careful with this language because it may not be suitable in certain situations. (They are marked *fml* and *infml* throughout the book.)

### A Formal English

Formal English is more common in writing than speaking. It is found in notices, business letters, and legal English; but you will also hear examples in spoken English.

Cafe notice: Only food **purchased** (= bought) here may be eaten on the **premises** (= here).

Police statement in court: I **apprehended** (= stopped) the accused outside the supermarket.

Theatre announcement: The play will **commence** (= start) in two minutes.

Formal business situation: The meeting will **resume** (= start again) this afternoon at 2 p.m.

Lawyer: My client had a broken ankle. **Thus** (= so) he could not have driven the car.

Formal letter: I **regret to inform you** (= I am sorry to say) that we **are unable to** (= can't) **grant** (= give) you ...

Announcement: If you **require** (= need) **further assistance** (= more help), please contact ...

Outside a pub: Parking for **patrons** (= customers) only.

### B Informal English

In general, informal language is more common in spoken English than written English.

Certain types of language are often informal:

- most uses of **get** are informal (See Unit 21 for more details)
- many **phrasal verbs** are informal (See Units 16 and 17 for more details)
- many **idioms** are informal (See Unit 18 for more details)

Here are some examples using words from above and other common informal words:

I had to go and **pick up** (= collect) the **kids** (= children) from school.

My flat is very **handy** for the shops. (= near the shops and very convenient)

I managed to **fix up** (= arrange/make) an appointment for 7.30.

I thought the book was **terrific** (= marvellous).

Most of the students are **bright** (= intelligent) but one or two are really **thick** (= stupid).

I offered him ten **quid** (= pounds) but the **guy** (= man) wasn't interested.

I **reckon** (= think) we'll **get** (= obtain) the money **pretty** (= quite) soon.

**What's up?** (= What's the matter?)

We must **get in touch with them** (= contact them) very soon.

**Do you fancy going out?** (= Would you like to go out?) Note the **-ing** form after **fancy**.

When you **get** (= reach/arrive) there, **have a word with** (= speak to) someone at reception.

I'm just going to the **loo** (= toilet).

### C Slang

This is a form of very informal language. It includes words used by particular groups of people (e.g. some young people may refer to 'drugs' as **dope**), and also words which many people think are impolite and unacceptable in most situations. You should probably not use these words, but some of them are quite common. The word **piss** (= urinate / go to the toilet) for example, is often used metaphorically in these slang expressions:

**piss off** (= go away); he was **pissed** (= drunk); it's **pissing with rain** (= it is raining heavily)



## Exercises

**99.1** Put the words on the left into the correct columns in the table.

purchase	handy	<i>Formal</i>	<i>Informal</i>
loo	resume		
thus	terrific		
quid	commence		
apprehend	reckon		
guy			

Now find a synonym for each of the words from this list.

therefore   toilet   convenient   catch/stop   start   man   start again  
pound   think   fantastic   buy

**99.2** Rewrite these sentences in more informal English.

- 1 When are you going to collect your bicycle?
- 2 Most of these children are very clever.
- 3 I think it'll commence quite soon.
- 4 Would you like to go out for a meal?
- 5 My flat is five minutes from where I work, thus it is very convenient.
- 6 What's the matter?
- 7 The man in the market wanted twenty pounds for this ring.
- 8 Where did you purchase that book?
- 9 They'll never apprehend him.
- 10 I'm just going to the toilet.

**99.3** Now rewrite this letter in more suitable formal English.

Dear Mr Collins

We're really sorry to say that we can't lend you the sum of five hundred quid that you need, but it may be possible to give you a loan for some of the money.

If you are still interested, do you fancy getting in touch with our main office to fix up an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to talk to you about it.

Yours sincerely

**99.4** Dictionaries will tell you if a word is formal or informal. Use your dictionary to find out if these underlined words are either formal or informal.

- 1 I couldn't attend the meeting.
- 2 I thought the film was a drag.
- 3 Someone has pinched my pen.
- 4 He's a nice bloke.
- 5 Smoking isn't permitted.

## Abbreviations and abbreviated words

### A Letters or words?

Some abbreviations are read as individual letters:

BBC	British Broadcasting Organisation	MP	Member of Parliament
UN	United Nations	PM	Prime Minister
UK	United Kingdom	EU	European Union
USA	United States of America		

Some abbreviations are read as words.

OPEC /ə'pek/ Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries

AIDS /eidz/ Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome

Occasionally an abbreviation can be read as individual letters or a word.

VAT /væt/ or V-A-T Value Added Tax (= a tax on goods/products in EU countries)

### B Written forms only

Some abbreviations are written forms only; they are still pronounced as full words.

Mr /mɪstə/	St. Mark (Saint Mark)
Mrs /mɪsɪz/ (= a married woman)	Dean St. (Dean Street)
Ms /mɒz/ (= a woman who may be single or married)	Dr (Doctor)

### C Abbreviations as part of the language

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

Abbreviation	Pronunciation	Meaning*	Latin
etc.	/et'setrə/	and so on	et cetera
e.g.	E-G	for example	exempli gratia
i.e.	I-E	that's to say, in other words	id est

\*Note: This is also how we say them in spoken English; we write 'e.g.' and we say 'for example'.

### D Shortened words

Some English words can be shortened, and it is very common to meet them in this form, particularly in spoken English. Here are some of the most common:

phone (telephone)	fridge (refrigerator)	bike (bicycle)
maths (mathematics)	exam (examination)	TV/telly (television)
board (blackboard)	plane (aeroplane)	a paper (newspaper)
case (suitcase)	photo (photograph)	mum (mother)
dad (father)	ad/advert (advertisement)	sales rep (sales representative)
vet (veterinary surgeon)	PC (personal computer)	
flu (influenza) (= an illness like a cold but more serious)		
lab (laboratory) (= a special room where scientists work)		
language lab (= room where students can listen and repeat using recording equipment)		

Note: Most of these words are explained in other parts of the book. Use the index on pages 248–265.

## Exercises

**100.1** What do these letters stand for? Complete each one.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 BBC = British .....  | 5 PM = Prime .....                       |
| 2 MP = Member of ..... | 6 UN = United .....                      |
| 3 EU = European .....  | 7 UK = .....                             |
| 4 VAT = Value .....    | 8 OPEC = Organisation of Petroleum ..... |

**100.2** Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.

.....

Michael

Peter had a mathematics examination this afternoon and then he had to take his bicycle to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch television while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the refrigerator. If there's a problem (for example, Doctor Brown rings about the influenza vaccination), my telephone number is next to the photographs on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five o'clock.

Margaret (Peter's mother)

**100.3** What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 for example | 4 in other words |
| 2 and so on   | 5 Mister         |
| 3 Street      | 6 Doctor         |

**100.4** Complete these sentences with suitable abbreviations or shortened words opposite.

- If you go to any of the Mediterranean islands ..... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
- He didn't want to walk so he went on his .....
- A: Do you always listen to tapes in the classroom?  
B: No, we sometimes listen in the .....
- I asked the teacher to write the word on the .....
- If you go there, you can buy books, pens, writing paper, .....
- She was away from college last week because she had ..... I think she's better now, though.
- When I decided to sell my records, I put an ..... in the paper and I had three replies the same day.
- It was a warm day so I put the milk and butter in the .....
- If the tickets are very expensive ..... more than \$75, don't buy any.
- I put my ..... in a left luggage locker.

**100.5** Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

PTO      RSVP      c/o      asap

# Answer key

## Unit 1

There is no key for this unit.

## Unit 2

### 2.1 Possible answers

<i>Clothes/accessories</i>	<i>Railways</i>	<i>Words with -full/-less suffix</i>
tie	fare	homeless
put on	train	painful
blouse	get on	careful
scarf	journey	helpful
jumper	station	thoughtless
jacket	platform	useless
jeans	ticket	

2.2 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 a and c 8 b

2.3 The answers here will depend on your first language: a translation may or may not be suitable for all of the words. Example sentences are a good idea for most words, and there is usually something else that is also useful to know. Here are some suggestions:

**dream:** noun and verb; as a verb the past tense and past participle can be 'dreamed' but more common is 'dreamt' /dreɪmt/. As a noun it is used with the verb 'have'; also useful to learn 'nightmare' (= bad dream).

**empty:** ≠ full. Also useful to learn 'half-empty' (= 'half-full') but seems more negative.

**concentrate:** the main stress is on the first syllable, and it is followed by the preposition 'on'. The noun is 'concentration'.

**forget:** irregular verb (forget/forgot/forgotten); ≠ remember.

**beard:** a picture is the best way to show meaning; it is pronounced /bɪəd/; also useful to know is 'moustache'.

**rescue:** synonym = save; noun and verb.

**nearly:** synonym = almost; usually goes before the main verb except the verb 'to be', e.g. We nearly lost the game; It is nearly 4 o'clock.

**knife:** a picture is the best way to show meaning; the letter 'k' is silent; also important to know are 'fork' and 'spoon'.

### 2.4 Possible answers

take: a picture/photo, time, a bath, a decision

do: your homework, research, someone a favour, an exam, sport, one's best, the shopping (food)

make: a mistake, a decision, a mess, a noise, friends, money, coffee

have: a rest, a bath, a drink, a party, a good time

## Unit 3

3.1 1 terrible 2 the same as 'choose' 3 a verb 4 an adjective 5 uncountable  
6 complete/total/utter 7 You must choose between A and B; You can choose from ten different colours. 8 See answers to 7

3.2 1 choice 2 advise 3 piece 4 chaotic 5 clean 6 'homework' is school or college work that you do at home; 'housework' is work that is necessary in a home e.g. washing, ironing, cleaning 7 win a game 8 gain / put on weight 9 order 10 Is this seat free/taken?



**3.3** knife; bomb; psychology; receipt; castle; doubt; wrist; calm

**3.4** 1 = def. 2      2 = def. 4      3 = def. 1

## Unit 4

- 4.1** 1 in Seville (preposition)  
2 I spent (pronoun)  
3 a beautiful city (indefinite article)  
4 expensive hotel (adjective)  
5 of money (preposition)  
6 wonderful hotel/place (noun)  
7 to Spain (preposition)  
8 never stays (adverb)

**4.2** uncountable noun: time; traffic  
plural noun: shorts; jeans  
phrasal verb: get in; put on  
idiom: get a move on

- 4.3** 1 transitive      3 intransitive      5 transitive  
2 intransitive      4 transitive      6 intransitive

**4.4** *Syllables and main stress (underlined)*

One syllable: noun

Two syllables: English; decide; before

Three syllables: informal; understand; adjective; opposite; comfortable (Four syllables are possible here, but the 'or' is silent for most native speakers most of the time. /kʌmfətbəl/)

Four syllables: education; preposition

Five syllables: pronunciation

- 4.5** 1 adjectives  
2 happily; correctly; luckily; surely; possibly  
3 happy/content; correct/right; lucky/fortunate; sure/certain; no clear synonym for 'possible', although 'maybe' and 'perhaps' are very similar.  
4 unhappy; incorrect; unlucky; unsure; impossible  
5 correct

## Unit 5

- 5.1** 1 row /rəʊ/ and cow /kaʊ/  
2 back /bæk/ and bacon /beɪkən/  
3 soup /su:p/ and soap /səʊp/  
4 vase /vaɪz/ and razor /reɪzə/

- 5.2** 1 dream because it is pronounced /dri:m/  
2 flood because it is pronounced /flʊd/  
3 fast because it is pronounced /fɑ:st/  
4 wound because it is pronounced /wu:nd/  
5 since because it is pronounced /sɪns/  
6 symptom because it is pronounced /sɪmptəm/

- 5.3** *first*                      *second*                      *third*  
 policy                      cathedral                      understand  
 palace                      police                      competition  
 opposite                      advertisement                      education  
 desert                      assistance  
 organise
- /ə/ appears in: cathedral /kə'tʃi:drəl/ understand /ʌndə'stænd/  
 police /pə'li:s/ competition /kəmpe'tɪʃən/  
 opposite /'ɒpəɪt/ advertisement /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/  
 education /edʒu'keɪʃən/ desert /'dezət/  
 assistance /ə'sɪstəns/ organise /'ɔ:ɡənaɪz/

- 5.4** *Same*                      *Different*  
 know/knife                      island/islam (s in island is silent)  
 muscle/scissors                      aisle/Christmas (s in aisle is silent)  
 climb/bomb                      listen/western (t in listen is silent)  
 wrong/wrist                      hand/handsome (d in handsome is silent)  
 calf/calm                      honest/hope (h in honest is silent)

## Unit 6

- 6.2** 1 writing    2 a cassette    3 an OHT    4 notes/papers    5 notes/books    6 a plug  
 7 look up the meaning of a word    8 rub things out / erase them    9 photocopy things  
 10 because people can't hear it very well
- 6.3** 1 clean the board    2 turn up the tape recorder    3 borrow a dictionary    4 swap places  
 5 video a programme    6 do an exercise    7 correct mistakes    8 look up a word  
 9 plug in the OHP / tape recorder
- 6.5** A: What does 'swap' mean?  
 A: How do you pronounce it?  
 A: How do you spell it?  
 A: How do you use it in a sentence?

## Unit 7

- 7.1** unhappy; impatient; impolite; illegal  
 incorrect; irregular; invisible; impossible  
 illegible; unfriendly; unemployed; dishonest  
 unpack; unlock; disagree; dislike
- 7.2** 1 it's illegal                      3 he got undressed                      5 she's very impatient  
 2 it's very untidy                      4 it's illegible                      6 impolite
- 7.3** 1 misunderstood                      4 disagree                      7 unlock                      10 reopen  
 2 unpacked                      5 redo                      8 disliked                      11 overworking  
 3 disappeared                      6 overslept                      9 redo/retake                      12 unwrap

## Unit 8

- 8.1** education; improvement; jogging; government; spelling; hesitation; arrangement;  
 stupidity; darkness; weakness; similarity; punctuality; sadness; popularity.

- 8.2** 1 television 3 education 5 weakness 7 management  
2 election 4 government 6 stupidity 8 improvement

- 8.3** 1 actor 4 singer 7 economist  
2 employer 5 murderer 8 translator  
3 footballer 6 psychologist 9 manager

- 8.4** 1 writes reports/articles for newspapers  
2 dances in ballets  
3 directs films  
4 manages a bank  
5 employs people (employees)  
6 sings pop songs and makes records  
7 translates books and articles  
8 drives a lorry  
9 takes pictures (photographs)  
10 draws and paints things, e.g. people and landscapes

## Unit 9

- 9.1** thoughtful/less dirty painful/less comfortable  
attractive careful/less knowledgeable famous  
creative dangerous (un)suitable (un)reliable  
foggy political sunny washable  
homeless enjoyable musical (un)breakable  
useful/less

- 9.2** 1 careful 4 knowledgeable or helpful 7 useful 10 undrinkable  
2 foggy 5 dangerous 8 reliable 11 inflexible  
3 famous 6 painful 9 industrial 12 homeless

- 9.3** painless; useless; careless; thoughtless; tactless\*  
\*If someone is 'tactful' they are diplomatic, i.e. they always say the right things. If you are tactless, you are always saying the wrong thing and might be offending someone.

*Opposites for the other words:*

wonderful (≠ terrible, awful) awful (≠ wonderful, fantastic) beautiful (≠ ugly)

- 9.4** Possible answers

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 cloudy, sunny, foggy                             | 5 famous, creative, knowledgeable   |
| 2 dangerous, careless, thoughtless, awful          | 6 reliable, comfortable, economical |
| 3 musical, creative, famous                        | 7 political, enjoyable, thoughtful  |
| 4 industrial, famous, beautiful, dirty, attractive | 8 ?                                 |

## Unit 10

- 10.1** 1 We waited a long time. 4 The holiday cost about £500.  
2 I dreamt about you last night. 5 I replied to his letter yesterday.  
3 We queued for half an hour.

- 10.2**
- 1 I'll give him a ring this evening.
  - 2 I go on a diet if I put on weight.
  - 3 It was very hot, so we had a rest for a while after lunch.
  - 4 I put on the brakes but I still couldn't stop in time.
  - 5 He gave me a push.
  - 6 Did you have a look in the paper?
- 10.3**
- 1 same meaning
  - 2 similar (but not exactly the same because 'to water' means 'to pour water over something that is growing'.)
  - 3 completely different (the verb 'to book' = 'to reserve')
  - 4 completely different ('a break' is a rest; 'to break a leg' = to fracture the leg)
  - 5 similar (but not exactly the same because 'a run' here is not just the action of running; it is an activity that the person chooses to do.)

## Unit 11

### 11.1 Possible answers

*Money:* credit card, cheque book, box office (where you buy tickets), income tax  
*Roads:* traffic lights, traffic jam, pedestrian crossing, parking meter, traffic warden  
*Things we wear:* T-shirt, sunglasses, earring  
*People:* baby-sitter, brother-in-law, film star, pop star

- 11.2**
- |               |                |                 |                    |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1 traffic jam | 4 waiting room | 7 income tax    | 9 first aid box    |
| 2 film star   | 5 baby sitter  | 8 parking meter | 10 science fiction |
| 3 alarm clock | 6 sunglasses   |                 |                    |

### 11.3 Possible answers

- 1 sitting room; waiting room
- 2 pop star; rock star
- 3 birthday card; postcard
- 4 toothbrush (= what you clean your teeth with)
- 5 traffic jam, traffic warden
- 6 sunshade (= parasol); suntan (= when your body goes brown from the sun)
- 7 box office, postbox
- 8 hairdresser (= person who cuts your hair)

### 11.4 Possible answers

notebook (= a book of plain paper to write notes)  
 textbook (= a book used for study, especially in schools)  
 cookery book (= a book that tells you how to prepare and cook food)  
 telephone book (= the book with telephone numbers; also called a telephone directory)  
 bookcase (= a piece of furniture with shelves for books)  
 book shop  
 greetings card, e.g. birthday card, Christmas card  
 travel card (= a ticket for travel on buses and trains for a period)  
 phone card (to use with certain telephones)  
 postcard



## Unit 12

- 12.1** good-looking      brand-new      well-known      badly-written  
easy-going      part-time      north-east      left-handed  
ten-pound      first-class      short-sleeved      second-hand

**12.2** *Possible answers*

well-done; well-made; well-built; well-dressed  
badly-written; badly-designed  
right-handed; left-handed  
part-time; full-time  
north-east; south-east

- 12.3** 1 sleeved      4 new      7 part      10 minute      13 pound  
2 star      5 east/west      8 written      11 hand      14 known  
3 handed      6 behaved      9 off      12 looking      15 going

## Unit 13

- 13.1** heavy smoker; heavy traffic; heavy rain  
miss a bus; miss a person; miss a lesson  
tell a joke; tell a lie; tell the truth; tell a story

- 13.2** 1 dry wine      3 weak coffee      5 get off the bus      7 miss the bus  
2 a slight accent      4 a loud voice      6 tell a lie      8 get out of the car

- 13.3** 1 terribly; missed      5 start      9 strong  
2 told      6 made      10 missed  
3 starting      7 vitally  
4 runs      8 heavy; highly

- 13.4** 1 large size      2 wide range      3 broad shoulders      4 vast majority

## Unit 14

**14.1** *Prepositions and possible replies*

- 1 about; I've no idea.
- 2 at; French and German.
- 3 for; Her brother, I think.
- 4 for; Assistant manager.
- 5 to; I think it's a comedy programme.
- 6 about; She said the vegetables were cold.
- 7 for; The fact that she was late twice last week.
- 8 to; The man over there.
- 9 at; One of the students in her class.
- 10 in; Thrillers, I think.
- 11 on; How much it costs, I expect.
- 12 of; The fact that she can't get out. She's claustrophobic, you see.

- 14.2** 1 c    2 j    3 a    4 l    5 h    6 b    7 d    8 k    9 g    10 i    11 e    12 f

**14.3** *Possible answers*

- 1 to the waiter / about it
- 2 to my brother/sister
- 3 for a job with a charity / in a developing country
- 4 at English
- 5 from hay fever
- 6 in languages
- 7 on opera
- 8 of flying
- 9 from English people
- 10 London; by/at the number of parks

**14.4** fond of; concentrate on; responsible for; rely on**Unit 15**

- 15.1** 1 on    3 on    5 on    7 for    9 on    11 in    13 by    15 on    17 at    19 by  
 2 by    4 on    6 by    8 in    10 by    12 on    14 by    16 in    18 at    20 at

- 15.2** 1 by myself / on my own    5 on TV    9 at the moment  
 2 in time    6 by mistake    10 by chance  
 3 out of work    7 in the end  
 4 on the phone    8 at the end

- 15.3** 1 No, she hit him by accident.  
 2 No, they went on foot (*or* by bus, by taxi, by train).  
 3 No, they're here on business.  
 4 No, I saw it on TV (*or* 'I heard about it on the radio').  
 5 No, he did it by himself / on his own.  
 6 No, I'm in a hurry.

**Unit 16**

- 16.1** 1 picked    3 gone    5 gets    7 look    9 go  
 2 found    4 get    6 gone    8 carry    10 run

**16.2** *Possible answers*

- 1 her illness
- 2 bread/coffee/sugar etc.
- 3 in a dictionary
- 4 my boss / my parents / the neighbours / my teacher etc.
- 5 her coat / her jacket / her gloves etc.
- 6 the fire
- 7 the cat / the children etc.
- 8 the car
- 9 early/late etc.
- 10 by ten pounds / next week etc.

- 16.3** 1 = def 6    2 = def 2    3 = def 4    4 = def 3    5 = def 1

- 16.4** See Page 36 for examples.

## Unit 17

### 17.1 Possible answers

- 1 excuses/stories
- 2 on the bed / on the floor
- 3 the TV / the light / the fire
- 4 my flat / my house
- 5 the problem / the mess / the central heating
- 6 tonight / on Saturday evening
- 7 the second question / the final part
- 8 just outside London
- 9 on your salary / on seventy pounds
- 10 in a small town / by the sea

- 17.2**
- |                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 no                              | 6 yes ( <b>made</b> that story up) |
| 2 yes ( <b>put</b> the fire out)  | 7 no                               |
| 3 yes ( <b>turn</b> the radio on) | 8 no                               |
| 4 no                              | 9 yes ( <b>turn</b> the light off) |
| 5 no                              | 10 yes (leave this question out)   |

- 17.3**
- 1 The cost of living is going up all the time and I find it quite difficult to get by on my salary. But I think I can probably carry on for a few months.
  - 2 She told us to come in but then we had to take off our shoes and I had to put out my cigarette.
  - 3 The teacher told the class to make up a story to go with the picture in their books, and then carry on with Exercise 3. She said they could all leave out Exercise 4.

- 17.4**
- Unit 21: get on (with someone); get on (= make progress); get up  
Unit 47: grow up; go out (with); split up; break up  
Unit 48: wake up; get up; stay in; go out; come round  
Unit 56: take sth. off; hang sth. up; put sth. on; try sth. on  
Unit 62: get on; get off; get in(to); get out (of)  
Unit 75: turn sth. on/off; turn sth. up/down; switch on/off/over; plug sth. in

## Unit 18

- 18.1**
- 1 feel like = want/desire
  - 2 for good = for ever
  - 3 tied-up = busy
  - 4 pulling sb.'s leg = joking by saying that something is true when in fact it is not true.
  - 5 make do = manage

- 18.2**
- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 hang on             | 5 What's up?        |
| 2 a short cut         | 6 Keep an eye on    |
| 3 go ahead            | 7 get a move on     |
| 4 make it; Never mind | 8 make up your mind |

- 18.3**
- |                  |         |            |
|------------------|---------|------------|
| 1 start; matters | 3 -hand | 5 do; term |
| 2 turns          | 4 talk  |            |

### 18.4 Examples

have something / nothing / a little **in common** = to have similar interests (If you 'have nothing in common', it means you don't have similar interests.)

**mad about** something = to like something very much

**get on** someone's nerves = to make someone angry or irritable by your behaviour.

## Unit 19

- 19.1** 1 do      3 make      5 take      7 do      9 doing  
2 have    4 do      6 take and do    8 take and make    10 made

- 19.2** 1 have a drink      5 I'm thirsty      8 take/make a decision  
2 make      6 do my shopping      9 had a good time  
3 do the housework    7 make money      10 making progress  
4 had

**19.3** *Possible answers*

- 1 My mother had to do a lot of housework, so I agreed to do the shopping for her.
- 2 A couple asked me to do them a favour and take a picture of them. *or* I made friends with a couple of people and took some photos of them.
- 3 I went to the disco and had a great time, but unfortunately I had to do an exam today, which was very difficult.

## Unit 20

- 20.1** break a record / the law; catch the ball / a bus / a cold; keep in touch / a record;  
give my regards to / me a hand

- 20.2** 1 see      3 give      5 catch      7 keep      9 break  
2 keep    4 see      6 keep      8 caught    10 see

- 20.3** 1 break the ice      3 catch a bus  
2 give him/her a hand    4 broke the record

## Unit 21

- 21.1** 1 buy      3 arrive      5 obtain\*      7 becoming      9 receive  
2 fetch    4 became    6 receive      8 buy      10 arrive  
\*obtain is used more frequently in written English than in spoken English.

- 21.2** 1 It's getting cold in here.      4 It's getting late  
2 I'm getting hungry      5 It's getting dark  
3 I'm getting hot      6 I'm getting worse at English

- 21.3** 1 getting ready to go out      4 get on very well with my boss  
2 get dressed very quickly    5 get rid of most of these chairs  
3 get to know people in this country    6 How are you getting on?

## Unit 22

- 22.1** 1 going    2 coming    3 go    4 take  
5 taking ('bringing' is also possible here if the speaker already imagines himself at the party)  
6 bring    7 go    8 come

- 22.2** 1 doing    3 turn      5 take me  
2 try      4 How are you?    6 How are you getting on?

- 22.3** 1 shopping      3 for a drink      5 for a swim  
2 for a meal / for something to eat    4 sightseeing; for a drive/walk    6 riding

- 22.4** 1 deaf    2 bankrupt    3 grey    4 bald    5 mad



## Unit 23

- 23.1**
- |                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 very/terribly/really/awfully | 5 apologise; matter |
| 2 I'm; held; problem           | 6 long; never       |
| 3 keep; mind                   | 7 beg; worry        |
| 4 kind                         | 8 sort              |

**23.2** *Possible answers*

- 1 I'm terribly sorry / I beg your pardon.
- 2 I'm sorry I'm late but I missed the bus.
- 3 Oh thank you. That's very kind of you.
- 4 Don't worry. It doesn't matter.
- 5 Thank you for inviting me. / Thank you for a lovely dinner/meal.
- 6 Never mind. Don't worry. I'll sort it out.
- 7 I would like to apologise for not coming to your office last week. Unfortunately, ...
- 8 Please accept our apologies for the delay in sending the information we promised you. Unfortunately we had a fire at the factory last month, and this has resulted in ...

## Unit 24

- 24.1**
- A: Would you like to go out this evening?  
B: I'm afraid I haven't got any money. (omit 'but')  
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about going to see a film?  
B: No, actually I think I'd rather stay at home and do my homework? (omit 'to' before 'rather')  
A: Why don't you do your homework this afternoon?  
B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
A: OK. How about tomorrow evening, then?  
B: Yeah fine. / Good idea.  
A: Great. What film shall we go to?  
B: I don't mind.

- 24.2**
- 1 possibly; sure / of course
  - 2 wondering; love to
  - 3 shall; don't; good/great idea
  - 4 shall; how about; could; rather; like
  - 5 would; mind

**24.3** *Possible answers*

- |                    |                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Yeah sure        | 5 I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't |
| 2 Yes of course    | 6 Yeah great                          |
| 3 I'm afraid not   | 7 Yes that's a good idea              |
| 4 Yes, I'd love to | 8 Yes if you like                     |

## Unit 25

**25.1** *Any combination of these question beginnings:*

What do you think of ...  
What do you feel about ...  
What are your feelings about ...

- 25.2**
- 1 of; personally ('actually' would also be correct here)
  - 2 according
  - 3 extent
  - 4 concerned
  - 5 totally ('completely' would also be correct here)

### 25.3 Possible answers

- 1 Personally I don't think you can learn a language in three months.
- 2 In my opinion the club needs to buy new players.
- 3 Yes, I agree with you.
- 4 The newspaper says that terrorists started the fire.
- 5 I partly agree with her.

### 25.4 Possible answers

- 1 Yeah maybe, but I think there are lots of women who don't want to do that.
- 2 Yes I agree to some extent, but how do you decide if someone doesn't want to work?
- 3 Yes, I think you're right.
- 4 You could be right but don't you think that more people would take drugs if we did that?
- 5 Yes I agree to a large extent – it *can* lead to a lot of conflict between countries.

## Unit 26

- 26.1**
- 1 Happy Christmas *or* Merry Christmas
  - 2 Happy Birthday (*or* Many Happy Returns)
  - 3 Happy New Year
  - 4 Congratulations
  - 5 Good luck
  - 6 See you soon

- 26.2**
- 1 How do you do?; How do you do?
  - 2 Bless you
  - 3 Have a nice/good weekend; Yes, same to you.
  - 4 Cheers; Cheers

- 26.3**
- 1 'Excuse me' is enough here, but you could add a little more, e.g. 'Excuse me for one moment' *or* 'Excuse me. I won't be long'.
  - 2 Sorry? (with rising intonation)
  - 3 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. / Nice to have met you.
  - 4 Excuse me.
  - 5 Goodnight. (See you in the morning / tomorrow.)
  - 6 Excuse me. (You would probably add something like 'I think you've dropped something'.)
  - 7 Congratulations
  - 8 Good luck

- 26.4**
- We use 'hard luck' to someone who has just failed in something, e.g. failed an exam  
We ask people to 'say cheese' when we are about to take a picture of them.  
We say 'watch out' as a warning e.g. to warn someone crossing a road that a cyclist is right behind them and could hit them if they aren't careful.  
We say 'I beg your pardon' in many situations when we also say 'sorry' e.g. you step on someone's foot; you interrupt someone. It is more formal.  
We say 'I've no idea' to show that we definitely do not know the answer to something; in some cases we say it because we are annoyed at being asked the question.

## Unit 27

- 27.1**
- 1 I need some information.
  - 2 We had lovely weather.
  - 3 The furniture is very old.
  - 4 I'm looking for a new pair of jeans. *or* I'm looking for some new jeans.
  - 5 Your hair is getting very long.
  - 6 Do you have any scissors? *or* Do you have a pair of scissors?

- 7 We had a lot of homework yesterday.
- 8 Do you think she's making progress with her English?
- 9 These trousers are too small.
- 10 She gave me some good advice.

**27.2** *countable*: cup; grape; coin  
*uncountable*: butter; travel; housework; money; spaghetti; insurance  
*countable and uncountable*:

- television U e.g. Television is bad for your eyes.  
                   C e.g. We bought a new television yesterday.  
 work U e.g. Most people enjoy their work.  
                   C e.g. The Mona Lisa is a famous work of art.  
 coffee U e.g. I love coffee.  
                   C e.g. I sat down and ordered a coffee (i.e. cup of coffee).

- 27.3** 1 some scissors / a pair of scissors                      5 some scales  
 2 some sunglasses / a pair of sunglasses                    6 some headphones  
 3 some advice    7 some / a pair of (warm) pyjamas  
 4 some furniture    8 to do more homework

**27.4** *uncountable nouns*: traffic; news  
*plural nouns*: roadworks; authorities

## Unit 28

- 28.1** 1 to work      3 going      5 to drive / driving      7 to work / working      9 to finish  
 2 to help      4 to take      6 eating      8 going      10 helping

**28.2** *Possible ways to complete Part C.*

- 1 to have a successful career; to be happy; to have children
- 2 doing housework; waiting at bus stops; going to the dentist
- 3 getting up late; walking in the country; going shopping
- 4 walking long distances; doing sport; drinking coffee
- 5 to live until they are 75; to have some disappointments; to meet a person they will love
- 6 making their bed; cooking their dinner; tidying up
- 7 come home at a certain time; tidy their own rooms; get up at a certain time
- 8 get up when they like; do what they like; have parties at their home

- 28.3** 1 He let her go on holiday with her friends.  
 2 He offered to lend her the money for the hotel.  
 3 He refused to pay for the flight and her entertainment.  
 4 She promised to bring him back a present and repay her loan in six months.  
 5 They decided to go to the south of France for two weeks.

## Unit 29

- 29.1** 1 She said the film was terrible.  
 2 He told me it's not possible.  
 3 Can you explain what to do?  
 4 She suggested that we go to ... / she suggested going to ...  
 5 Can we discuss my report?  
 6 I want him to leave.  
 7 I apologised for my mistake.  
 9 She advised me to buy a dictionary.  
 10 She insisted on paying.

- 29.2** 1 showed 3 apologise 5 persuaded 7 confirm 9 explained  
2 complain 4 warn 6 insisted 8 blamed 10 discussed

**29.3** *Possible answers*

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 that we go for a meal.                  | 6 him to go.                  |
| 2 them to be quiet.                       | 7 her to go home.             |
| 3 it was great.                           | 8 the manager for the defeat. |
| 4 it in class.                            | 9 them not to drink it.       |
| 5 on going with her / that we go together | 10 how it works.              |

**29.4** *order*

- 1 + object, e.g. He ordered a meal.  
2 + object + infinitive, e.g. He ordered us to leave.

*recommend*

- 1 + object, e.g. She recommended the school.  
2 + 'that' clause, e.g. She recommended that we stay in a hotel.  
3 + preposition, e.g. What would you recommend for young children?  
4 + (object) + -ing, e.g. I recommend (you) reading the book before you see the film.

*prevent*

- 1 + object, e.g. I couldn't prevent the accident.  
2 + object + preposition, e.g. They prevented us from leaving.

**Unit 30**

- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>30.1</b> big/enormous or huge | hot/boiling                       |
| small/tiny                       | cold/freezing                     |
| tired/exhausted                  | bad/awful or terrible or dreadful |
| surprised/astonished             | hungry/starving                   |
| interesting/fascinating          | frightened/terrified              |

**30.2** *Sample answer*

Arrived on Sunday. The hotel is fantastic – we've got a huge room and the food is wonderful. It's been boiling every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach, along with everyone else – it's absolutely packed. But the sea is actually freezing – that's because it's the Atlantic coast, I suppose.  
Tomorrow we're going to walk to a tiny seaside village about ten kilometres from here – I imagine I'll be really exhausted by the time we get back, but it does sound a fascinating place and I'm looking forward to it.  
I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it. Until then,

- 30.3** 1 exhausted 2 fascinating 3 terrifying 4 astonished 5 freezing

- 30.4** 1 exhausted 2 disappointed 3 embarrassed 4 confused 5 astonished

**Unit 31**

- 31.1** 1 on 2 in 3 at 4 at 5 in 6 on 7 on 8 at 9 on 10 in

- 31.2** 1 No, behind the picture.  
2 No, down the hill.  
3 No, under the fence.  
4 No, I saw her get out of the car.  
5 No, above the clouds.  
6 No, the flat below me.



- 31.3** 1 across      3 into      5 near      7 between      9 round  
2 through      4 in      6 along      8 at/in      10 through

## Unit 32

- 32.1** 1 My brother often visits us on Sunday.  
2 She hardly ever phones me.  
3 I have never broken my leg.  
4 I hardly saw him during his visit.  
5 I occasionally get up early. ('occasionally' could also begin or end the sentence)  
6 She is always early for work on a Monday.
- 32.2** 1 hardly ever / rarely      2 hardly      3 nearly      4 slightly      5 incredibly
- 32.3** 1 No it was rather interesting (actually)  
2 No they were rather quiet (actually)  
3 No, it's rather clean (actually)  
4 No, it was rather good (actually)
- 32.4** 1 I thought they were extremely good.  
2 He's been getting very good marks in his exams.  
3 John said the flat was fairly / quite / a bit small.  
4 They said it was a bit boring.  
5 The clothes were quite/fairly expensive.

## Unit 33

- 33.1** 1 get      2 while      3 leaving      4 eventually/finally      5 just as      6 while/as

**33.2** *Possible answers*

- |                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 we went for a swim.           | 5 John looked up the other half.   |
| 2 I have finished here.         | 6 the bus arrived.                 |
| 3 leaving.                      | 7 you are not insured to drive it. |
| 4 I was getting out of the car. | 8 I was coming round the corner.   |

**33.3** *Possible answers*

- 1 And for another, I've got lots of work to do.  
2 Then finally we came back through the Loire valley and stayed in Tours for a couple of days.  
3 besides/anyway, we can't really afford it.

**33.4** *Possible answer*

Dear Sir

I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Malvern Hotel and I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with the food and service provided in your restaurant.

To begin with, there was very little variety in the food and sometimes no choice at all. Secondly, the service was very slow most of the time and we had to wait half an hour between courses. And finally, when we complained to the head waiter about these delays, he was very rude and the service did not improve.

I sincerely hope that immediate action will be taken to improve this situation, and I shall expect a letter of apology and explanation for this very poor standard of service in a hotel with such a fine reputation.

Yours faithfully

## Unit 34

- 34.1** 1 although 4 even though 7 however 10 also  
2 in spite of 5 whereas 8 too / as well  
3 in spite of / despite 6 In addition / Moreover 9 on the other hand

- 34.2** He went to school today even though he didn't feel very well.  
He always did his best at school whereas most of his friends were very lazy.  
He's got the right qualifications. What's more, he's the most experienced.  
He didn't pass the exam in spite of the help I gave him.  
He decided to take the job. However, the pay isn't very good.

- 34.3** 1 despite / in spite of  
2 whereas  
3 furthermore / in addition / moreover / what's more  
4 although / even though / despite the fact that  
5 however / on the other hand  
6 as well / too

**34.4** *Possible answers*

- |                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 she spoke very quickly. | 4 it's much cheaper.             |
| 2 the others couldn't.    | 5 I think they'll probably pass. |
| 3 the bad weather.        | 6 I wasn't bored at all.         |

## Unit 35

- 35.1** 1 similar  
2 unlike / different from  
3 a lot in common  
4 in common  
5 live at home / have jobs / like sport / want to become managers  
6 went to university

- 35.2** 1 Martin is very different from his brother.  
2 The flats are very good value compared with/to the houses.  
3 Everyone in the class passed the exam except Carla.  
4 The two boys have nothing in common.  
5 You don't have to wear a tie apart from (on) Saturday(s).

- 35.3** 1 otherwise 2 in case 3 unless 4 as long as

**35.4** *Possible answers*

- 1 have to finish it at the weekend.  
2 a member.  
3 pay me back before next week.  
4 my cousin comes to stay for a few days.  
5 I have to.  
6 I want to buy anything.

## Unit 36

- 36.1**
- 1 I didn't phone you as/since/because it was very late. *or*  
It was very late so I didn't phone you.
  - 2 I turned up the radio in the lounge so (that) I could hear it in the kitchen.
  - 3 The restaurant was full so we went to the bar next door. *or*  
We went to the bar next door as/since/because the restaurant was full.
  - 4 I stayed at home as/since/because I was expecting a phone call. *or*  
I was expecting a phone call so I stayed at home.
  - 5 It's a very large city so you have to use public transport a lot. *or*  
You have to use public transport a lot as/since/because it's a very large city.
  - 6 I learnt to drive so that my mother didn't have to take me to ... (*purpose*)  
I learnt to drive, so my mother didn't have to take me to ... (*result*)

- 36.2** It is possible to use 'because of / due to / owing to' in all of the answers.

- 1 She got the job because of her excellent qualifications.
- 2 We couldn't eat outside owing to the terrible weather.
- 3 She had to stay at home because of her broken ankle.
- 4 The referee had to stop the game owing to the bad light.
- 5 The flowers died because of the dry weather.
- 6 Owing to the heavy traffic, I was half an hour late. *or*  
I was half an hour late due to the heavy traffic

- 36.3** 1 as/since    2 cause / lead to    3 so that    4 lead to    5 therefore

**36.4** *Possible answers*

- 1 I want to improve my English because I will need it in my job very soon.
- 2 I bought myself a walkman so that I could listen to English cassettes on the bus.
- 3 I study English at the weekend as I am very busy during the week.
- 4 I always write words down in my notebook so that I don't forget them.
- 5 I don't get many opportunities to practise my English. Consequently I find it difficult to remember everything I study.
- 6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, he gets a lot of opportunities to practise his English.
- 7 If he could speak almost perfect English, it could lead to a job in Britain or America.
- 8 Some people find English difficult because of the pronunciation.

## Unit 37

- 37.1**
- |                    |                           |                      |             |
|--------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-------------|
| 1 an ocean         | 4 a desert                | 7 a group of islands | 10 mountain |
| 2 a mountain range | 5 a jungle (a rainforest) | 8 a continent        | 11 Lakes    |
| 3 a country        | 6 a sea                   | 9 islands            | 12 stars    |

- 37.2** My journey took me across the Atlantic Ocean from Europe to South America. I travelled through the Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of Brazil as far as the Iguacu Falls. From there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round Lake Titikaka and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed the Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to Jamaica in the West Indies.

- 37.3** 1 hurricane    2 flood    3 drought    4 earthquake    5 volcano

- 37.4** 1 Sahara Desert    2 River Nile    3 Nigeria    4 Lake Tanganyika  
 5 Mount Kilimanjaro    6 Victoria Falls    7 Kalahari Desert    8 South Africa  
 9 Madagascar    10 the equator

### Unit 38

- 38.1** 1 foggy    2 snowing    3 cloudy    4 pouring with rain    5 ic(e)y    6 sunny

- 38.2** 1 false    3 true    5 false    7 false    9 true  
 2 true    4 true    6 true    8 true    10 false

- 38.3** *The missing words are*  
 breeze; gale  
 boiling; freezing

- 38.4** 1 blows    2 hot    3 winds    4 snows    5 spell    6 heavy    7 humid

### Unit 39

- 39.1** 1 plant trees (you can 'plant plants' but it sounds unnatural. In this case you would probably say:  
 'We're going to put some plants in'.  
 2 water trees/plants  
 3 pick apples  
 4 extract coal  
 5 grow wheat/apples/trees/plants  
 6 slaughter cows

- 39.2** 1 true    4 true  
 2 true    5 false (a period when we take crops from the ground)  
 3 false (a long period without rain)    6 false

- 39.3** 1 a tin can    3 a knife with a steel blade    5 a gold wedding ring  
 2 a silver spoon    4 a frying pan with a copper base    6 these iron bars are very strong

- 39.4** 1 vegetable    2 metal    3 dairy    4 cereal    5 crop(s)

### Unit 40

- 40.1** 1 same /aɪ/    5 same /aɪ/    8 different /ə/; /ɑ:/  
 2 different /e/; /əʊ/    6 different /ʌ/; /ɒ/    9 same /ɒ/  
 3 different /eə/; /i:/    7 different /æ/; /eɪ/    10 same /aʊ/  
 4 different /g/; /dʒ/

- 40.2** *Suggested answers*

*Farm animals:* pig, cow, horse, chicken, sheep, goat

*Wild animals:* lion, tiger, elephant, monkey, camel, leopard, bear

*Insects:* fly, mosquito, wasp, ant, butterfly

- 40.3** *Possible answers*

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1 eagles                                       | 6 blue whales         |
| 2 whales or sharks                             | 7 monkeys or giraffes |
| 3 monkeys or dogs are the most probable answer | 8 snakes              |
| 4 leopards, lions, tigers and other big cats   | 9 elephants           |
| 5 camels                                       | 10 sheep              |



**40.4** *Possible answers*

- 1 mouse/rabbit
- 2 pigs/horses/chickens
- 3 leopards (panthers and cheetahs would also be possible)
- 4 ants/flies/wasps (cockroaches would also be possible)
- 5 camels

- 40.5** golden eagle = 270 kph when they dive (= fly in a downward direction)  
 lion = 80 kph    shark = 64 kph    rabbit = 56 kph    elephant = 40 kph    pig = 18 kph  
 spider = 1.88 kph    snail = 0.05 kph

**Unit 41**

- 41.1** 1 Great Britain, the United States of America, Canada, Australia, New Zealand  
 2 Portuguese  
 3 Dutch  
 4 Swiss-German, French, Italian. A small number of people also speak a language called Romansch.  
 5 Arabic  
 6 Swedish  
 7 Spanish  
 8 Egyptian  
 9 Hebrew  
 10 China

- 41.2** Japan    Japanese    Brazilian    Egyptian    Arabic    Italian    Austria    Australia  
Chinese    Portuguese    Saudi Arabia  
 Words ending -ia usually have the stress on the third syllable from the end.  
 Words ending -ian usually have the main stress on the second syllable from the end.  
 Words ending -ese usually have the stress on the final syllable, i.e. on the -ese.

**41.3** *Possible answers*

- |                |               |             |
|----------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 The Japanese | 3 Brazilians  | 5 The Swiss |
| 2 Israelis     | 4 The British | 6 Greeks    |

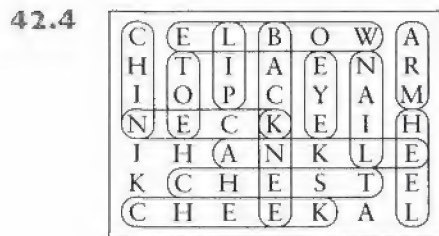
- 41.4** 1 Thailand    3 Turkey    5 Egypt    7 Greece    9 Sweden  
 2 Argentina    4 South Korea    6 Saudi Arabia    8 Israel    10 Portugal

- 41.5** 1 Russian    4 Japanese    7 Dutch    10 French  
 2 Korean    5 Greek    8 Spanish    11 Swedish  
 3 Italian    6 Chinese    9 Swiss German

**Unit 42**

- 42.1** 1 forehead    8 foot    15 wrist  
 2 cheek    9 toe    16 hand  
 3 chin    10 finger    17 bottom  
 4 chest    11 neck    18 thigh  
 5 arm    12 shoulder    19 heel  
 6 hip    13 waist  
 7 knee    14 elbow

- 42.2** 1 blow your nose                      5 bend your knees  
 2 shake hands                                6 nod your head  
 3 comb your hair                          7 bite your nails  
 4 fold your arms
- 42.3** 1 they're happy or being polite  
 2 running  
 3 they're happy or when someone says something funny  
 4 when they're nervous  
 5 when they have a cold  
 6 when they want to say 'no'  
 7 when they mean 'yes'  
 8 when they're sad, unhappy, or possibly when they're very happy  
 9 they're tired or bored



### Unit 43

- 43.1** 1 hair                                      5 shoulders                              9 looking  
 2 skin                                        6 chests                                10 hair/skin/eyes  
 3 hair                                        7 beard/moustache  
 4 height/build                            8 arms/legs
- 43.2** 1 beautiful/pretty    2 plain    3 overweight    4 thin    5 good-looking/handsome
- 43.3** What does he/she look like?  
 How tall is he/she?  
 How much does he/she weigh?

### Unit 44

- 44.1** *Positive*                      *Negative*  
 clever                            stupid  
 nice                              unpleasant  
 relaxed                        tense  
 hard-working                lazy  
 cheerful                      miserable  
 generous                     mean
- 44.2** unkind; unfriendly; unreliable; unambitious; unpleasant  
 inflexible; insensitive  
 dishonest
- 44.3** 1 mean                                      5 lazy                                      9 insensitive  
 2 has no initiative / doesn't use her initiative    6 shy                                      10 ambitious  
 3 unreliable                                7 flexible  
 4 punctual                                    8 sensitive



- 48.3** 1 bother 3 stay in 5 lie-in 7 on my own / by myself  
2 go out 4 early 6 come round

### Unit 49

- 49.1** 1 yes 2 yes 3 no 4 shut 5 three 6 no 7 no 8 no

- 49.2** 1 gate; path; doorbell 3 view 5 belongs; condition  
2 climb; lift 4 rent 6 heat; heating

**49.3** *Possible answers*

*Positive*

the rooms are very light  
a good view  
quiet  
large rooms  
in good condition

*Negative*

the rooms are very dark  
no view  
noisy  
small rooms  
in bad condition  
draughty

### Unit 50

**50.1** *Possible answers*

- 1 sleep
- 2 cooking and washing-up
- 3 wash and shower (and bath)
- 4 sit and relax (and watch TV)
- 5 eat meals
- 6 guests sleep / where you keep things you don't use all the time.
- 7 work/study
- 8 you have a washing machine / tumble dryer (= machine to dry clothes)

- 50.2** 1 in the fridge 4 in the dishwasher  
2 in the oven 5 in the cupboard  
3 in the washing machine 6 in the cupboard

- 50.3** sink; curtains; carpet; dishwasher; kettle; sofa; oven; fridge; armchair; cupboard; saucepan

- 50.4** 1 in 2 out; back 3 on; in 4 on 5 in 6 out; on

**50.6** *Possible answers*

- 1 oven, TV, radio, hi-fi, washing machine, dishwasher
- 2 plates, cups, saucers, saucepans, glasses, knives and forks
- 3 chair, stool, armchair, sofa
- 4 kettle, saucepan

### Unit 51

- 51.1** 1 I cleaned my teeth 5 I had a wash  
2 I went to sleep 6 I put on my pyjamas  
3 I set the alarm clock 7 I got into bed  
4 I switched off the light

*Possible order:* 5, 1 (or 1, 5), 6, 3, (could be 3, 6), 7, 4, 2. There are, of course, other variations e.g. you might get into bed and then set the alarm clock; etc.



- 51.2** 1 She did the shopping. 4 She hoovered the carpet / did the hoovering.  
 2 She ironed something. 5 She did the washing.  
 3 She did the washing-up. 6 She made the bed.

- 51.3** 1 no 3 yes 5 no 7 yes  
 2 two 4 three 6 yes 8 no

## Unit 52

<b>52.1</b>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Past participle</i>
	burn	burnt (also burned)	burnt (also burned)
	break	broke	broken
	drop	dropped	dropped
	spill	spilt (also spilled)	spilt (also spilled)
	trip	tripped	tripped
	lose	lost	lost
	leave	left	left

- 52.2** 1 f 2 g 3 e 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 d

- 52.3** 1 someone broke some glasses  
 2 he has a stain on his trousers  
 3 he burnt his shirt

**52.4** *Possible answers*

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1 I dropped it.                               | 5 I'm afraid I lost it. |
| 2 I'm afraid there's something wrong with it. | 6 I left it at home.    |
| 3 I tripped over.                             | 7 It's not working.     |
| 4 It's not working properly.                  | 8 It's out of order.    |

## Unit 53

- 53.1** 1 sold; bought 3 paid 5 won  
 2 lost; cost; found 4 gave; spent 6 wasted

- 53.2** 1 How much is your gold ring worth?  
 2 I'm afraid I can't afford it. *or* I'm afraid I can't afford to go.  
 3 Could you lend me some money?  
 4 How much did your dictionary cost? *or*  
 How much did you pay for your dictionary?

- 53.3** 1 yes 2 no 3 yes 4 no 5 yes 6 no 7 no 8 no

## Unit 54

- 54.1** 1 a cough, sore throat, sneezing  
 2 a cough, sore throat, sneezing, temperature, aching muscles  
 3 runny nose, sneezing, sore eyes  
 4 headache  
 5 keep going to the toilet  
 6 difficulty in breathing

- 54.2** 1 different /dɪ/, /daɪ/ 4 different /aɪ/, /ɪ/  
 2 same /k/ 5 different /u:/, /ʌ/  
 3 same /ɜ:/ 6 different /ɒ/, /ʌ/

**54.3** *Possible answer*

I had terrible toothache, so I made an appointment to see the dentist. He had a look at the tooth and decided that I needed a filling. It was quite a big one, so I had an injection first. Afterwards it felt so much better.

- 54.4** 1 hurts      3 ache      5 lung      7 asthma      9 myself  
2 attack      4 pain      6 prescription      8 disease      10 aches

**Unit 55**

- |             |             |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <b>55.1</b> | <i>Noun</i> | <i>Verb</i> | <i>Noun</i> | <i>Verb</i> |
|             | cut         | cut         | blood       | bleed       |
|             | wound       | wound       | bandage     | bandage     |
|             | injury      | injure      | bruise      | bruise      |
|             | shot        | shoot       | treatment   | treat       |

**55.2** *Model answer*

Paul somehow fell from the tree where he was picking apples and he knocked himself unconscious. His wife immediately rang for an ambulance and it soon arrived and rushed him to hospital. He was suffering from concussion and had to have some stitches for a large cut on the side of his head, but fortunately it was nothing more serious than that.

**55.3** *Possible answers*

- 1 I was preparing the dinner and I cut my finger on the vegetable knife.
- 2 he was in a fight and someone gave him a black eye.
- 3 I was running for a bus and I hit my foot on something on the pavement and fell over.
- 4 We were running for the same ball; I'm afraid I didn't see him and he didn't see me, and we collided.

**Unit 56****56.1** *Possible answers*

shoes, socks, jeans, trousers, shorts, gloves, tights

- 56.2** 4, 7, 1, 3, 5, 9, 2, 8, 6

- 56.3** an earring, a ring, a button, a pocket, a necklace, gloves.

**56.4** *Most likely answers*

- |                         |                |               |
|-------------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 blouse or *top; skirt | 3 tie; shirt   | 5 too; enough |
| 2 suit; trousers        | 4 enough; size |               |
- (\*top is a general word)

**56.5** *Possible answers*

*worn by women:* dress, blouse, skirt, tights, necklace

*worn by both:* hat, gloves, jeans, trousers, jacket, scarf, coat, shirt

**Unit 57**

- |             |             |                         |              |
|-------------|-------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| <b>57.1</b> | 1 clothes   | 3 electrical appliances | 5 toys       |
|             | 2 furniture | 4 household goods       | 6 stationery |

- 57.2** newsagent: envelopes, a newspaper  
 chemist: toothbrush, aspirin  
 department store: envelopes, an armchair, gloves (and possibly the apples, carrots, coca cola, chicken and a loaf of bread)  
 butcher: a chicken  
 greengrocer: apples and carrots  
 supermarket: a chicken, a toothbrush, a loaf of bread, coca cola, apples, carrots, a newspaper

*Other things you could buy in each shop:*

newsagent: cigarettes, sweets, greeting cards  
 chemist: soap, shampoo, perfume, toothpaste  
 department store: clothes, washing machines, saucepans  
 butcher: steak, sausages, bacon, lamb  
 greengrocer: onions, oranges, peas, lemons  
 supermarket: coffee, wine, cakes, biscuits, cheese

- 57.3** 1 boutique                      3 shop/sales assistant                      5 till / cash desk                      7 butcher('s)  
 2 shopping centre                      4 changing/fitting room                      6 window shopping                      8 chemist('s)

- 57.4** 1 looking for                      3 being served                      5 take it  
 2 size                      4 changing room                      6 till / cash desk

## Unit 58

- 58.1** 1 peas/potato; peach/pear  
 2 beans; banana  
 3 mushroom; melon  
 4 carrot/cauliflower/cabbage; cherry  
 5 aubergine; apple

- 58.2** lettuce/chicken /t/  
 onion/mushroom /ʌ/  
 orange/cauliflower /ɒ/  
 banana/melon /ə/  
 aubergine/tomato /əʊ/  
 salmon/lamb /æ/

- 58.3** 1 salmon; the others are types of meat but salmon is a fish  
 2 salmon; the others are types of shellfish but salmon is a fish  
 3 aubergine; the others are found in salad but aubergine isn't  
 4 peach; the others are vegetables but a peach is a fruit  
 5 mussels; the others are types of meat but mussels is a shellfish

- 58.4** *Most likely answers:*

<i>always</i>	<i>usually</i>	<i>never</i>
cherries	apples	bananas
grapes	peaches	pineapples
strawberries	pears	melons
		lemons
		oranges
		mangoes

## Unit 59

- 59.2**
- 1 chicken liver pate
  - 2 tagliatelle with courgettes, cream and bacon
  - 3 fillet steak
  - 4 baked salmon
  - 5 steak with a pepper sauce
  - 6 breast of chicken in a white wine sauce
  - 7 fillet steak
  - 8 ice cream and chocolate mousse
  - 9 fruit salad
  - 10 probably the soup, salmon, and fruit salad

**59.3** *Possible answers*

lemon – bitter   chicken – bland or tender   honey – sweet   bacon – salty or fatty or tasty  
ice cream – sweet   fillet steak – tender or fatty or lean   chillies – hot and spicy  
avocado – bland

## Unit 60

- 60.1**
- |                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Towns</i>       | <i>Villages</i>              |
| noisy              | quiet and peaceful           |
| dirty and polluted | clean air                    |
| exciting           | boring                       |
| stressful          | relaxing                     |
| crowded            | lots of open space           |
| lots to do         | nothing to do in the evening |
| dangerous          | safe                         |

**60.2** *Possible answers*

<i>Town</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Town and country</i>
factories	fields	gates
shopping centres	woods	car parks
pollution	tractors	footpaths
night-life	villages	libraries
Town Hall, suburbs	valleys	traffic

- 60.3**
- |           |         |          |           |
|-----------|---------|----------|-----------|
| 1 gate    | 3 path  | 5 valley | 7 valley  |
| 2 tractor | 4 field | 6 wood   | 8 village |

## Unit 61

- 61.1** Go along this road and take the first turning at the junction. Then you keep going and turn right when you get to the school. Then turn right again into Maldon Road, and the bank is on the left-hand side just after the cinema.

- 61.2**
- |   |                   |                  |
|---|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 fasten your seat belt; get in / start | 4 braked; crashed | 7 traffic jam    |
| 2 injured; damaged                      | 5 pavement        | 8 lane; overtook |
| 3 rush hour                             | 6 broke down      |                  |

- 61.3**
- |               |            |             |
|---------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 park        | 4 one lane | 7 lights    |
| 2 speed limit | 5 motorway | 8 bridge    |
| 3 turn right  | 6 park     | 9 roadworks |



## Unit 62

- 62.1** 1 ride      3 fares      5 fly      7 take  
2 get in      4 run      6 timetable      8 missed

**62.2** *Possible answers*

- 1 bus fare; train fare; air fare; taxi fare
- 2 get on the bus; get on the coach; get on the train; get on the plane
- 3 bus station; railway station; coach station
- 4 bus driver; train driver; taxi driver; van driver
- 5 get in the car; get in the taxi; get in the van. (People also sometimes say 'get in the bus' or 'get in the train'.)
- 6 train journey; bus journey; taxi journey; coach journey

- 62.3** 1 coach      2 van      3 lorry      4 motorbike      5 bike

- 62.4** 1 platform      3 full up      5 punctual      7 journey  
2 bus stop      4 arrival      6 queue      8 due

## Unit 63

- 63.1** 1 earn £500      3 pay income tax      5 deal with clients  
2 work overtime      4 go to meetings      6 run a shop

- 63.2** 1 What's your job?  
2 My salary is \$50,000.  
3 My total income is £30,000.  
4 I work for a pharmaceutical company.  
5 My job involves looking after and maintaining all the hardware.  
6 I'm in charge of one of the smaller departments.

- 63.3** A: What are your working hours?  
A: Do you do/work any overtime?  
A: How much holiday / how many weeks holiday do you get?  
A: Teachers don't earn very much, do they?

## Unit 64

**64.1** *Possible answers*

- |                      |                 |   |
|----------------------|-----------------|---|
| 1 a lawyer or doctor | 5 a policeman   | 9 a doctor, nurse, surgeon, or vet                |
| 2 a pilot            | 6 a vet         | 10 a soldier, sailor, or someone in the air force |
| 3 a sailor           | 7 a fireman     |   |
| 4 a mechanic         | 8 an accountant |   |

**64.2** *Possible answers*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 an architect designs buildings              | 6 plans the construction of roads and bridges |
| 2 lectures in a university                    | 7 builds walls                                |
| 3 controls the financial affairs of a company | 8 buys and sells shares                       |
| 4 treats animals                              | 9 repairs cars                                |
| 5 advises people on legal problems            | 10 operates on people                         |

- 64.3** 1 Really. When did he join the army?      3 Really. When did he join the air force?  
2 Really. When did he join the navy?      4 Really. When did he join the fire brigade?

**64.4** *Possible answers*

an architect to design your house  
 a lawyer to give you legal advice  
 a carpenter to make cupboards and fit doors  
 a plumber to fit the kitchen and bathroom  
 an electrician to do all the electrical work  
 an accountant to calculate how much everything will cost

**Unit 65**

- 65.1** 1 sacked/dismissed    3 resigned    5 prospects    7 employees  
 2 unemployed    4 promoted    6 retired

- 65.2** 1 b    2 e    3 d    4 a    5 f    6 c

- 65.3** 1 part-time    3 challenge    5 rise    7 over  
 2 course    4 market    6 her    8 apply

- |             |             |                     |  |
|-------------|-------------|---------------------|--|
| <b>65.4</b> | <i>Verb</i> | <i>General noun</i> | <i>Personal noun</i>                                 |
|             | promote     | promotion           | –  |
|             | employ      | employment          | employer (boss)/employee (worker)                    |
|             | resign      | resignation         | –  |
|             | retire      | retirement          | –  |
|             | train       | training            | trainer (gives the training) / trainee (receives it) |

**Unit 66****66.1** *Possible answers*

- 1 write: a letter, a report, a memo, a cheque  
 2 send: a letter, a report, a fax, an invoice  
 3 make: phone calls, products, the tea, mistakes  
 4 arrange: meetings, conferences, visits, training courses

- 66.2** 1 noticeboard    3 filing cabinet; briefcase    5 wastepaper basket/bin  
 2 assembly line    4 paperwork

- 66.3** 1 warehouse    3 goods    5 diary    7 retailer  
 2 automation    4 calendar    6 invoice    8 drawer

- 66.4** 1 manufactured    4 stored  
 2 fit    5 deliver ('send' would also be possible)  
 3 examines/checks

**Unit 67**

- 67.1** 1 loan    3 inflation    5 it breaks even  
 2 interest    4 aims/goals/objectives    6 recession

- 67.2** 1 gradual    3 thriving    5 aims  
 2 sharp    4 expanding    6 gone up

- 67.3** 1 rose    3 sharp fall    5 rose sharply  
 2 fell slightly    4 steady rise    6 rose

- 67.4** 1 public expenditure                      3 tax cuts                      5 raw material(s)  
 2 political/economic stability              4 interest/inflation rate\*              6 profit and loss  
 \*(Rate of inflation is also commonly used.)

## Unit 68

- 68.1** product, price, promotion, place
- 68.2** sales manager; sales figures; sales forecast; market share; market leader; market research; marketing manager; marketing department.  
 1 forecast                      3 figures                      5 research  
 2 manager; department              4 leader; share
- 68.3** 1 representative              3 products                      5 consumers  
 2 products                      4 competitors                      6 customers/clients
- 68.4**
- | <i>Noun</i> | <i>Adjective</i> | <i>Noun</i> | <i>Adjective</i> |
|-------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|
| excitement  | exciting         | prestige    | prestigious      |
| glamour     | glamorous        | luxury      | luxurious        |
| competition | competitive      | reliability | reliable         |
| fashion     | fashionable      | danger      | dangerous        |

## Unit 69

- 69.1** *Possible answers*  
 1 cards, musical instruments, board games  
 2 stamps, coins, antiques  
 3 hiking, rock climbing, jogging, hunting, camping
- 69.2** 1 photography                      4 jogging                      7 DIY  
 2 collecting antiques                      5 makes her own clothes  
 3 playing a musical instrument                      6 chess
- 69.3** 1 go                      3 made                      5 do                      7 joined  
 2 took up; gave it up                      4 collects                      6 play                      8 do

## Unit 70

- 70.1** head it; pass it; catch it; drop it; throw it; hit it; kick it
- 70.2** *Possible answers*  
 1 tennis, table tennis, squash, badminton (shuttlecock), cricket, baseball, hockey  
 2 football, rugby, American football, hockey, basketball  
 3 rugby, American football, cricket, baseball, basketball  
 4 football, rugby  
 5 football
- 70.3**
- | <i>Sport</i> | <i>Place</i> | <i>Equipment</i>  |
|--------------|--------------|---|
| swimming     | pool         | trunks (men); costume (women)                               |
| football     | pitch        | boots, shorts; goals; net (for the goal); whistle (referee) |
| motor racing | track        | crash helmet  |
| golf         | course       | clubs   |
| boxing       | ring         | shorts, boots, gloves, vest                                 |
| tennis       | court        | racket, shorts, net, training shoes                         |

- 70.4** 1 false (they are the crowd/spectators) 5 true  
 2 true 6 false (it is played on a court)  
 3 true 7 true  
 4 true 8 false (they wear a swimming costume)

## Unit 71

**71.1**

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Past participle</i>
win	won	won
lose	lost	lost
beat	beat	beaten
lead	led	led
catch	caught	caught
draw	drew	drawn

- 71.2** 1 nil-nil two-one four all 2 fifteen love forty thirty deuce

- 71.3** 1 beat 5 lost 9 set 13 match  
 2 penalty 6 won 10 lost 14 score  
 3 score 7 lost 11 set  
 4 extra time 8 won 12 tie-break

- 71.4** 1 true  
 2 false (it has a referee)  
 3 false (it is only decided on a tie-break if the score reaches 6-6)  
 4 true  
 5 true  
 6 false (it is still in progress)  
 7 true  
 8 false (if you lose you are out of the competition)

- 71.5** 1 rugby 3 tennis 5 motor racing 7 swimming  
 2 football 4 basketball 6 football 8 athletics

## Unit 72

- 72.1** 1 stalls 2 C 3 yes 4 no

- 72.2** 1 musical 3 the audience 5 director 7 reviews 9 to book  
 2 the cast 4 clap 6 critics 8 subtitles 10 stars

- 72.3** 1 *Dirty Harry* could be described as an action film or a thriller.  
 2 *Blade Runner* is a science fiction film.  
 3 *Four Weddings and a Funeral* is a comedy.  
 4 *Schindler's List* could be described as a war film or a thriller.  
 5 *Dances with Wolves* is a western.

## Unit 73

- 73.1** 1 Tolstoy – novelist 7 Verdi – composer  
 2 Wordsworth – poet 8 Mick Jagger – singer and songwriter  
 3 Ibsen – dramatist 9 Nascimento – singer-songwriter  
 4 Mishima – novelist 10 Paul Tortelier – cellist  
 5 Chekhov – dramatist 11 Paul Simon – singer and songwriter  
 6 Mozart – composer 12 Mark Knopfler – singer, songwriter, guitarist





## Unit 77

### 77.1 Possible answers

- |                    |                                      |                 |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 software         | 5 computer-literate                  | 9 laser printer |
| 2 a word processor | 6 keyboard                           | 10 laptop       |
| 3 floppy disk      | 7 a computer program/programmer/game | 11 spreadsheet  |
| 4 user-friendly    | 8 CD-ROM                             | 12 e-mail       |

- 77.2**
- |                                  |                             |         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------|
| 1 cut                            | 4 open a new document       | 6 copy  |
| 2 print                          | 5 open an existing document | 7 paste |
| 3 save the data in this document |                             |         |

- 77.3**
- |            |        |            |            |            |
|------------|--------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1 computer | 3 down | 5 back-up  | 7 cut      | 9 save     |
| 2 printed  | 4 save | 6 graphics | 8 graphics | 10 back-up |

## Unit 78

- 78.1**
- |           |           |              |         |              |
|-----------|-----------|--------------|---------|--------------|
| 1 Maths   | 3 Science | 5 Technology | 7 Art   | 9 French     |
| 2 History | 4 English | 6 Geography  | 8 Music | 10 Economics |

- 78.2**
- |                 |                     |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 3             | 4 16                | 7 They leave                    |
| 2 5             | 5 French and German | 8 Go to university or get a job |
| 3 comprehensive | 6 12                |                                 |

- 78.4**
- |                 |                 |             |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1 to school     | 3 to bed        | 5 to church |
| 2 into hospital | 4 to university |             |

## Unit 79

- 79.1**
- |                |               |                    |            |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------|------------|
| 1 medicine     | 3 agriculture | 5 business studies | 7 politics |
| 2 architecture | 4 psychology  | 6 history of art   | 8 law      |

- 79.2**
- |           |                  |                 |            |
|-----------|------------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1 a grant | 3 undergraduates | 5 graduates     | 7 research |
| 2 degree  | 4 lecturers      | 6 postgraduates | 8 lecture  |

- 79.3**
- |         |         |                    |         |
|---------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| 1 doing | 3 get   | 5 doing            | 7 make  |
| 2 get   | 4 go to | 6 doing/conducting | 8 lasts |

## Unit 80

- 80.1** 3, 9, 7, 8, 2, 6, 4, 1, 5

- 80.2**
- |              |             |                        |
|--------------|-------------|------------------------|
| 1 the police | 3 prisoners | 5 barristers (lawyers) |
| 2 the judge  | 4 the jury  | 6 criminals            |

- 80.3**
- |                     |         |            |                       |
|---------------------|---------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 broken; committed | 3 fine  | 5 guilty   | 7 convicted; sentence |
| 2 against           | 4 prove | 6 evidence | 8 offence             |

- 80.4**
- Yes
  - Visit the people who were broken into and take fingerprints if possible.
  - Probably not
  - burglary
  - No, not at 15.
  - Probably a suspended sentence (= the boys are free but if they commit another crime in the next year or two years, they will receive a much tougher punishment) unless the boys already have a record for burglary. In this case, they could be sent to a centre for young offenders.

## Unit 81

- 81.1**
- | <i>Crimes</i> | <i>People</i> | <i>Places</i>  |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| murder        | thief         | prison         |
| robbery       | barrister     | cell           |
| rape          | burglar       | court          |
| manslaughter  | judge         | police station |
| shoplifting   | criminal      |                |
|               | prisoner      |                |
|               | jury          |                |
- 81.2**
- |               |                            |                      |
|---------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 burglary    | 3 charged with shoplifting | 5 charged with theft |
| 2 with murder | 4 with manslaughter        |                      |
- 81.4**
- |                |              |              |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 carry        | 3 punishment | 5 defence    |
| 2 allowed/able | 4 spray      | 6 reduce/cut |

## Unit 82

- 82.1**
- | <i>Abstract noun</i> | <i>Person</i> | <i>Adjective</i> |
|----------------------|---------------|------------------|
| politics             | politician    | political        |
| democracy            | democrat      | democratic       |
| dictatorship         | dictator      | dictatorial      |
| socialism            | socialist     | socialist        |
| conservatism         | conservative  | conservative     |
| liberalism           | liberal       | liberal          |
- 82.2**
- |             |              |            |
|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 1 elections | 4 parliament | 7 majority |
| 2 Prime     | 5 system     | 8 form     |
| 3 votes     | 6 party      | 9 power    |

*Possible reasons to justify this system are:*

One single party has power, so there is little compromise which produces a strong government; there is a single set of policies; the government has a majority and so is relatively stable and does not need to call elections often.

## Unit 83

- 83.1**
- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1 identity/landing card           | 3 driving/TV licence                      |
| 2 birth/marriage/exam certificate | 4 application/enrolment/registration form |
- 83.2**
- |              |                             |                          |
|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 get/obtain | 4 sign                      | 7 enrolment/registration |
| 2 checked    | 5 runs out / expires; renew |                          |
| 3 fill in    | 6 queues                    |                          |
- 83.4**
- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 when were you born?        | 4 When did you arrive?  |
| 2 Where do you come from?    | 5 When are you leaving? |
| 3 Are you single or married? |                         |
- 83.5** *Problems mentioned were:*
- 1 long queues
  - 2 waiting in one queue, then you discover you should be in another queue
  - 3 delays e.g. in getting a new passport
  - 4 officials putting the wrong information on documents, which then need to be changed, e.g. driving licence
  - 5 officials losing information you have given them

- 6 being asked to explain the same information over and over again to different officials, especially over the telephone
- 7 spending a long time getting a document in one country, then you discover that nobody is interested in it when you arrive in another country
- 8 officials who act like policemen

## Unit 84

- 84.1**
- 1 ally = friendly country
  - 2 release = permit to go free
  - 3 conflict = strong disagreement
  - 4 troops = large group of soldiers
  - 5 invade = enter another country by force and in large numbers
  - 6 wound = injure from fighting
  - 7 territory = land controlled by a country
  - 8 ceasefire = stop fighting

- 84.2**
- 1 carry on fighting / continue to fight
  - 2 they will retreat
  - 3 run out of food
  - 4 mostly civilians
  - 5 release them

- 84.3**
- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>First mention</i> | <i>repeated as ...</i> |
| ordinary people      | civilians              |
| soldiers             | troops                 |
| shelling             | firing                 |
| hit                  | wounded                |
| allow them to enter  | let anyone in          |
| captured             | take control of        |
| soldiers             | army                   |

**84.4** *Possible answers*

- 1 Terrorists use hostages for bargaining, e.g. they release hostages if governments give them money or release political prisoners. Hostages also give the terrorists protection.
- 2 Some governments refuse on moral grounds, i.e. they believe it is wrong to bargain with hostages. Some governments believe that if you agree to terrorists demands on one occasion, terrorists will attack again.

## Unit 85

- 85.1**
- |                   |                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 the ozone layer | 5 industrial or human waste  |
| 2 global warming  | 6 tropical rainforests       |
| 3 acid rain       | 7 a bottle bank              |
| 4 exhaust fumes   | 8 natural or human resources |

- 85.2**
- |             |             |             |                      |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>Noun</i> | <i>Verb</i> | <i>Noun</i> | <i>Adjective</i>     |
| waste       | waste       | damage      | damaging             |
| protection  | protect     | environment | environmental        |
| destruction | destroy     | harm        | harmful (≠ harmless) |
| pollution   | pollute     | danger      | dangerous            |
| damage      | damage      | safety      | safe                 |

- 85.3**
- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 plants and animals   | 4 carbon dioxide           |
| 2 smoke from factories | 5 destroys the ozone layer |
| 3 the earth            |                            |



- 85.4** We should: recycle paper etc.; save/keep/protect tropical rainforests; plant more trees; save water and energy  
We shouldn't: throw away paper etc.; destroy the ozone layer; waste water and energy; cut down tropical rainforests

**85.5** 1 false    2 true    3 true    4 true    5 true

### Unit 86

- 86.1**
- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 boarding card    | 6 duty free        |
| 2 baggage reclaim  | 7 overhead locker  |
| 3 excess baggage   | 8 take-off         |
| 4 passport control | 9 departure lounge |
| 5 hand luggage     | 10 check-in        |

- 86.2**
- |                    |                            |                     |
|--------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 check-in         | 5 hand luggage             | 9 terminal building |
| 2 boarding card    | 6 overhead locker          | 10 baggage reclaim  |
| 3 excess baggage   | 7 runway                   |                     |
| 4 departure lounge | 8 stewards (or cabin crew) |                     |

- 86.3**
- |                 |          |           |          |
|-----------------|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1 took off      | 3 fasten | 5 landed  | 7 flight |
| 2 captain/pilot | 4 flew   | 6 get off |          |

### Unit 87

**87.1** 7, 9, 2, 4, 12, 8, 5, 6, 10, 11, 1, 3

**87.2** *Possible answers*

- 1 I'd like to book a double room for two nights for next Thursday and Friday, please? *or*  
Do you have a double room free for next Friday and Saturday?
- 2 Could I have my bill, please? *or* Could you order a taxi for me, please?
- 3 Could I have a call tomorrow morning at 7 a.m., please?
- 4 Could you put it on my bill, please?
- 5 I'm afraid there's something wrong with the shower in my room. *or*  
I'm afraid the shower in my room isn't working very well.
- 6 How do I get to the nearest bank from here? *or*  
Could you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please?

### Unit 88

- 88.1**
- |                     |             |          |          |
|---------------------|-------------|----------|----------|
| 1 great/lovely time | 4 a look    | 7 lost   | 10 spent |
| 2 sightseeing       | 5 souvenirs | 8 market | 11 taken |
| 3 packed            | 6 galleries | 9 go out |          |

**88.3** *Possible answers*

- 1 Yes, it's a great place.
- 2 Yes, it's very cosmopolitan.
- 3 Yes, it was absolutely packed.
- 4 Yes, the night-life is fantastic.
- 5 Yes, we had a great time.

## Unit 89

### 89.1 Possible answers

sunshine; suntan; suntan lotion; sun cream; sunburn; sunglasses; sunbed; sunbathe; sunlight; sunblock; sunset; sunrise; sunshade; sunstroke

- 89.2
- |                 |                  |            |               |
|-----------------|------------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 sandy beach   | 3 beach umbrella | 5 sunbathe | 7 big waves   |
| 2 suntan lotion | 4 rough sea      | 6 seaside  | 8 steep cliff |

- 1 to spend time on the beach
- 2 because they want a suntan
- 3 to protect yourself from the sun
- 4 to protect themselves and also help to get a suntan
- 5 very painful
- 6 surfing

- 89.3
- |                       |                |               |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 get away            | 3 quiet        | 5 walk/stroll |
| 2 country/countryside | 4 lie/sunbathe | 6 picnic      |

- 89.4
- |                     |                    |          |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------|
| 1 resort            | 3 lying/sunbathing | 5 picnic |
| 2 different/various | 4 rent             | 6 quiet  |

## Unit 90

- 90.1
- |      |      |      |      |       |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 1 at | 3 at | 5 on | 7 on | 9 on  | 11 in |
| 2 in | 4 in | 6 at | 8 at | 10 at | 12 on |

- 90.2
- |         |         |          |          |              |
|---------|---------|----------|----------|--------------|
| 1 by    | 3 since | 5 during | 7 in     | 9 throughout |
| 2 until | 4 for   | 6 for    | 8 during | 10 for       |

- 90.3
- |        |                       |         |
|--------|-----------------------|---------|
| 1 two  | 3 1963                | 5 ten   |
| 2 17th | 4 12 hours 30 minutes | 6 1960s |

- 90.4
- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 a few days ago     | 4 for ages        |
| 2 for the time being | 5 a long time ago |
| 3 recently/lately    |                   |

## Unit 91

- 91.1
- 1 four hundred and sixty-two
  - 2 two and a half
  - 3 two thousand three hundred and forty-five
  - 4 six point seven five
  - 5 nought point two five
  - 6 three and a third
  - 7 one million two hundred and fifty thousand
  - 8 ten point oh four
  - 9 forty-seven per cent
  - 10 the tenth of September *or* September the tenth
  - 11 the third of July *or* July the third
  - 12 six oh two eight four seven seven *or* double seven
  - 13 five degrees below zero *or* minus five degrees centigrade
  - 14 nineteen oh three *or* nineteen hundred and three
  - 15 eighteen seventy six

- 91.2** 1 thousand 4 twenty-five out of forty  
 2 the tenth of September 5 the thirty-first of August  
 3 two hundred and twenty 6 seven two three six oh nine

- 91.3** 1 59 2 192 3 60 4 5 5 8 6 15

## Unit 92

### 92.2 Possible questions

How tall is she?  
 What size shoes does she take?  
 How high is the mountain? / What's the height of the mountain?  
 How far is it from one side of the lake to the other?  
 How big is the lake? / What's the size of the lake?  
 How deep is it? / What's the depth of the lake?  
 How long is the pitch? / What's the length of the pitch?  
 How wide is the pitch? / What's the width of the pitch?

- 92.3** 1 No, he's quite thin. 5 No, it's a great place.  
 2 No, it's very shallow. 6 No, he's fairly short.  
 3 No, it's a tall building, actually. 7 No, it's a great big place.  
 4 No, it's quite narrow.

## Unit 93

- 93.1** 1 a rectangular table 6 an oval-shaped plate  
 2 a star-shaped ring 7 diamond-shaped earrings  
 3 a round window 8 a striped sofa  
 4 a check shirt 9 a pointed nose  
 5 a tartan tie 10 light grey jeans
- 93.2** 1 pencil/pen 6 the sea  
 2 salmon 7 an egg  
 3 football/rugby/hockey pitch or tennis court 8 a 'warning' triangle  
 4 carrot 9 a coat hanger  
 5 moon 10 a square

## Unit 94

- 94.1** 1 bottle 3 bowl 5 packet 7 tin  
 2 jug 4 box 6 bag 8 jar

### 94.2 Probable answers

The most surprising and unlikely are: a vase of coffee; a tube of cigarettes; a carton of toothpaste  
 It may also be quite unusual to have a 'glass of soup'.

- 94.3** 1 bunch (also 'bouquet') 7 group  
 2 gang 8 team  
 3 slices (also pieces and bits) 9 piece (also bit)  
 4 piece (also bit) 10 drop (also bit)  
 5 bit 11 pair  
 6 sheet (also piece and bit) 12 bit

**94.4** *Wrong answers*

- 1 none
- 2 sheet
- 3 gang (gang would be appropriate if you have a negative view of journalists)
- 4 group
- 5 none
- 6 piece

**Unit 95**

- 95.1**
- |            |         |          |                   |
|------------|---------|----------|-------------------|
| 1 ripe     | 4 water | 7 photo  | 10 washing powder |
| 2 new      | 5 sore  | 8 donkey | 11 doorbell       |
| 3 horrible | 6 fresh | 9 cod    | 12 silk           |

**95.2** *Possible answers*

- 1 looks sad.
- 2 looks/feels soft.
- 3 tastes horrible.

**95.3**

- 1 listening to; heard
- 2 heard
- 3 hear
- 4 look at
- 5 watch
- 6 listening
- 7 touch
- 8 press
- 9 hold
- 10 watch ('look' is also possible here but less likely); see

**Unit 96**

**96.1** *Possible answers*

Please queue other side  
Beware of pickpockets  
Mind the step  
Mind your head  
Sold-out  
Please do not disturb; Please do not feed the animals  
Out of order  
No exit; No smoking; No parking  
Keep right; Keep off the grass

**96.2** *Possible answers*

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 In a Bed & Breakfast (cheap hotel) | 5 Public telephone                   |
| 2 On the underground                 | 6 Theatre or cinema                  |
| 3 Customs at an airport or port      | 7 On the outside of a parcel/package |
| 4 Bank or post office                | 8 In a park                          |

- 96.3**
- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Please do not feed the animals | 5 Do not lean out of the window   |
| 2 Do not leave bags unattended   | 6 No smoking                      |
| 3 Please do not disturb          | 7 Keep right; No smoking; No exit |
| 4 No parking                     | 8 Mind your head                  |



## Unit 97

### 97.1 Possible answers

- |                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 a type of perfume or after shave | 6 programme               |
| 2 the key                          | 7 clothes or belongings   |
| 3 whisky                           | 8 a type of toy           |
| 4 knife and fork                   | 9 a suitcase              |
| 5 flour                            | 10 shampoo or conditioner |

### 97.2 Possible additions

- A: How many people were at the conference?  
B: Roughly 400.  
A: Did you enjoy it?  
B: Yes, sort of.  
A: You don't seem very sure.  
B: Well, there were some good things, but it was a bit too long.  
A: And did you go to John's talk?  
B: Naturally.  
A: How did it go?  
B: Well he was sort of nervous at the beginning, but he soon got more confident and I think it went really well.  
A: Did he have a big audience?  
B: About 75.  
A: That's good, isn't it?  
B: I think John was a bit disappointed – he wanted at least a hundred.

### 97.3 Possible answers

- |                |                        |                   |
|----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 more or less | 3 sort of              | 5 sort of         |
| 2 a bit        | 4 more or less/roughly | 6 a bit / sort of |

## Unit 98

- 98.1
- 1 American (because of vacation): fall
  - 2 American (because of high school): semester
  - 3 British (because of biscuits): sweets
  - 4 American (because of garbage): trashcan
  - 5 British (because of trousers): waistcoat
  - 6 American (because of truck): highway
  - 7 Probably American (because of apartment): elevator
  - 8 British (because of fortnight): holiday
  - 9 American (because of subway with this meaning): parking lot
  - 10 British (because of trainers): wardrobe

- |      |                    |                           |
|------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 98.2 | <i>British</i>     | <i>American</i>           |
|      | holiday            | vacation                  |
|      | trousers           | pants                     |
|      | flat               | apartment                 |
|      | trainers           | sneakers                  |
|      | secondary school   | high school               |
|      | biscuits           | cookies                   |
|      | rubbish            | garbage                   |
|      | main road          | highway                   |
|      | fortnight          | two weeks / fourteen days |
|      | underground (tube) | subway                    |

- 98.3** 1 gas/petrol 5 cab/taxi  
 2 freeway/motorway 6 sidewalk/pavement  
 3 gas station / petrol station or garage 7 truck driver / lorry driver  
 4 parking lot / car park

- 98.4** 1 queue 2 curtains 3 reverse charge call 4 barrister 5 bill

### Unit 99

- 99.1** *Formal* *Informal*  
 purchase handy  
 resume loo  
 thus terrific  
 commence quid  
 apprehend reckon  
 guy

purchase/buy; handy/convenient; loo/toilet; resume / start again; thus/therefore; terrific/fantastic; quid/pounds; commence/start; apprehend/catch; reckon/think; guy/man

- 99.2** 1 When are you going to pick up your bike?  
 2 Most of the kids are very bright.  
 3 I reckon it'll start pretty soon.  
 4 Do you fancy going out for a meal?  
 5 My flat is five minutes from where I work, so it's very handy.  
 6 What's up?  
 7 The guy in the market wanted 20 quid for this ring.  
 8 Where did you buy/get that book?  
 9 They'll never catch him.  
 10 I'm just going to the loo.

- 99.3** We regret to inform you that we are unable to lend you the sum of £500 that you require, but it may be possible to grant you a loan for part of the sum.

If you are still interested, would you like to contact our main office to arrange an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to discuss the matter further.

- 99.4** 1 attend (*fml*) = go to 4 bloke (*infml*) = man  
 2 a drag (*infml*) = boring 5 permitted (*fml*) = allowed  
 3 pinched (*infml*) = stolen

### Unit 100

- 100.1** 1 British Broadcasting Corporation 5 Prime Minister  
 2 Member of Parliament 6 United Nations  
 3 European Union 7 United Kingdom  
 4 Value Added Tax 8 Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries

- 100.2** Michael  
 Pete had a maths exam this afternoon and then he had to take his bike to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch TV while you're waiting for him and please help yourself to anything from the fridge. If there's a problem (e.g. Dr Brown rings about the flu vaccination) my phone number is next to the photos on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about 5 p.m.  
 Margaret (Peter's mum)

**100.3** 1 e.g. 2 etc. 3 St. 4 i.e. 5 Mr 6 Dr

**100.4** 1 e.g. 3 lab 5 etc. 7 ad(vert) 9 i.e.  
2 bike 4 board 6 flu 8 fridge 10 case

**100.5** PTO stands for 'please turn over' at the bottom of a page.  
RSVP means 'please reply' (from the French 'répondez, si'il vous plait') and is found at the bottom of formal invitations e.g. to a reception or wedding. The French do not use this expression or abbreviation however.  
c/o stands for 'care of'. You put this on an envelope when the person you write to does not live at the address on the letter but can be reached there.  
asap stands for 'as soon as possible' and is commonly used in faxes; the letters are read individually a-s-a-p.

# Phonetic symbols

## Vowel sounds

Symbol	Examples
/i:/	sleep me
/ɪ/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɔ:/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑ:/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear beer
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

## Consonant sounds

Symbol	Examples
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear



## Pronunciation problems

when 'a' is /eɪ/	when 'u' is /ʌ/	when 'i' is /aɪ/	when 'o' or 'oo' is /ʌ/
pa <u>ti</u> ent	p <u>u</u> ntual	pi <u>l</u> ot	gl <u>o</u> ves
<u>A</u> sia	lu <u>g</u> gage	vi <u>r</u> us	ov <u>o</u>
da <u>n</u> gerous	hu <u>n</u> gry	di <u>a</u> l	mo <u>n</u> th
pa <u>v</u> ement	dis <u>cu</u> ss	hepa <u>t</u> itis	fr <u>o</u> nt
ba <u>co</u> n	fu <u>n</u> ction	mi <u>n</u> us	mo <u>n</u> key
ph <u>ra</u> se	pu <u>b</u> lish	li <u>ce</u> nce	go <u>v</u> ernment
enga <u>ge</u> d	cu <u>sto</u> ms	di <u>e</u> t	wor <u>r</u> y
sunba <u>th</u> e	lu <u>ck</u>	stri <u>p</u> ed	floo <u>d</u>
late <u>ly</u>	ban <u>kr</u> upt	ti <u>n</u> y	bloo <u>d</u>

When ow is /əʊ/ e.g. row (= line), throw, blow, show, know, elbow

When ou or ow is /aʊ/ e.g. lounge, drought, row (= argument), towel, allowed, blouse, shower

When ou is /u:/ e.g. soup, group, through, wound, souvenir, routine

When ou is /ʌ/ e.g. cousin, couple, trouble, tough, rough, enough

When a, au or aw is /ɔ:/ e.g. draw, raw, law, stall, fall, cause, audience, launch, exhausted

When a or au is /ɑ:/ e.g. vase, calm, laugh, draughty, half

When a or u is /ɪ/ e.g. busy, business, minute, lettuce, purchase, surface, orange, damage

When o is /u:/ e.g. move, prove, improve, lose

When or or ur is /ɜ:/ e.g. purple, burn, burglary, worth, work, curtain

When ea is /e/ e.g. dreadful, jealous, health, dead, bread, instead, pleasant, weather, weapon

**Silent letters** (the underlined letters are silent):

island, knee, knife, know, knock, knowledge, wrong, wrist, muscle, castle, whistle, fasten, listen, bombh, lambh, thumbh, combh, scissors, psychology, honest, hour, cupboard, answer, guess, handsome, aisle, half, calm, christmas, mortgage

**Short syllables** (the underlined letters often disappear or are only a /ə/):

fattening; miserable; comfortable; fashionable; restaurant; strawberry, eventually, parliament, actually occasionally, prisoner, medicine, favourite, temperature, literature

**Problem pairs:**

quite /kwaɪt/ and quiet /'kwaɪət/      desert /'dezət/ and dessert /də'zɜ:t/

soup /su:p/ and soap /səʊp/

**Note:** The pronunciation of these letters at the end of words is often like this:

-ous /əs/ e.g. famous, dangerous, unconscious, ambitious, cautious, jealous

-age /ɪdʒ/ e.g. luggage, baggage, village, damage, cabbage, bandage, message, manage, garage

-able /əbl/ e.g. comfortable, reliable, suitable, unbreakable, vegetable, fashionable, miserable

-are /eə/ e.g. care, spare, square, beware, stare, fare, aware, rare(ly), barely

-ile /aɪl/ e.g. fragile, mobile, file, while

-tory/tary /təri/ e.g. directory, history, secretary, documentary

-ture /tʃə/ e.g. picture, signature, departure, capture, temperature, literature, feature

-ate /eɪt/ at the end of verbs e.g. educate, operate, communicate

-ate /ət/ at the end of nouns and adjectives e.g. graduate, approximate, certificate

# Index

- a bit 32, 97  
 accent 5 /'æksənt/  
 a long time ago 90  
 a long way 92  
 a sort of 97  
 about 97 /ə'baʊt/  
 above 31 /ə'baʊ/  
 absolutely 30 /æbsə'lʊ:tli/  
 abstract 73 /'æbstrækt/  
 academic ability 78  
   /ækə'demɪk/  
 accident 61 /'æksɪdənt/  
 according to 25, 74  
   /ə'kɔ:diŋ tu:/  
 accountant 64 /ə'kaʊntənt/  
 ache (n, v) 54 /eɪk/  
 acid rain 85 /'æsɪd reɪn/  
 across 31 /ə'krɒs/  
 action film 72 /'ækʃən/  
 actor 8 /'æktə/  
 ad/advert 100 /æd/ /'ædvɜ:t/  
 addition 91 /ə'dɪʃən/  
 adjective 4 /'ædʒɪktɪv/  
 admit 28 /əd'mɪt/  
 adolescence 47 /ædəl'esəns/  
 adolescent 47 /ædəl'esənt/  
 adverb 4 /'ædvɜ:b/  
 advertising 68 /'ædvətəɪzɪŋ/  
 advice 3, 27 /əd'vaɪs/  
 advise 3, 29, 63 /əd'vaɪz/  
 afford 53 /ə'fɔ:d/  
 afraid (of) 14, 45 /ə'freɪd/  
 after (+ -ing) 33 /'ɑ:ftə/  
 afterwards 33 /ɑ:ftəwəɪd/  
 against the law 80, 81  
   /ə'ɡentst/  
 agree (with) 14 /ə'ɡri:/  
 agriculture 39, 79  
   /'æɡrɪkʌltʃə/  
 AIDS 100 /eɪdz/  
 air force 64 /eə fɔ:s/  
 air steward(ess) 86  
   /'eə stju:wəd/  
 aisle 72 /aɪl/  
 alarm clock 11 /ə'lɑ:m/  
 alive 84 /ə'laɪv/  
 allow (sb. to do sth.) 28  
   /ə'lau/  
 allowed (to) 81  
 ally/allies 84 /'ælaɪ/ /'ælaɪz/  
 almost 32 /'ɔ:lməʊst/  
 alone 48 /ə'ləʊn/  
 along 31 /ə'lɒŋ/  
 also 34 /'ɔ:lsəʊ/  
 although 34 /ɔ:l'ðəʊ/  
 altitude 86 /'æltɪtju:d/  
 always 32 /'ɔ:lweɪz/  
 ambitious 44 /æm'bɪʃəs/  
 ambulance 55 /'æmbjələns/  
 American /ə'merɪkən/  
 and so on 100  
 anger 45 /'æŋɡə/  
 angry 45 /'æŋɡri/  
 ankle 42 /'æŋkl/  
 answer (n, v) 10 /'ɑ:nsə/  
 answering machine 76  
 ant 40 /ænt/  
 antiques 69 /æn'ti:ks/  
 anyway 33 /'eniweɪ/  
 apart from 35 /ə'pɑ:t/  
 apartment 89 /ə'pɑ:tmənt/  
 aperitif 59 /ə'perə'ti:f/  
 apologise (for) 14, 23, 29  
   /ə'pɒləʒaɪz/  
 apology 23 /ə'pɒləʒi/  
 appear 7 /ə'piə/  
 apple 58 /'æpəl/  
 application (form) 83  
   /æplɪ'keɪʃən/  
 apply (for) 14, 65 /ə'plai/  
 apprehend 99 /æprɪ'hend/  
 approximately 97  
   /ə'prɒksəmetli/  
 Arabic 41 /'ærəbɪk/  
 arable 39 /'ærəbəl/  
 architect 64 /'ɑ:kɪtekt/  
 architecture 79 /'ɑ:kɪtektʃə/  
 Argentina 41 /ɑ:ʒən'ti:nə/  
 Argentinian 41  
   /ɑ:ʒən'tɪniən/  
 arithmetic 91 /ə'rɪθmətɪk/  
 armchair 50 /ɑ:m'tʃeə/  
 armed forces 64 /ɑ:md  
   fɔ:sɪz/  
 army 64 /'ɑ:mi/  
 arrest 80 /ə'rest/  
 arrival 62, 86 /ə'raɪvəl/  
 art 73 /ɑ:t/  
 art gallery 73 /ɑ:t ɡæləri/  
 article (definite/indefinite) 4  
   /'ɑ:tɪkəl/  
 artist 73 /'ɑ:tɪst/  
 as 33, 36  
 as a result 36  
 as far as I'm concerned 25  
 as long as 35  
 as soon as 33  
 as well 34  
 ask 29 /ɑ:sk/  
 assemble 66 /ə'sembəl/  
 assembly line 66 /ə'sembli  
   laɪn/  
 asthma 54 /æsθmə/  
 astonished/astonishing 30  
   /əs'tɒnɪʃt/ /əs'tɒnɪʃɪŋ/  
 at (a time) 90 /ət/  
 at (the bus stop) 31  
 at Christmas / Easter / the  
   weekend 90  
 at least 1, 15  
 at night 15, 90  
 at the end 15  
 at the moment 15  
 athletics 70 /æθ'letɪks/  
 attack 84 /ə'tæk/  
 attend 63, 99 /ə'tend/  
 attorney (US) 80 /ə'tɜ:ni/  
 attractive 9 /ə'træktɪv/  
 aubergine 58 /'əʊbəʒi:n/  
 audience 72 /'ɔ:diəns/  
 aunt 46 /ɑ:nt/  
 Australia 41 /ɒs'treɪliə/  
 Australian 41 /ɒs'treɪliən/  
 automation 66 /ɔ:tə'meɪʃən/  
 avoid 28 /ə'vɔɪd/  
 aware (of) 14 /ə'weə/  
 awful 2, 30 /'ɔ:fəl/  
 BA 79 /bi: eɪ/  
 baby-sitter 11 /beɪbɪsɪtə/  
 back (v) 74 /bæk/  
 back-up copy 77  
 backache 54 /'bækeɪk/  
 badly- 12, 61

badminton 70 /'bædmɪntən/	birth certificate 83 /bɜːθ sə'tɪfɪkət/	break in(to) 17, 81
bag 94 /bæg/	bit 94 /bɪt/	break one's arm 55
baggage reclaim 86 /'bæɡɪdʒ/	bite your nails 42 /baɪt/	break the ice 20
bake 59 /beɪk/	bitter 59 /'bɪtə/	break the law 20, 80
balcony 49 /'bælkəni/	blame (sb. for) 29 /bleɪm/	break up 47
banana 58 /bə'nɑːnə/	bland 59 /blænd/	breathe 42 /briːð/
band 73 /bænd/	bleed 55 /bliːd/	breathing 54 /'briːðɪŋ/
bandage 55 /'bændɪdʒ/	bless you 26 /bles juː/	breeze 38 /briːz/
barely 32 /'beəli/	block of flats 49 /blɒk/	bricklayer 64 /'brɪkleɪə/
barrister 80 /'bærɪstə/	bloke 99 /bləʊk/	bridge 61 /brɪdʒ/
baseball 70 /'beɪsbɔːl/	blond(e) 43 /blɒnd/	briefcase 6, 66 /'briːfkeɪs/
basket 94 /'bɑːskɪt/	blood test 55 /bləd test/	bright (clever) 44, 99 /braɪt/
basketball 70 /'bɑːskɪtbɔːl/	blouse 56 /blauz/	bring 22 /brɪŋ/
bat 70 /bæt/	blow your nose 42	Britain 41 /'brɪtən/
bathroom 50, 98 /'bɑːθrʊm/	board (black/white) 6, 100 /bɔːd/	British 41 /'brɪtɪʃ/
batteries 52 /bætəriːz/	board (v) 86 /bɔːd/	broad shoulders 43 /brɔːd/
BBC 100 /biː biː siː/	board games 69	broadsheet 74 /'brɔːdʃiːt/
be back 76	board pen 6	broker 64 /'brəʊkə/
be down 67	boarding card 86 /'bɔːdɪŋ kɑːd/	brother-in-law 11, 46
be in power 82	boil 59 /bɔɪl/	bruise (n, v) 55 /bruːz/
be unable to 99	boiling 30, 38 /'bɔɪlɪŋ/	brush one's teeth 48, 51
be up 67	bon appetit 26 /bɒn æpəti/	BSc 79 /biː əs siː/
be/get delayed / held up 23	book (v) 59, 72, 87 /bʊk/	build 43 /bɪld/
beach /biːtʃ/ ~ umbrella 89	bookcase 50 /'bʊkkeɪs/	bullet/knife wound 55
bear 40 /beə/	boots 56 /buːts/	bunch (of flowers) 94 /bʌŋtʃ/
beard 43 /bɪəd/	born (be born) 47 /bɔːn/	bureaucracy 83 /bjuərəʊnkrəsi/
beat 71 /biːt/	borrow 6, 53 /'bɒrəʊ/	bureaucrat 83 /'bjuərəʊkræt/
beautiful 43 /'bjʊːtɪfəl/	both 35 /bəʊθ/	burglar 81 /'bɜːglə/ ~ alarm 81
because (of) 36 /bi'kɒz/	bother 48 /'bɒðə/	burglary 81 /'bɜːgləri/
bed & breakfast 87	bottle 94 /'bɒtl/	burgle 81 /'bɜːgl/
bedroom 50 /'bedrʊm/	bottom 42 /'bɒtəm/	burn 52 /bɜːn/
bedside table 51 /'bedsaɪd/	boutique 57 /buː'tiːk/	bus station/stop 62
bee 40 /biː/	bowl 94 /bəʊl/	business studies 79
beef 58 /biːf/	box 94 /bɒks/	butcher 57 /'bʊtʃə/
before (+ -ing) 33 /brɪ'fɔː/	box office 11	butterfly 40 /'bʌtəflaɪ/
behind 31 /brɪ'haɪnd/	boxing 70 /'bɒksɪŋ/	button 56 /'bʌtən/
beige 93 /beɪʒ/	boyfriend 47 /'bɔɪfrend/	by (e.g. Dickens, Spielberg, etc.) 15
belongs to 14, 49 /brɪ'lɒŋz tuː/	brackets 1, 4 /'brækɪts/	by accident 15
below 31 /brɪ'ləʊ/	brake (n, v) 10, 61 /breɪk/	by car/train/bus/plane 15
belt 56 /belt/	branch (e.g. of a tree) 39 /brɑːntʃ/	by chance 15
bend (n, v) 42, 61 /bend/	brand-new 12 /bræ'njuː/	by hand 15
besides 33 /brɪ'saɪdz/	Brazil 41 /brə'zɪl/	by mistake 15
best friend 46	Brazilian 41 /brə'zɪliən/	by myself 15, 48 /baɪ/
between 31 /brɪ'twiːn/	break (n) 78 /breɪk/	by 90
beware of 96 /brɪ'weə əv/	break a record 20	
bicycle 62 /'baɪsɪkəl/	break down 17, 61	
bid 74 /bɪd/	break even 67	
bike 100 /baɪk/		
bill 59, 87 /bɪl/		
billion 91 /'bɪljən/		
		cab (US) 98 /kæb/
		cabbage 58 /'kæbɪdʒ/

- cabin crew 86 /'kæbɪn kruː/  
 cable TV 75 /'keɪbəl/  
 calculator 66 /'kælkjəleɪtə/  
 calendar 66 /'kæləndə/  
 calf 58 /kɑːf/  
 call (n) 76 /kɔːl/  
 calm 5, 60 /kɑːm/  
 camel 40 /'kæməl/  
 camping 69 /'kæmpɪŋ/  
 campsite 89 /'kæmpsɑɪt/  
 can (n) 94 /kæn/  
 can't stand 28  
 cancel(led) 23 /'kænsəld/  
 candy (US) 98 /'kændi/  
 capital punishment 81  
     /'kæpɪtəl 'pʌnɪʃmənt/  
 captain 70 /'kæptɪn/  
 capture 84 /'kæptʃə/  
 car park 60, 61 /kɑː pɑːk/  
 careful 9 /'keəfəl/  
 careless 9 /'keələs/  
 carpenter 64 /'kɑːpəntə/  
 carpet 50 /'kɑːpɪt/  
 carrot 58 /'kærət/  
 carry 81 /'kæri/  
 carry on 16  
 carry out research (in/into)  
     79  
 carton 94 /'kɑːtən/  
 case 100 /keɪs/  
 cash desk 57 /kæʃ desk/  
 cassette 6 /kə'set/  
 cassette recorder 6  
 cast 72 /kɑːst/  
 castle 88 /'kɑːsəl/  
 catch (a ball) 20, 70 /kæʃ/  
 catch a bus/train 13, 20, 62  
 catch a cold 20  
 catch fish 39  
 cathedral 88 /kə'tʃiːdrəl/  
 cauliflower 58 /'kɒlɪflaʊə/  
 cause 36 /kɔːz/  
 CD-ROM 77 /siː diː rɒm/  
 ceasefire 84 /'siːsfareɪ/  
 cell 80 /sel/  
 cellist 73 /'ʃelɪst/  
 cello 73 /'ʃeləʊ/  
 central heating 49 /'sentrəl/  
 century 90 /'sentʃəri/  
 cereal 39 /'sɪəriəl/  
 certificate 83 /sə'tɪfɪkət/  
 chalk 6 /tʃɔːk/  
 chambermaid 87  
     /'tʃeɪmbəmeɪd/  
 championship 71  
     /'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp/  
 changing room 57  
 channel 75 /'tʃænəl/  
 charge 53 /tʃɑːdʒ/  
 charge sb. (with a crime) 80  
 chat 48 /tʃæt/  
 chat show 75  
 cheap 53 /tʃiːp/  
 check (adj) 93 /tʃek/  
 check (US) 59 /tʃek/  
 check (v) 66, 83 /tʃek/  
 check in (v) 87  
 check-in (desk) 86  
 cheeks 42 /tʃiːks/  
 cheerful 44 /'tʃiəfəl/  
 cheerio 26 /tʃiəri'əʊ/  
 cheers 26 /'tʃiəz/  
 chemist 54, 57 /'kemɪst/  
 cheque book 11 /tʃek bʊk/  
 cherry 58 /'tʃeri/  
 chess 69 /tʃes/  
 chest 42, 54 /tʃest/  
 chest of drawers 51 /tʃest əv  
     draʊz/  
 childhood 47 /'tʃaɪldhʊd/  
 chilly /'tʃɪli/  
 chin 42 /tʃɪn/  
 China 41 /'tʃaɪnə/  
 Chinese 41 /tʃaɪ'niːz/  
 chips 98 /tʃɪps/  
 choice 3 /tʃɔɪs/  
 choose 3 /tʃuːz/  
 chronological 1  
     /'krɒnə'lɒdʒɪkəl/  
 cinema 5, 72 /'sɪnəmə/  
 circle (theatre) 72 /'sɜːkəl/  
 circle 93 /'sɜːkəl/  
 circulation 74 /sɜːkjə'leɪʃən/  
 civilian 84 /sɪ'vɪliən/  
 clap 45, 72 /klæp/  
 classical music 73 /'klæsɪkəl/  
 clean (v, adj) 6, 10 /kliːn/  
 clean one's teeth 51  
 cleaner 48 /'kliːnə/  
 clever 44 /'klevə/  
 click 77 /klɪk/  
 clients 63 /klaɪənts/  
 close friend 46  
 closet (US) 98 /'klɒzɪt/  
 cloud 38 /klaʊd/  
 cloudy 38 /'klaʊdi/  
 clubs 70 /klʌbz/  
 coach (person) 70 /kəʊʃ/  
 coach (transport) 62 /kəʊʃ/  
 coal 39 /kəʊl/  
 coffee table 50  
 coin 53, 69 /kɔɪn/  
 cold (adj, n) 10 /kəʊld/  
 cold (illness) 54 /kəʊld/  
 collar 56 /'kɒlə/  
 colleague 46 /'kɒliːg/  
 college (US) 98 /'kɒlɪdʒ/  
 collide 55 /kə'laɪd/  
 colour 93 /'kʌlə/  
 comb (your hair) 5, 42  
     /kəʊm/  
 come 22 /kʌm/  
 come in 17  
 come into power 82  
 come out (publish) 74  
 come round (become  
     conscious) 55  
 come round (visit) 48  
 comedy 72, 75 /'kɒmədi/  
 comfortable 9 /'kʌmfətəbəl/  
 comma 4 /'kɒmə/  
 commence 99 /kə'mens/  
 commercial centre 60  
     /kə'mɜːʃəl sentə/  
 commercials 75 /kə'mɜːʃəlz/  
 commit a crime 80, 81  
     /kə'mɪt/  
 common sense 44 /'kɒmən  
     sens/  
 communism 82  
     /'kɒmjʊnɪzəm/  
 communist 82 /'kɒmjʊnɪst/  
 compare 35 /kəm'peə/  
 compared with/to 35  
 comparison 35  
     /kəm'pærɪsən/  
 competition 68, 71  
     /'kɒmpə'tɪʃən/  
 competitor 68 /kəm'petɪtə/  
 complain (to sb. about sth.)  
     14, 29 /kəm'pleɪn/  
 composer 73 /kəm'pəʊzə/



comprehensible 9  
/kəmprɪ'hentsəbəl/  
comprehensive 78  
/kəmprɪ'hensɪv/  
computer 66 /kəm'pjʊ:tə/  
computer-literate 77  
/'lɪtərət/  
conductor 73 /kən'dʌktə/  
confirm 29 /kən'fɜ:m/  
conflict 84 /'kɒnflɪkt/  
confused/confusing 30  
/kən'fju:zd/ /kən'fju:zɪŋ/  
congratulations 26  
/kəŋgræfju'leɪʃənz/  
consequently 36  
/kɒnsəkwəntli/  
conservation 85  
/kɒnsə'veɪʃən/  
conservatism 82  
/kən'sɜ:vətɪzəm/  
conservative 82  
/kən'sɜ:vətɪv/  
consumer 68 /kən'sju:mə/  
continent 37 /'kɒntɪnənt/  
convict sb. (of a crime) 80  
/kən'vɪkt/  
cooker 50 /'kʊkə/  
cookies (US) 98 /kʊki:z/  
copper 39 /'kɒpə/  
copy 77 /'kɒpi/  
correct (v) 6 /kə'rekt/  
cosmopolitan 88  
/kɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/  
cost 53 /kɒst/  
cost of living 53  
cough 5, 54 /kʊf/  
Could I speak to ...? 76  
Could I/you (possibly) ...?  
24  
country 37 /'kʌntri/  
country of origin 83  
country(side) 89  
/kʌntri:said/  
courgette 58 /kɔ:'ʒet/  
course (training) 19, 65  
/kɔ:s/  
course (food) 59 /kɔ:s/  
court (justice) 80 /kɔ:t/  
court (sport) 70 /kɔ:t/  
cousin 46 /'kʌzən/  
cowboy 72 /'kaʊbɔɪ/

crab 58 /kræb/  
crash helmet 70  
/kræʃ 'helmət/  
crash into 61  
creative 9 /kri'eɪtɪv/  
creature 40 /'kri:tʃə/  
credit card 11  
cricket 70 /'krɪkɪt/  
crime prevention 81 /kraɪm/  
critic 72, 74 /'krɪtɪk/  
crop 39 /krɒp/  
crowd 70 /kraʊd/  
crowded 30, 60 /'kraʊdɪd/  
cruise 86 /kru:z/  
cry 42 /kraɪ/  
cucumber 58 /'kju:kʌmbə/  
cupboard 50 /'kʌbəd/  
curly 43 /'kɜ:li/  
currency 53 /'kʌrənsi/  
current 75 /'kʌrənt/  
~ affairs 75  
curtain (theatre) 72 /'kɜ:tən/  
curtains 50 /'kɜ:tənz/  
cut 55, 74, 77 /kʌt/  
cut down 85  
daily 74 /'deɪli/  
dairy 39 /'deəri/  
damage 85 /'dæmɪdʒ/  
damaging 85 /'dæmɪdʒɪŋ/  
dangerous 9 /'deɪndʒərəs/  
dark 8, 43, 49, 93 /dɑ:k/  
darkness 8 /'dɑ:knəs/  
date 91 /deɪt/  
date of arrival/departure 83  
date of birth 83  
deaf 22 /def/  
deal with 63 /di:l/  
decade 90 /'dekeɪd/  
decide 28 /dɪ'saɪd/  
decimal 91 /'desɪməl/  
deep 92 /di:p/  
defeat 71 /dɪ'fi:t/  
defend 84 /dɪ'fend/  
defendant 80 /dɪ'fendənt/  
degree 79 /dɪ'ɡri:/  
degrees (e.g. centigrade) 38  
/dɪ'ɡri:z/  
delay(ed) 23 /dɪ'leɪd/  
deliver 66 /dɪ'lɪvə/  
democracy 82 /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/

democrat 82 /'deməkræt/  
dentist 64 /'dentɪst/  
deny 28 /dɪ'naɪ/  
department store 57  
/dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ:/  
departure 86 /dɪ'pɑ:tʃə/  
~ lounge 86  
depend (on) 14 /dɪ'pend/  
depressed/depressing 30  
/dɪ'prest/ /dɪ'presɪŋ/  
depth 92 /depθ/  
desert 37 /'dezət/  
design 64 /dɪ'zaɪn/  
desk 66 /desk/  
despite 34 /dɪ'spaɪt/  
dessert 59 /dɪ'zɜ:t/  
destroy 85 /dɪ'strɔɪ/  
dial 76 /daɪəl/  
diarrhoea 54 /daɪə'riə/  
diary 66 /'daɪəri/  
dictator 82 /dɪk'tetə/  
dictatorship 82 /dɪk'tetəʃɪp/  
diet (v, n) 10 /daɪət/  
different (from) 14, 35  
/'dɪfərənt/  
dimension 92 /daɪ'menʃən/  
dining room 11, 50  
director 72 /dɪ'rektə/  
directory enquiries 76  
/dɪ'rektəri ɪŋkwəri:z/  
dirt 9 /dɜ:t/  
dirty (≠ clean) 3, 9 /'dɜ:ti/  
disagree 7 /dɪsə'ɡri:/  
disappear 7 /dɪsə'pɪə/  
disappointed/disappointing  
30 /dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/  
/dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/  
disaster 37 /dɪ'zɑ:stə/  
discuss 8, 29 /dɪ'skʌs/  
discussion 8 /dɪ'skʌʃən/  
disease 54 /dɪ'zi:z/  
dishonest 7, 44 /dɪ'sɒnɪst/  
dishwasher 50 /'dɪʃwɒʃə/  
disk 77 /dɪsk/  
dislike 7 /dɪ'slaɪk/  
dismiss 65 /dɪ'smɪs/  
distance 92 /'dɪstəns/  
distribution 68  
/dɪstrɪ'bju:ʃən/  
divide (arithmetic) 91  
/dɪ'vaɪd/

- division 91 /di'vɪʒən/  
Do you think you could ...?  
24  
do/don't 96  
do (a bit of / lots of) hiking,  
etc. 69  
do (the) housework 19  
do a course 19, 65  
do a subject 19, 78  
do homework 3, 19  
do overtime 63  
do research (in/into) 19, 79  
do something/nothing 19  
do the ironing 48  
do the shopping 19, 48, 57  
do the washing 48  
do the washing-up 48  
do well 67  
do-it-yourself (DIY) 69  
document 77, 83  
/ˈdɒkjəmənt/  
documentary 75  
/ˈdɒkjəmentəri/  
don't worry 23  
doorbell 49 /ˈdɔːbel/  
double room 87  
/ˈdʌbəl ru:m/  
down (the computer's  
down) 77 /daʊn/  
down 31 /daʊn/  
down in the dumps 18  
downmarket 68  
/daʊnˈmɑːkɪt/  
Dr 100 /ˈdɒktə/  
drag 99 /dræg/  
drama series 75 /ˈdrɑːmə/  
dramatic 67 /drəˈmætɪk/  
dramatist 73 /ˈdræmətɪst/  
drapes (US) 50 /dreɪps/  
draughty 49 /ˈdraʊfti/  
draw (n, v) 71 /drɔː/  
drawers 66 /drɔːz/  
drawing 73 /ˈdrɔːɪŋ/  
dreadful 30 /ˈdredfəl/  
dream (n, v) 10 /dri:m/  
drinkable 9 /ˈdrɪŋkəbəl/  
driving licence 83 /ˈdraɪvɪŋ  
laɪsəns/  
drop (n) 94 /drɒp/  
drop (v) 52  
drought 37, 39 /draʊt/  
drummer 73 /ˈdrʌmə/  
drums 73 /drʌmz/  
dry weather 13  
dubbed 72 /dʌbd/  
due to 36, 62 /djuː tuː/  
dumping 85 /ˈdʌmpɪŋ/  
during 90 /ˈdʒʊərɪŋ/  
Dutch 41 /dʌʃ/  
duty-free 86 /ˈdʒuːti friː/  
duvet 51 /ˈdʒuːveɪ/  
e-mail 77 /ˈiː meɪl/  
e.g. 100 /iː ʤiː/  
eagle 40 /ˈiːɡəl/  
earache 54 /ˈɪərəɪk/  
early morning call 87  
early twenties/thirties etc.  
47  
earn 63 /ɜːn/  
earrings 11, 56 /ˈɪərɪŋz/  
earth 37 /ɜːθ/  
earthquake 37 /ˈɜːθkweɪk/  
easy-going 12 /ˈiːziː ɡəʊɪŋ/  
economic policy 82  
/iːkəˈnɒmɪk/  
economic stability 67  
economical 9 /iːkəˈnɒmɪkəl/  
economics 78 /iːkəˈnɒmɪks/  
economist 8 /iːˈkɒnəmɪst/  
editor 74 /ˈedɪtə/  
education 5, 78, 79  
/edʒʊˈkeɪʃən/  
effective 1 /ɪˈfektɪv/  
Egypt 41 /ˈiːʤɪpt/  
Egyptian 41 /ˈiːʤɪpən/  
elbow 42 /ˈelbəʊ/  
elderly 47 /ˈeldəli/  
elect 8, 82 /ɪˈlekt/  
election 8, 82 /ɪˈleɪʃən/  
electrical appliances 57  
/ɪˈlektɪrɪkəl əˈplaɪənsɪz/  
electrician 64 /elɪkˈtrɪʃən/  
elephant 40 /ˈelɪfənt/  
elevator (US) 98 /ˈelɪveɪtə/  
embarrassed/embarrassing  
30, 45 /ɪmˈbærəst/  
/ɪmˈbærəsɪŋ/  
embarrassment 45  
/ɪmˈbærəsmənt/  
emergency services 64  
/ɪˈmɜːdʒəntsɪ/  
emotional 44 /ɪˈməʊʃənəl/  
employer 65 /ɪmˈplɔɪə/  
employment 65  
/ɪmˈplɔɪmənt/  
engaged 76 /ɪŋˈɡeɪʤd/  
engineer 64 /endʒɪˈnɪə/  
engineering 79 /endʒɪˈnɪərɪŋ/  
enjoy 28 /ɪnˈʤɔɪ/  
enjoyable 9 /ɪnˈʤɔɪəbəl/  
enormous 30, 49 /ɪˈnɔːməs/  
enough 5, 56 /ɪˈnʌf/  
enrol 83 /ɪnˈrəʊl/  
enrolment form 83  
environment 85  
/ɪnˈvaɪəmənt/  
equator 37 /ɪˈkweɪtə/  
equipment 27, 70  
/ɪˈkwɪpmənt/  
etc. 100 /ɪtˈsetərə/  
EU 100 /iː juː/  
even 91 /iːvən/  
even though 34  
eventually 33 /ɪˈventʃʊəli/  
evidence 80 /ˈeɪdɪns/  
ex- 46 /eks/  
exam 100 /ɪɡˈzæm/  
examine 66 /ɪɡˈzæmɪn/  
except (for) 35 /ɪkˈsept/  
excess baggage 86  
/ekses ˈbæɡɪʤ/  
excited/exciting 30, 68  
/ɪkˈsaɪtəd/ /ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/  
excuse 23 /ɪkˈskjuː/  
excuse me 26 /ɪkˈskjuːz mi/  
exhaust fumes 85 /ɪɡˈzɔːst  
fjuːmz/  
exhausted/exhausting 30  
/ɪɡˈzɔːstəd/ /ɪɡˈzɔːstɪŋ/  
exhibition 73 /eksɪˈbɪʃən/  
expand 67 /ɪkˈspænd/  
expecting (a baby) 47  
/ɪkspekɪŋ/  
expect (think) 28 /ɪkˈspekt/  
expenditure 67 /ɪkˈspendɪtʃə/  
expensive 53 /ɪkˈspensɪv/  
expire 83 /ɪkˈspaɪə/  
explain 29 /ɪkˈspleɪn/  
extent 25 /ɪkˈstent/  
extra time 71 /ˈekstrə taɪm/  
extract 39 /ˈekstrækt/  
extreme 82 /ɪkˈstriːm/

extremely 32 /ɪk'stri:mli/	filing cabinet 66 /'faɪlɪŋ 'kæbɪnət/	for one thing 33
eyebrows 42 /'aɪbraʊz/	fill in (a form) 83	for the time being 90
factory 60, 85 /'fæktəri/	film star 11 /fɪlm stɑː/	force (sb. to do sth.) 28 /fɔːs/
fair 43 /feə/	final score 71 /'faɪnəl skɔː/	forehead 42 /'fɒrɪd/
fairly 32 /'feəli/	finally 33 /'faɪnəli/	foreign news 74 /'fɒrɪn/
fall (n, v) 67 /fɔːl/	finance (v) 67 /'faɪnəns/	foreign policy 82
fall asleep 48 /fɔːl/	find out 16	forest 37 /'fɒrɪst/
fall in love 47 /fɔːl/	fine (n) 80 /faɪn/	forget 28 /fə'get/
fall over 16 /fɔːl/	finger 2, 42 /'fɪŋɡə/	form (a government) 82 /fɔːm/
fall slowly/sharply 2 /fɔːl/	finish 28 /'fɪnɪʃ/	fortnight 90 /'fɔːtnaɪt/
fall (n) (US) 98 /fɔːl/	fire (v) 84 /faɪə/	fortunately 48 /'fɔːtʃənətli/
falls 37 /fɔːlz/	fire brigade 64 /faɪə brɪgeɪd/	fountain 88 /'faʊntɪn/
family name 46	firefighter 64 /'faɪəfaɪtə/	fraction 91 /'frækʃən/
famous 9 /'feɪməs/	first aid 11	fragile 96 /'frædʒaɪl/
fancy 99 /'fænsi/	first class 12	France 41 /frɑːns/
far 92 /fɑː/	first name 46	freelance 74 /'friːləns/
fare 62 /feə/	first of all 33	freeway (US) 98 /'friːweɪ/
farewell 26 /feə'wel/	first(ly) 33 /fɜːstli/	freezing 30, 38 /'friːzɪŋ/
farmer 8 /'fɑːmə/	fishermen 39 /fɪʃəmən/	French 41, 78 /frentʃ/
farming 39 /'fɑːmɪŋ/	fishing 39 /'fɪʃɪŋ/	french fries (US) 98
fascinated/fascinating 30 /'fæsɪneɪtəd/ /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/	fishing boat 39	frequently 32 /'friːkwəntli/
fascism 82 /'fæʃɪzəm/	fit 56, 64, 66 /fɪt/	fresh 59 /frefʃ/
fascist 82 /'fæʃɪst/	fitting room 57 /'fɪtɪŋ rʊm/	fridge (refrigerator) 50, 100 /'frɪdʒ/
fashion 68 /'fæʃən/	five-pound (note) 12	friendly 44 /'frendli/
fashionable 68 /'fæʃənəbəl/	fix up 99 /fɪks/	frightened/frightening 30 /'fraɪtənd/ /'fraɪtənɪŋ/
fasten 5 /'fɑːsən/	flats 49 /flæts/	front door 49
fasten your seat belt 61, 86	flexi-time 63 /'fleksɪtaɪm/	front garden 49
fat 43, 92 /fæt/	flexible 44 /'fleksɪbəl/	fruit 58 /fru:t/
father-in-law 11, 46	flight 62, 86 /flaɪt/	fry 59 /fraɪ/
fattening 5, 59 /'fætənɪŋ/	flood 37 /flʌd/	frying pan 50
fatty 59 /'fæti/	floor 49 /flɔː/	full (of) 14 /fʊl/
faucet (US) 98 /'fɔːsɪt/	floppy disk 77 /'flɒpi disk/	full board 87
favourite 75 /'feɪvərɪt/	floral 93 /'flɔːrəl/	full name 46
fear 45 /fɪə/	flu (influenza) 54, 100 /fluː/	full stop 4
features 74 /'fi:tʃəz/	fly 40, 62 /flaɪ/	full up 62
feel (n, v) 95 /fi:l/	fog 38 /fɒɡ/	full-time 12
feel like ... 18, 28	foggy 38 /'fɒɡi/	fully aware 13
feel sick 54	fold your arms 42	fully-booked 87
feels + adj; feels like + noun 95	food mixer 50	furniture 27 /'fɜːnɪtʃə/
fence 49 /fens/	foot 42 /fʊt/	further 99 /'fɜːðə/
field 60 /'fi:ld/	football 70 /'fʊtbɔːl/	furthermore 34 /'fɜːðə'mɔː/
fifteen-minute (drive) 12	footpath 60 /'fʊtpaːθ/	
fifty-pence piece 53	for 90 /fɔː/	gain (weight) 3 /geɪn/
fight crime 81 /faɪt/	for a start 18	gale 38 /geɪl/
file (for papers) (n, v) 6 /faɪl/	for a walk/swim/drive/run 15	game 71 /geɪm/
files 66 /faɪəlz/	for ages 90	gang 94 /gæŋ/
	for another thing 33	garage 49 /'gærɪdʒ/
	for example 100	
	for good 18	

- garbage (US) 98 /'gɑːbɪdʒ/  
gas(oline) (US) 98 /'gæsəliːn/  
gate 49, 60 /geɪt/  
generous 44 /'dʒenərəs/  
geography 78 /dʒi'ɒɡrəfi/  
German 41 /'dʒɜːmən/  
Germany 41 /'dʒɜːməni/  
get (arrive/become/fetch/  
obtain/buy/receive) 21  
get a move on 18  
get away 89  
get better/worse/hot, etc. 21  
get by 17  
get changed 21  
get divorced 21  
get dressed 7, 21, 56  
get home 48  
get in 62  
get in touch with 99  
get in(to) a car 13, 61  
get into bed 51  
get lost 21, 88  
get married (to) 14, 21, 47  
get off/on (a bus) 13, 62  
get on (make progress) 21  
get on (with sb.) 16, 21  
get out (of a car) 62  
get over (an illness) 16  
get ready 21  
get rid of 21  
get through (make contact)  
76  
get through (finish) 16  
get through (pass an exam)  
16  
get to know 21  
get to sleep 48  
get to work 48  
get undressed 7, 21  
get up 21, 48  
giraffe 40 /dʒɪ'rɑːf/  
girlfriend 47 /'gɜːlfrend/  
give (a lecture) 79 /ɡɪv/  
give one's regards to sb. 20  
give sb. a hand 20  
give sb. a push 10  
give sb. a ring 10, 20, 76  
give sb. the sack 65  
give up sth. 16, 28, 69  
glamour 68 /'glæmə/  
glamorous 68 /'glæməərəs/  
glance (at) (n, v) 45 /glɑːns/  
global warming 85 /'gləʊbəl  
wɔːmɪŋ/  
gloves 2 /glʊvz/  
go (travel) 22  
go (leads to / takes you) 22  
go (out) for a  
walk/meal/drink etc. 22  
go ahead 18  
go along here 61  
go bald/deaf/grey/mad 22  
go bankrupt 22  
go into hospital 78  
go off (explode / go bad /  
ring) 16  
go on a (training) course 65  
go on a diet 10  
go on a tour of ... 88  
go on holiday 89  
go out 88  
go out with sb. 47  
go shopping/sightseeing etc.  
22, 57  
go to bed 48  
go to church/school/college  
78  
go to sleep 51  
go to university 47, 78, 79  
go up (increase) 16  
go upmarket/downmarket  
68  
goat 40 /ɡəʊt/  
gold 39 /ɡəʊld/  
golf /ɡɒlf/ ~ course 70  
good (at) 14  
good fun 72  
good-looking 12, 43  
good luck 26  
good morning/afternoon/  
evening/night 26  
good value 68  
goods 66 /ɡʊdz/  
gorilla 40 /ɡə'rɪlə/  
government 82 /'ɡʌvənmənt/  
gradual(ly) 67 /ɡrædʒuəl/  
graduate 79 /'ɡrædʒuət/  
grammar school 78  
grandfather 46  
/'grændfɑːðə/  
grandmother 46  
/'grændmʌðə/  
grant 79 /ɡrɑːnt/  
grapes 58 /ɡreɪps/  
graphics 77 /'ɡræfɪks/  
grass 39 /ɡrɑːs/  
great 13, 30, 92 /ɡreɪt/  
Greece 41 /ɡriːs/  
Greek 41 /ɡriːk/  
green beans 58  
greengrocer 57 /'ɡriːnɡrəʊsə/  
greens 85 /ɡriːnz/  
greetings 26 /ɡriːtɪŋz/  
grey 93 /ɡreɪ/  
grill 59 /ɡrɪl/  
gripping 72 /'ɡrɪpɪŋ/  
ground 39 /ɡraʊnd/  
ground floor 49  
group (collection) 94 /ɡruːp/  
group (pop group) 73  
grow 39, 67 /ɡrəʊ/  
grow up 17, 47 /ɡrəʊ/  
guess (n, v) 10 /ɡes/  
guest house 87 /ɡest/  
guidebook 88 /'ɡaɪdbʊk/  
guilty 80 /'ɡɪlti/  
guitar 69, 73 /ɡɪ'tɑː/  
guitarist 73 /ɡɪ'tɑːrɪst/  
guns 84 /ɡʌnz/  
guy 99 /ɡaɪ/  
guys (US) 98 /ɡaɪz/  
hair 27 /heə/  
hairy (chest) 43 /'heəri/  
half 91 /hɑːf/  
half board 87  
hand 42 /hænd/  
hand luggage 86  
handsome 43 /'hændsəm/  
handy 99 /'hændi/  
hang on 18  
hang sth. up 56  
hangover 54 /'hæŋəʊvə/  
happiness 8, 45 /'hæpɪnəs/  
Happy Birthday / Christmas  
/ New Year 26  
hard disk 77  
hard luck 26  
hard work 13  
hardly 32 /'hɑːdli/  
hardly ever 32  
hardware 77 /'hɑːdweə/



hardworking 44 /hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ/	high 92 /haɪ/	How tall is he/she? 43
harmful 85 /'hɑ:mfəl/	high school (US) 98	How's it going? 22
harvest 39 /'hɑ:vɪst/	highlighter pen 6 /'haɪlaɪtə/	however 34 /haʊ'evə/
hate 28 /heɪt/	highlights 75 /'haɪlaɪts/	huge 30, 49 /hju:ʤ/
have a baby 19	highly (unlikely) 13 /'haɪli/	human resources 85 /'hju:mən rɪzɔ:sɪz/
have a break 48	highway (US) 98 /'haɪweɪ/	humid 38 /'hju:mɪd/
have a dream 10	hijacking 84 /haɪdʒækɪŋ/	humidity 38 /hju:'mɪdəti/
have a drink 19	hiking 69, 89 /'haɪkɪŋ/	hundred 91 /'hʌndrəd/
have a go 22	hips 42 /hɪps/	hunting 69 /'hʌntɪŋ/
have a good/great time 19, 88	hire 86 /haɪə/	hurricane 37, 38 /'hʌrɪkən/
have a lie-in 48	historical monuments 88	hurry up 16 /'hʌri/
have a look 10, 50	history 78 /'hɪstəri/	hurt (oneself) 54 /hɜ:t/
have a nice weekend 26	history of art 79	hyphen 4 /'haɪfən/
have a party 19	hit 70 /hɪt/	
have a rest 10, 19, 48	hit (affect badly) 74 /hɪt/	I agree with you 25
have a shower/bath/wash/ shave 19, 48	hobby 69 /'hɒbi/	I beg your pardon 23, 26
have a word (with) 99	hockey 70 /'hɒki/	I don't mind 24
have a(n) early/late night 48	hold (an election) 82 /həʊld/	I don't think ... 25
have breakfast 48	hold 95 /həʊld/	I regret to inform you 99
have friends for dinner 48	hole punch (n, v) 6 /həʊl/	I think you're right 25
have something to eat 19	holiday pay 63 /'hɒlədeɪ/	I was wondering if ...? 24
have something/nothing in common 35	Holland 41 /'hɒlənd/	I won't be long 23
hay fever 54 /heɪ fi:və/	home news 74	I'd love to 24
head (v) 70 /hed/	homeless 9 /'həʊmləs/	I'd prefer to / I'd rather ... 24
headache 54 /'hedeɪk/	homesick 3 /'həʊmsɪk/	
headline 74 /'hedlaɪn/	homework 27 /'həʊmwɜ:k/	I'll clear it up 23
headphones 27 /'hedfəʊnz/	honest 44 /'ɒnɪst/	I'll leave it 57
health 54 /helθ/	hoover 51 /'hu:və/	I'll sort it out 23
healthy (economy) 67 /'helθi/	hope 28 /həʊp/	I'll take it/them 57
hear 95 /hɪə/	horror film 72 /'hɒrə/	I'm (terribly/very/so) sorry 23
hearing 95 /'hɪərɪŋ/	hospitality 23 /hɒspɪ'tæləti/	
heart 54 /hɑ:t/	hostage 84 /'hɒstɪʤ/	I'm afraid I can't 24
heart attack 54	household (goods) 57 /'haʊshəʊld/	I'm afraid not 24
heat (v) 49 /hi:t/	housework 3, 27, 51 /'haʊswɜ:k/	I'm being served 57
heat (n) 38 /hi:t/		I'm just looking 57
heavy rain 13, 38	How about ...? 24	I'm looking for a ... 57
heavy smoker 13	How are you getting on? 21	I'm sorry I'm late 23
heavy traffic 13	How are you? 26	i.e. 100 /aɪ i:/
Hebrew 41 /'hi:bru:/	How do I get to ...? 87	ic(e)y 38 /aɪs/
hedge 60 /hedʒ/	How do you do? 26	ice 38 /aɪs/
heel 42 /hi:l/	How do you feel about ...? 25	ice hockey 70 /aɪs/
height 43, 92 /haɪt/	How do you pronounce ...? 6	icons 77 /'aɪkɒnz/
held up 23 /held/	How do you spell ...? 6	identity card 83 /aɪ'dentəti kɑ:d/
help yourself 24	How do you use ...? 6	idiom 4 /'ɪdiəm/
helpful 9 /'helpfəl/	How long/tall/wide is ...? 92	if you like 24 /ɪf/
hepatitis 54 /hepə'taɪtɪs/	How much does he/she weigh? 43	illegal 7, 80, 81 /ɪ'li:gəl/
		illegible 7 /ɪ'ledʒəbəl/
		illness 54 /ɪ'lɪnəs/
		image 68 /'ɪmɪʤ/

imagine 28 /ɪ'mædʒɪn/  
 impatient 7 /ɪm'peɪfənt/  
 impolite 3, 7 /ɪmpəl'aɪt/  
 impossible 7 /ɪm'pɒsəbəl/  
 improve 8 /ɪm'pru:v/  
 improvement 8  
     /ɪm'pru:vmənt/  
 in (a period) 90  
 in (Africa) 31  
 in a good mood 52  
 in a mess 7  
 in a moment 15  
 in a newspaper/magazine 15  
 in addition 34  
 in advance 59, 72, 87  
 in business 15  
 in case 35  
 in charge of 63, 65  
 in front of 31  
 in good/bad condition 49  
 in my opinion 25  
 in other words 100  
 in power 82  
 in recession 67  
 in short supply 39  
 in spite of 34  
 in the countryside 60  
 in the dark suit / red dress  
     15  
 in the end 15, 33  
 in the long term 18  
 in the morning/afternoon/  
     evening 15  
 in the short term 18  
 in the wild 40  
 in time 15  
 in your twenties/thirties etc.  
     47  
 income 63 /'ɪŋkəm/  
 income tax 11, 63  
 incomprehensible 9  
     /ɪnkəmprɪ'hensəbəl/  
 incorrect 7 /ɪnkər'ekt/  
 increase (n, v) 10 /'ɪnkri:s/  
     /ɪn'kri:s/  
 incredibly 32, 53  
     /ɪn'kredɪbli/  
 industrial 9 /ɪn'dʌstriəl/  
 infinitive 4 /ɪn'fɪnətɪv/  
 inflation 67 /ɪn'fleɪʃən/  
 inflexible 9, 44 /ɪn'fleksəbəl/

inform 8 /ɪn'fɔ:m/  
 information 8, 27  
     /ɪnfə'meɪʃən/  
 information technology 78  
 inherit 46 /ɪn'herɪt/  
 initiative 44 /ɪ'nɪʃətɪv/  
 injection 54 /ɪn'ɟekʃən/  
 injure 54 /'ɪnɟə/  
 injury 55 /'ɪnɟəri/  
 innocent 80 /'ɪnəsənt/  
 insect 40 /'ɪnsɛkt/  
 insensitive 44 /ɪn'sentsətɪv/  
 insist (on) 29 /ɪn'sɪst/  
 inspect 66 /ɪn'spekt/  
 instead 48 /ɪn'sted/  
 interest 67 /'ɪntrəst/  
 interest rate 67  
 interested (in) 5, 14, 30  
     /'ɪntrəstɪd/  
 interesting 30 /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/  
 internet 77 /'ɪntənət/  
 into 31 /'ɪntu/  
 invade 84 /ɪn'veɪd/  
 investigate 80 /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/  
 investment 67 /ɪn'vestmənt/  
 invisible 7 /ɪn'vɪzəbəl/  
 invoice 66 /'ɪnvɔɪs/  
 involve 63, 65 /ɪn'vɒlv/  
 iron 39, 51 /aɪən/  
 ironing 48 /'aɪənɪŋ/  
 irregular (verbs) 7 /ɪ'regjələ/  
 Is that ...? (phone) 76  
 island 37 /'aɪlənd/  
 Israel 41 /'ɪzreɪl/  
 Israeli 41 /ɪz'reɪli/  
 it doesn't matter 23  
 Italian 41 /ɪ'tæliən/  
 Italy 41 /'ɪtəli/  
 item 94 /'aɪtəm/  
  
 jacket 56 /'ɟækɪt/  
 Japan 5, 41 /ɟəpæn/  
 Japanese 5, 41 /ɟəpə'ni:z/  
 jar 94 /ɟɑ:/  
 jealous 45 /'ɟeləs/  
 jealousy 45 /'ɟeləsi/  
 jeans 27, 56 /ɟi:nz/  
 jobless 9 /'ɟɒbləs/  
 jog 8 /ɟɒg/  
 jogging 8, 69 /ɟɒgɪŋ/  
 join (a club) 69 /ɟɔɪn/

join (the army/the police) 64  
 journalist 74 /'ɟɜ:nlɪst/  
 joystick 77 /'ɟɔɪstɪk/  
 judge 80 /ɟʌɟ/  
 jug 94 /ɟʌg/  
 jumper 56 /'ɟʌmpə/  
 junction 61 /'ɟʌŋkʃən/  
 jungle 37 /'ɟʌŋɡəl/  
 jury 80 /'ɟʊəri/  
 just as 33  
 just round the corner 92  
  
 keen (on) 14 /ki:n/  
 keep (going/getting/losing)  
     20, 61 /ki:p/  
 keep + noun/pronoun +  
     adjective 20  
 keep a record 20  
 keep an eye on sth./sb. 18  
 keep in touch 20  
 keep off the grass 96  
 keep right/left 96  
 kettle 50 /'ketəl/  
 key (adj) 74 /ki:/  
 keyboard 66, 77 /'ki:bɔ:d/  
 kick 70 /kɪk/  
 kids 99 /kɪdz/  
 kind 44 /kaɪnd/  
 kitchen 50 /'kɪʃɪn/  
 knee 5, 42 /ni:/  
 knitting 69 /'nɪtɪŋ/  
 knock (on a door) 45 /nɒk/  
 knock oneself unconscious  
     55  
 knock-out 71 /'nɒkəut/  
 knowledge 27 /'nɒlɪɟ/  
 knowledgeable 9  
     /'nɒlɪɟəbəl/  
 Korea 41 /kə'riə/  
 Korean 41 /kə'riən/  
  
 lab 100 /læb/  
 labour 67 /'leɪbə/  
 lake 37 /leɪk/  
 lamb 40, 58 /læm/  
 lamp 50, 51 /læmp/  
 land (v) 86 (n) 39 /lənd/  
 landing card 83, 86  
 landlord 49 /'lændlə:d/  
 landscape (painting) 73  
     /'lændskeɪp/

- lane 61 /leɪn/  
 language lab 100 /'læŋgwɪdʒ  
 læb/  
 laptop 77 /'læptɒp/  
 laser printer 77 /'leɪzə/  
 last (v) 79 /lɑːst/  
 last 90 /lɑːst/  
 late arrival 62  
 late at night 81 /leɪt/  
 late twenties/thirties etc. 47  
 lately 90 /'leɪtli/  
 latest 71 /'leɪtɪst/  
 laugh (n, v) 10, 42 /lɑːf/  
 launch 68 /lɔːnʃ/  
 law 79 /lɔː/  
 law and order 3, 80  
 lawyer 64 /'lɔːə/  
 lazy 44 /'leɪzi/  
 lead 71 /liːd/  
 lead (electrical) 6 /liːd/  
 lead to 36  
 league 71 /liːg/  
 lean 59 /liːn/  
 leave a job (resign) 65 /liːv/  
 leave a message 76  
 leave home/work (depart)  
 48  
 leave lights on 81  
 leave out (omit) 17  
 leave sb. (permanent  
 separation) 47  
 leave sth. behind (forget  
 sth.) 52  
 leaves (on a tree) 39 /liːvz/  
 lecture 79 /'lektʃə/  
 lecturer 64, 79 /'lektʃərə/  
 left-wing 82 /leftwɪŋ/  
 lemon 58 /'lemən/  
 lend 53 /lend/  
 length 92 /leŋkθ/  
 leopard 40 /'lepəd/  
 lesson 78 /'lesən/  
 let (sb. do sth.) 28 /let/  
 lettuce 58 /'letɪs/  
 liberal 82 /'lɪbərəl/  
 liberalism 82 /'lɪbərəlɪzəm/  
 library 60 /'laɪbrəri/  
 licence 75 /'laɪsəns/  
 lie (on the beach) 89 /laɪ/  
 lie down 16, 17  
 lie in bed 48  
 lift 49, 87, 98 /lɪft/  
 light (colour) 93 /laɪt/  
 lightning 38 /'laɪtnɪŋ/  
 like 28, 95 /laɪk/  
 line (phone) 76 /laɪn/  
 line (US) 62 /laɪn/  
 line judge 70  
 lion 40 /laɪən/  
 lips 42 /lɪps/  
 listen (to) 14, 95 /'lɪsən/  
 literature 73 /'lɪtrətʃə/  
 live (adj) 75 /laɪv/  
 lively 88 /'laɪvli/  
 liver 54 /'lɪvə/  
 living room 50 /'lɪvɪŋ/  
 loan 67 /ləʊn/  
 lobster 58 /'lɒbstə/  
 local call 76 /'ləʊkəl/  
 lock 7 /lɒk/  
 long 92 /lɒŋ/  
 long distance call 76  
 loo 99 /luː/  
 look (at) 95 /lʊk/  
 look after sth./sb. 16, 64  
 look round (e.g. the shops)  
 88  
 look up (a word) 6, 16  
 looks + adj; looks like +  
 noun 95  
 lorry 61, 62 /'lɒri/  
 lose (a game) 3, 71 /luːz/  
 lose sth. (e.g. money) 52  
 lose weight 3  
 loss 67 /lɒs/  
 lounge 50 /laʊndʒ/  
 love (tennis) 71, 91 /lʌv/  
 love 28 /lʌv/  
 luggage 27, 86 /'lʌɡɪdʒ/  
 lung 54 /lʌŋ/  
 lung cancer 54  
 luxury 68 /'lʌkʃəri/  
 luxurious 68 /lʌg'ʒʊəriəs/  
 MA 79 /em eɪ/  
 machine 5 /mə'ʃiːn/  
 mad about sb./sth. 69  
 main course 59  
 main road 61  
 maintain 1 /meɪn'teɪn/  
 majority 82, 91 /mə'dʒɔːrəti/  
 make a decision 2, 19  
 /meɪk/  
 make a loss 67  
 make a meal of 19  
 make a mess 2  
 make a mistake 2, 13, 19  
 make a profit 67  
 make coffee 50  
 make do (with) 18  
 make friends 19  
 make it 18  
 make money 19  
 make my own  
 breakfast/dinner 48  
 make my own clothes 69  
 make notes 79  
 make (sb. do sth.) 28  
 make up (a story) 17  
 make up your mind 18  
 manage (be able to) 28  
 /'mænɪdʒ/  
 manage (a shop) 8 /'mænɪdʒ/  
 management 8  
 /'mænɪdʒmənt/  
 manager (sport) 70  
 /'mænɪdʒə/  
 Mandarin (also Cantonese)  
 41 /'mændərɪn/  
 manslaughter 81  
 /'mænsləʊtə/  
 manual 64 /'mænjuəl/  
 manufacture 66  
 /mænʃə'fæktʃə/  
 Many Happy Returns 26  
 map 88 /mæp/  
 march (walk) (n, v) 45  
 /mɑːʃ/  
 marital status 83 /'mærɪtəl  
 steɪtəs/  
 market 88 /'mɑːkɪt/  
 marketing /'mɑːkɪtɪŋ/  
 ~mix 68  
 market leader/research/share  
 68 /'mɑːkɪt/  
 marriage 47 /'mærɪdʒ/  
 marvellous 30 /'mɑːvələs/  
 mass-produced 68  
 /mæsprə'dʒuːst/  
 match 71 /mætʃ/  
 maths (mathematics) 78,  
 100 /mæθs/

- maybe 25 /'meɪbi/  
 mean (adj) 44 /mi:n/  
 mean (v) (intend/plan) 28 /mi:n/  
 mechanic 64 /mɪ'kænik/  
 medicine 79 /'medsən/  
 medium (meat) 59 /'mi:diəm/  
 medium-height 43  
 meetings 63 /'mi:tiŋz/  
 melon 58 /'melən/  
 menu 59 /'menju:/  
 message 76 /'mesɪdʒ/  
 metal 39 /'metəl/  
 Mexican 41 /'meksɪkən/  
 Mexico 41 /'meksɪkəʊ/  
 mice 40 /maɪs/  
 mid twenties/thirties etc. 47  
 middle age 47  
 middle name 46  
 middle of the road 82  
 million 91 /'mɪljən/  
 mind 28 /maɪnd/  
 mind the step / your head 96  
 mining 39 /'maɪnɪŋ/  
 minor (offence) 80 /'maɪnə/  
 minority 91 /maɪ'nɒrəti/  
 minus 38, 91 /'maɪnəs/  
 mirror 51 /'mɪrə/  
 miserable 44 /'mɪzrəbəl/  
 misread 7 /mɪs'ri:d/  
 miss a lesson 13 /mɪs/  
 miss a person 13  
 miss the bus 13, 52, 62  
 misunderstand 7 /mɪsʌndə'stænd/  
 mobile (phone) 76 /'məʊbaɪl/  
 modem 77 /'məʊdem/  
 monarchy 82 /'mɒnəki/  
 money belt 81 /'mʌni belt/  
 monitor 66, 77 /'mɒnɪtə/  
 monkey 40 /'mʌŋki/  
 monthly 74 /'mʌnθli/  
 moon 37 /mu:n/  
 more or less 97  
 moreover 34 /mɔ:ɪə'ʊvə/  
 mortgage 49 /'mɔ:ɡɪdʒ/  
 mosquito 40 /mɒs'ki:təʊ/  
 mother tongue 11 /'mʌðə/  
 mother-in-law 46  
 motor racing 70 /'məʊtə/  
 motorbike 62 /'məʊtəbaɪk/  
 motorway 61 /'məʊtəweɪ/  
 mountain 37 /'maʊntɪn/  
 mountain range 37  
 mouse (computer) ~ mat 77 /maʊs/  
 mouse (animal) 40 /maʊs/  
 moustache 43 /mə'stɑ:f/  
 moving 72 /'mu:vɪŋ/  
 MP 100 /em pi:/  
 MPhil 79 /em fɪl/  
 Mr 100 /mɪstə/  
 Mrs 100 /mɪsɪz/  
 Ms. 100 /məz/  
 multiplication 91 /mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/  
 multiply 91 /'mʌltɪplaɪ/  
 murder (n, v) 10, 81 /'mɜ:də/  
 murderer 81 /'mɜ:dərə/  
 muscular 43 /'mʌskjələ/  
 mushroom 58 /'mʌʃrʊm/  
 music 73 /'mju:zɪk/  
 musical 9, 72 /'mju:zɪkəl/  
 musical instrument 69, 73  
 mussels 58 /'mʌsəlz/  
 narrow 92 /'nærəʊ/  
 natural (resources) 85 /'nætʃərəl/  
 navy 64 /'neɪvi/  
 near 31 /nɪə/  
 nearly 32 /'niəli/  
 necessary 5 /'nesəsəri/  
 neck 42 /nek/  
 necklace 56 /'nekləs/  
 neither 35 /'naɪðə/  
 nephew 46 /'nefju:/  
 net 70 /net/  
 never 32 /'nevə/  
 never mind 18, 23  
 newsagent 57 /'nju:zeɪdʒənt/  
 nice to meet you 26  
 niece 46 /ni:s/  
 night life 60, 88  
 nil 71, 91 /nɪl/  
 nine-to-five job 63  
 no exit/parking/smoking/  
 vacancies 96  
 nod 42 /nɒd/  
 noisy 49, 60 /'nɔɪzi/  
 north-east/west 12  
 north/south pole 37  
 notebook 6 /'nəʊtbʊk/  
 notes (money) 53 /nəʊts/  
 notice (n) 96 /'nəʊtɪs/  
 noticeboard 66 /'nəʊtɪsbɔ:d/  
 nought 91 /nɔ:t/  
 noun 4 /naʊn/  
 novel 73 /'nɒvəl/  
 novelist 73 /'nɒvəlɪst/  
 nurse 64 /nɜ:s/  
 nursery school 78 /'nɜ:səri/  
 occasionally 32 /ə'keɪʒənli/  
 ocean 37 /'əʊʃən/  
 odd 91 /ɒd/  
 of course 24  
 off-hand 18  
 offence 80 /ə'fens/  
 offer 28 /'ɒfə/  
 often 32 /'ɒfən/  
 oh 91 /əʊ/  
 OHT 6 /əʊ eɪf ti:/  
 oil 58 /ɔɪl/  
 old age 47  
 old friend 46  
 on (a day) 90  
 on (the table) 31  
 on business 15  
 on condition that 35  
 on foot 15  
 on holiday 15  
 on one's own 15, 48, 81  
 on purpose 15  
 on strike 15  
 on the ground/first floor 49  
 on the left/right 82  
 on the other hand 34  
 on the phone 15, 76  
 on the radio 15  
 on the sofa 50  
 on time 15  
 on TV 15  
 only child 46  
 OPEC 100 /'əʊ pek/  
 opera 73 /'ɒpərə/  
 operate (on) 64 /'ɒpəreɪt/  
 operator 76 /'ɒpəreɪtə/  
 opposite 4 /'ɒpəzɪt/



optimistic 44 /ɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/  
orange 58 /'ɒrɪndʒ/  
orchestra 73 /'ɔ:kɪstrə/  
order 29, 66, 87 /'ɔ:də/  
ordinary-looking 43  
otherwise 35 /'ʌðəwaɪz/  
out loud 1  
out of 31  
out of order 52, 96  
out of work 15, 65  
outbreak 84 /'aʊtbreɪk/  
oval 93 /'əʊvəl/  
oven 50 /'ʌvən/  
over 31 /'əʊvə/  
overcharge 7 /əʊvə'tʃɑ:ʒ/  
overcoat 56 /'əʊvəkəʊt/  
overdo 7 /əʊvə'du:/  
overhead locker 86  
oversleep 7, 48 /əʊvə'sli:p/  
overtake 61 /əʊvə'teɪk/  
overtime 63 /'əʊvətɑɪm/  
overweight 43 /əʊvə'weɪt/  
owing to 36 /'əʊɪŋ tu/  
own 49 /əʊn/  
ozone layer 85 /'əʊzəʊn leɪə/

pack (a suitcase) 7 /pæk/  
package (v) 66 /'pækɪdʒ/  
packed 30, 88 /pækt/  
packet 94 /'pækɪt/  
pain 54 /peɪn/  
painful 9, 54, 55 /'peɪnfəl/  
painless 9 /'peɪnləs/  
painter 73 /'peɪntə/  
painting 73 /'peɪntɪŋ/  
pair (of) 94 /peə/  
palace 88 /'pælɪs/  
pale 43, 93 /peɪl/  
pants (US) 98 /pænts/  
paperwork 63, 66  
/'peɪpəwɜ:k/  
park (v) 61 /pɑ:k/  
parking lot (US) 98  
parking meter 11  
part-time 12, 65  
partly 25 /'pɑ:tlɪ/  
partner 46 /'pɑ:tnə/  
pass a ball 70 /pɑ:s/  
pass an exam 79  
pass through customs 86  
passenger 62 /'pæsəndʒə/

passport 83 /'pɑ:spɔ:t/  
passport control 86  
past 31 /pɑ:st/  
paste 77 /peɪst/  
path 49 /pɑ:θ/  
pattern 93 /'pætən/  
pavement 61 /'peɪvmənt/  
pay (for) 53 /peɪ/  
pay back 67  
pay by cheque/credit card  
57  
pay interest 67  
pay rise 65  
PC 100 /pi: si:/  
peace 84 /pi:s/  
peace and quiet 89  
peace settlement 84  
peace talks 84  
peaceful 60 /'pi:sfəl/  
peach 58 /pi:tʃ/  
pear 58 /peə/  
peas 58 /pi:z/  
pedestrian 61 /pɪ'destrɪən/  
pedestrian crossing 11, 61  
penalty 71 /'penəltɪ/  
pepper 59 /'pepə/  
peppers 58 /'pepəz/  
percentage 91 /pə'sentɪdʒ/  
perform 72 /pə'fɔ:m/  
performance 72 /pə'fɔ:məns/  
perhaps 25 /pə'hæps/  
permit 99 /'pɜ:mɪt/  
personally 25 /'pɜ:sənəli/  
persuade 29 /pə'sweɪd/  
pessimistic 44 /pesɪ'mɪstɪk/  
pet 40 /pet/  
petrol station 61 /'petrəl/  
PhD 79 /pi: eɪf di:/  
philosophy 79 /fɪ'lɒsəfi/  
phone 100 /fəʊn/  
phone book/box/card/  
number 76  
phone sb. back 76  
photo 100 /'fəʊtəʊ/  
photocopier 6 /'fəʊtəʊkəpiə/  
photocopy 6 /'fəʊtəʊkəpi/  
photography 69 /fə'tɒgrəfi/  
phrasal verb 4  
physical education 78  
/'fɪzɪkəl/  
pianist 73 /'pi:ənɪst/

piano 73 /pi'ænəʊ/  
pick 39 /pɪk/  
pick sth./sb. up (collect) 16,  
99  
pick sth. up (gather) 16  
picnic 89 /'pɪknɪk/  
piece 94 /pi:s/  
pig 40 /pɪg/  
pillow 51 /'pɪləʊ/  
pilot 62, 64 /'paɪlət/  
pinch (steal) 99 /pɪnʃ/  
pineapple 58 /'paɪnæpəl/  
pink 93 /pɪŋk/  
piss 99 /pɪs/  
pitch 70 /pɪtʃ/  
place 88 /pleɪs/  
plain 43 /pleɪn/  
plane 100 /pleɪn/  
plant (n, v) 39 /plɑ:nt/  
plaster 55 /'plɑ:stə/  
platform 62 /'plætfɔ:m/  
play (n) 72, 73  
play a game 71 /pleɪ/  
play a musical instrument  
69  
play cards 48, 69  
player 70 /'pleɪə/  
playroom 50 /'pleɪrʊm/  
playwright 73 /'pleɪraɪt/  
pleasant 44 /'plezənt/  
please do not disturb 96  
please do not feed the  
animals 96  
please queue other side 96  
plenty 60 /'plenti/  
plug 6 /plʌg/  
plug sth. in 6, 75  
plumber 5, 64 /'plʌmə/  
plural noun 4 /'plʊərəl/  
plus 91 /plʌs/  
PM 100 /pi: em/  
pocket 56 /'pɒkɪt/  
poem 73 /'pəʊɪm/  
poet 73 /'pəʊɪt/  
point (at sth.) 45 /pɔɪnt/  
point (decimal) 91 /pɔɪnt/  
police force 64 /pə'li:s/  
police officer 64  
policy 82 /'pɒləsi/  
polish 51 /'pɒlɪʃ/  
polite 3 /pə'laɪt/

political 9 /pə'litɪkəl/  
 political leader/party 82  
 political stability 67  
 politics 78, 79, 82  
     /'pɒlətɪks/  
 pollution 60, 85 /pə'lu:ʃən/  
 pond 2 /pɒnd/  
 pool 70 /pu:l/  
 pop music 73  
 pop star 11  
 popular press 74  
 pork 58 /pɔ:k/  
 porter 87 /'pɔ:tə/  
 portrait 73 /'pɔ:trɪt/  
 Portugal 41 /'pɔ:tʃəgəl/  
 Portuguese 41 /pɔ:tʃə'gi:z/  
 post office 11  
 postgraduate 79  
     /pəʊst'grædʒuət/  
 potato 5, 58 /pə'teɪtəʊ/  
 pour (with rain) 38 /pɔ:/  
 powerful 72 /'paʊəfəl/  
 precious 39 /'preʃəs/  
 prefer 5, 24, 28 /prɪ'fɜ:/  
 prefix 4 /'pri:fɪks/  
 pregnant 47 /'pregnənt/  
 preposition 4 /prepə'zɪʃən/  
 prescription 54  
     /prɪ'skrɪpʃən/  
 press (a button) 45, 95  
 prestige 68 /pres'ti:ʒ/  
 prestigious 68 /pres'tɪdʒəs/  
 pretty 32, 99 /'prɪti/  
 prevent 29, 61 /prɪ'vent/  
 prevent sth. (from) 81  
 pride 45 /praɪd/  
 price 68 /praɪs/  
 primary (school) 78  
     /'praɪməri/  
 Prime Minister 82  
 print 77 /prɪnt/  
 printer 77 /'prɪntə/  
 prison 80 /'prɪzən/  
 product 68 /'prɒdʌkt/  
 profession 64 /prə'feʃən/  
 profit 67 /'prɒfɪt/  
 promise 28 /'prɒmɪs/  
 promote 65 /prə'məʊt/  
 promotion 65, 68  
     /prə'məʊʃən/  
 pronoun 4 /'prəʊnaʊn/

properly 52 /'prɒpəli/  
 property 81 /'prɒpəti/  
 propose 29 /prə'pəʊz/  
 prospects 65 /'prɒspekts/  
 protect (oneself) 81, 89  
     /prə'tekt/  
 protection 85 /prə'tekʃən/  
 proud 45 /praʊd/  
 prove 80 /pru:v/  
 psychology 79 /sar'kɒlədʒi/  
 public expenditure 67  
 public school 78  
 publish 74 /'pʌblɪʃ/  
 pull (n, v) 10 /pʊl/  
 pull sb.'s leg 18  
 pullover 56 /'pʊləʊvə/  
 punch sb. 45 /pʌnʃ/  
 punctual 8, 44, 62  
     /'pʌŋktʃuəl/  
 punctuality 8 /pʌŋktʃu'æləti/  
 punishment 80, 81  
     /'pʌnɪʃmənt/  
 pupil 78 /'pju:pəl/  
 purchase 99 /'pɜ:tʃəs/  
 purple 93 /'pɜ:pəl/  
 purpose 36 /'pɜ:pəs/  
 push (n, v) 10 /pʊʃ/  
 put on the brakes 10  
 put on weight 59  
 put on (clothes) 2, 17, 51,  
     56  
 put one's feet up 89  
 put sb. through (connect)  
     76  
 put sth. back (return) 50  
 put sth. out (extinguish) 16  
 pyjamas 27, 51 /pə'dʒɑ:məz/  
 pyramid 93 /'pɪrəməɪd/  
  
 quality 68 /'kwɒləti/  
 quality press 74  
 quarter 91 /'kwɔ:tə/  
 question (v) 80 /'kwɛstʃən/  
 question mark 4  
 queue (n, v) 10, 62, 83  
     /'kju:/  
 quid 99 /kwɪd/  
 quit 65, 74 /kwɪt/  
 quite 32, 92 /kwɪt/  
 quiz show 75 /kwɪz ʃəʊ/

rabbit 40 /'ræbɪt/  
 racket 70 /'rækɪt/  
 railway station 62 /'reɪlweɪ/  
 rain (n, v) 10 /reɪn/  
 rainforest 37 /'reɪnfɔrɪst/  
 rape 81 /reɪp/  
 rapist 81 /reɪpɪst/  
 rare (meat) 59 /reə/  
 rarely 32 /'reəli/  
 rather 24, 32 /'rɑ:ðə/  
 raw 59 /rɔ:/  
 raw material 67  
 reasonable 53 /'ri:zənəbəl/  
 recently 90 /'ri:səntli/  
 reception 87 /rɪ'sepʃən/  
 recession 67 /rɪ'seʃən/  
 reckon 99 /'rekən/  
 recommend 29 /rekə'mend/  
 recorded highlights 75  
 rectangle 93 /'rektæŋgəl/  
 recycle 85 /ri:'saɪkəl/  
 redo (homework) 7 /ri:'du:/  
 reduce 67, 81 /ri'dju:s/  
 referee 70 /refə'reɪ/  
 refuse 28 /refju:s/  
 registration (form) 83  
     /'redʒɪ'streɪʃən/  
 regularly 32 /'regjələli/  
 relaxed 44 /rɪ'læksɪt/  
 release 84 /rɪ'li:s/  
 reliable 44, 68 /rɪ'laɪəbəl/  
 religious (education) 78  
     /'rɪlɪdʒəs/  
 remember 28 /rɪ'membə/  
 remind 86 /rɪ'maɪnd/  
 renew 83 /rɪ'nju:/  
 rent (v, n) 49, 86 /rent/  
 reopen 7 /ri:'əʊpən/  
 repair 64 /rɪ'peə/  
 repeat 6 /rɪ'pi:t/  
 reply (n, v) 10 /rɪ'plai/  
 reporter 74 /rɪ'pɔ:tə/  
 republic 82 /rɪ'pʌblɪk/  
 republican 82 /rɪ'pʌblɪkən/  
 require 99 /rɪ'kwaɪə/  
 research 79 /rɪ'sɜ:ʃ/  
 reserved 44 /rɪ'zɜ:vd/  
 resign 65 /rɪ'zaɪn/  
 resignation 65 /rezɪg'neɪʃən/  
 resort 89 /rɪ'zɔ:t/  
 resources 85 /rɪ'zɔ:sɪz/

- responsibilities 63  
/rɪspɒnsɪ'bɪlɪtiːz/  
responsible (for) 63, 65  
/rɪ'spɒnsəbəl/  
result (in) 36 /rɪ'zʌlt/  
resume 99 /rɪ'zju:m/  
retailer 66 /rɪ'teɪlə/  
retake (an exam) 7 /rɪ'teɪk/  
retired 47 /rɪ'taɪəd/  
retirement 47, 65  
/rɪ'taɪəmənt/  
reverse charge call 76  
review 72, 74 /rɪ'vjuː/  
revise 1 /rɪ'vaɪz/  
revision 1 /rɪ'vɪʒən/  
ride (a bike) 62 /raɪd/  
right angle 93 /raɪt æŋɡəl/  
right-wing 82 /raɪtwɪŋ/  
ring (boxing) 70 /rɪŋ/  
ring (v, n) 10  
rise (n, v) 67 /raɪz/  
rise slowly/sharply 2  
river 37 /'rɪvə/  
roadworks 61 /'rəʊdwɜːks/  
roast 59 /rəʊst/  
rob 81 /rɒb/  
robber 81 /'rɒbə/  
robbery 81 /'rɒbəri/  
rock climbing 69 /rɒk/  
rock star 11 /rɒk/  
rocks 89 /rɒks/  
romance 47 /rəʊ'mæns/  
root 39 /ruːt/  
rough (sea) 89 /rʌf/  
roughly 97 /'rʌfli/  
round (adj) 93 /raʊnd/  
round (preposition) 31  
round trip (US) 98  
routine 1, 63 /ruː'tiːn/  
row (argument) 47, 74 /raʊ/  
row (line) 72 /rəʊ/  
rub sth. off (the board) 6  
/rʌb/  
rub sth. out 1, 6  
rubber 6 /'rʌbə/  
rugby 70 /'rʌɡbi/  
ruin 52 /'ruɪn/  
run (a shop/company) 13, 63  
run (frequency) 62  
run out (of sth.) 16, 52, 83, 84  
runny nose 54 /'rʌni/  
runway 86 /'rʌnweɪ/  
rushed (to hospital) 55  
/rʌʃt/  
rush-hour 61 /rʌʃaʊə/  
Russia 41 /'rʌʃə/  
Russian 41 /'rʌʃən/  
sack 65 /sæk/  
sadness 45 /'sædnəs/  
safe (n) 81 /seɪf/  
sailor 64 /'seɪlə/  
salad 58 /'sæləd/  
salary 63 /'sæləri/  
sales 68 /seɪlz/  
sales figures/forecast/  
manager/target 68  
sales rep 68, 100  
salmon 58 /'sæmən/  
salt 59 /sɔːlt/  
salty 59 /'sɔːlti/  
same to you 26  
sand 89 /sænd/  
satellite 75 /'sætələɪt/  
satellite dish 75  
saucepan 50 /'sɔːspən/  
Saudi Arabia 41 /saʊdi  
ə'reɪbiə/  
Saudi Arabian 41 /saʊdi  
ə'reɪbiən/  
save (data) 77 /seɪv/  
save (up) 16, 53 /seɪv/  
saxophone 69, 73  
/sæksəfəʊn/  
saxophonist 73  
/sæksə'fəʊnɪst/  
say (the paper / TV says  
that ...) 25 /seɪ/  
say cheese 26  
scales 27 /skeɪlz/  
scar 43 /skaː/  
scarce 39 /skeəs/  
scarf 56 /skɑːf/  
science 78 /saɪəns/  
science fiction 11, 72  
scissors 27 /'sɪzəz/  
score 71 /skɔː/  
screen (computer) 77  
/skriːn/  
screen (cinema) 72 /skriːn/  
sculptor 73 /'skʌlptə/  
sculpture 73 /'skʌlptʃə/  
sea 37 /siː/  
seafood 58 /'siːfuːd/  
seaside 89 /'siːsaɪd/  
season 87 /'siːzən/  
seat 3 /siːt/  
seats (in parliament) 82  
second (n) 90 /'sekənd/  
second(ly) 33 /'sekəndli/  
second-hand 12  
secondary (school) 78  
/'sekəndəri/  
see 95 /siː/  
see (understand / find out)  
20  
see you later/soon 26 /siː/  
seem 28 /siːm/  
seldom 32 /'seldəm/  
self-confident 44  
self-defence 81  
self-portrait 73  
self-study 1  
semester (US) 98 /sɪ'mestə/  
semi-circle 93  
send off (a letter) 16 /send/  
senses 95 /'sensɪz/  
sensible 44 /'sensɪbəl/  
sensitive 44 /'sensɪtɪv/  
sentence (prison) 80  
/'sentəns/  
series 75 /'siəriːz/  
serious (illness) 13 /'siəriəs/  
set 71 /set/  
set the alarm 51  
shade 93 /ʃeɪd/  
shake 42 /ʃeɪk/  
shake hands 42  
shallow 92 /'ʃæləʊ/  
shape 93 /ʃeɪp/  
shark 40 /ʃɑːk/  
sharp(ly) 67 /'ʃɑːpli/  
sheet (of paper) 94 /ʃiːt/  
shelling 84 /'ʃelɪŋ/  
shiftwork 63 /'ʃɪftwɜːk/  
shirt 56 /ʃɜːt/  
shoot 55 /ʃuːt/  
shop assistant 57  
shop window 57  
shoplift 81 /'ʃɒplɪft/

shoplifter 81 /'ʃɒplɪftə/	slim 43 /slɪm/	spell (e.g. of hot weather) 38
shoplifting 81	sling 55 /slɪŋ/	spell 8
shopping centre 57, 60	slopes 70 /sləʊps/	spelling 8 /'spelɪŋ/
shopping list 57	slow (boring) 72 /sləʊ/	spend (money) on 14, 53, 88
short 43, 92 /ʃɔ:t/	slow(ly) 67	spicy 59 /'spɑ:si/
short story 73	small talk 18	spider 40 /'spaɪdə/
short-cut 18	smell (n, v) 10, 95 /smel/	spikes 70 /spaɪks/
short-sleeved 12	smells + adj; smells like + noun 95	spill 52 /spɪl/
shorts 27 /ʃɔ:ts/	smile (n, v) 2, 10, 42 /smaɪl/	split (up) 47 /splɪt/
shoulders 42 /'ʃəʊldəz/	smoke 85 /sməʊk/	spray 81, 85 /spreɪ/
shout (at sb. / to sb.) 14, 45 /ʃaʊt/	snack 48 /snæk/	spreadsheet 77 /'spredʃi:t/
show 29 /ʃəʊ/	snail 40 /sneɪl/	square 93 /skweə/
show sb. (a)round 66 /ʃəʊ/	snake 40 /sneɪk/	squash 70 /skwɒʃ/
shower (rain) 38 /ʃəʊə/	sneakers (US) 98 /'sni:kəz/	St. 100 /stri:t/ /seɪnt/
shower (wash) 51 /ʃəʊə/	sneeze 54 /sni:z/	stab 55 /stæb/
showery 38 /'ʃəʊəri/	so (that) 36	stability 67 /stə'bɪləti/
shrimps 58 /frɪmps/	soap 51 /səʊp/	stadium 70 /'steɪdɪəm/
shy 44 /ʃaɪ/	soap opera 75	stage 72 /steɪdʒ/
sick pay 63	soccer (US) 70 /'sɒkə/	stain 52 /steɪn/
sidewalk (US) 98 /'saɪdwɔ:k/	socialism 82 /'səʊʃəlɪzəm/	stairs 27, 49 /steəz/
sight 95 /saɪt/	socialist 82 /'səʊʃəlɪst/	stalls 72 /stɔ:lz/
sightseeing 88 /'saɪtsi:ŋ/	sociology 79 /səʊʃi'ɒlədʒi/	stamp (v) 83 /stæmp/
sightseeing tour 88	socket 6 /'sɒkɪt/	stamps 69 /stæmps/
sign 83 /saɪn/	sofa 50 /'səʊfə/	stand up 16 /stænd/
signature 83 /'sɪgnətʃə/	soft drink/voice 13	standard 66 /'stændəd/
silence: exam in progress 96	software 77 /'sɒftweə/	standard of living 53
silent(ly) 1 /'saɪləntli/	soil 39 /sɔɪl/	stare (n, v) 45 /steə/
silver 39 /'sɪlvə/	sold out 96	star (film) 72 /stɑ:/
similar (to) 8, 14, 35 /'sɪmɪlə/	soldier 64 /'səʊldɪə/	star (in the sky) 37 /stɑ:/
similarity 8 /sɪmɪ'lærəti/	solo artist 73	start a car 13 /stɑ:t/
since 36 /sɪns/	something wrong (with) 14	start a family 13
since 90 /sɪns/	sometimes 32 /'sʌmtaɪmz/	starter 59 /'stɑ:tə/
singer 73 /'sɪŋə/	songwriter 73 /'sɒŋraɪtə/	starving 30 /'stɑ:vɪŋ/
single room 87	sore throat 54 /sɔ:r θrəʊt/	state system 78 /steɪt/
single-parent family 46	sorry 26 /'sɒri/	station (TV) 75 /'steɪʃən/
sink 50 /sɪŋk/	sorry to keep you waiting 23	stationery 57 /'steɪʃənəri/
sister-in-law 11, 46	sort of 97	statue 88 /'stæʃu:/
sit down 16 /sɪt/	sort sth. out 17	status 68 /'steɪtəs/
sitting room 11	sound (n, v) 95 /saʊnd/	stay (at school) 78 /steɪ/
size 56 /saɪz/	sounds + adj; sounds like + noun 95	stay in 17, 48 /steɪ/
skiing 70 /'ski:ŋ/	south-east/west 12	steady/steadily 67 /'stedɪ/ /'stedɪli/
skilled 64 /skɪld/	souvenir 88 /su:vənɪə/	steal 81 /sti:l/
skinny 43 /'skɪni/	Spain 41 /speɪn/	steel 39 /sti:l/
skirt 56 /skɜ:t/	Spanish 41 /'spænɪʃ/	steep 89 /sti:p/
slang 99 /slæŋ/	spare room 50	stepfather/mother 46
slaughter 39 /'slɔ:tə/	speak up 97	steps 49 /steps/
sleeves 56 /sli:vz/	spectators 70 /spek'teɪtəz/	sterling 53 /'stɜ:lɪŋ/
slice 94 /slaɪs/	speed limit 61	sticks 70 /stɪks/
slightly 32 /'slaɪtli/		



still 34 /stɪl/  
 stocks and shares 64  
 stomach 54 /'stʌmək/  
 stomach-ache 54  
     /'stʌməkeɪk/  
 stool 50 /stu:l/  
 store 66 /stɔ:/  
 straight 43 /streɪt/  
 strawberry 58 /'strɔ:bəri/  
 stress 4 /stres/  
 stressful 60 /'stresfʊl/  
 striped 93 /straɪpt/  
 stroll (n, v) 45, 89 /strɔ:l/  
 strong 44 /strɒŋ/  
 strong accent/coffee 13  
 strong economy 67  
 study (n) 50 /'stʌdi/  
 stuff 97 /stʌf/  
 stupid 8 /'stju:pɪd/  
 stupidity 8 /stju:'pɪdəti/  
 subject 78 /'sʌbdʒɪkt/  
 subtitles 72 /'sʌbtʌɪtəlz/  
 subtraction 91 /səb'trækʃən/  
 suburbs 60 /'sʌbɜ:bz/  
 subway (US) 98 /'sʌbweɪ/  
 suffer (from) 14 /'sʌfə/  
 suffix 4 /'sʌfɪks/  
 suggest 29 /sə'dʒest/  
 suggestion 24 /sə'dʒestʃən/  
 suit (v) 3 /su:t/ (n) 56  
 suitable 9 /'su:təbəl/  
 sunbathe 89 /'sʌnbeɪð/  
 sunblock 89 /'sʌnbloʊk/  
 sunburn 89 /'sʌnbɜ:n/  
 sunglasses 11, 27  
     /'sʌŋɡlə:sɪz/  
 sunny 38 /'sʌni/  
 suntan lotion 89 /'sʌntæn  
     ləʊʃən/  
 supermarket 57  
     /'su:pəməʊkɪt/  
 supervisor 66 /'su:pəvaɪzə/  
 supplies 84 /sə'plaɪz/  
 surgeon 64 /'sɜ:dʒən/  
 surname 46 /'sɜ:neɪm/  
 surprised (at/by) 14, 30  
     /sə'praɪzd/  
 surprising 30 /sə'praɪzɪŋ/  
 swap (places) 6 /swɒp/  
 Sweden 41 /'swɪ:dən/  
 Swedish 41 /'swɪ:dɪʃ/

sweet 59 /swi:t/  
 swimming 70 /'swɪmɪŋ/  
     ~ costume 70  
 Swiss 41 /swɪs/  
 switch sth. on/off/over 75  
     /swɪtʃ/  
 Switzerland 41 /'swɪtzələnd/  
 swollen 55 /'swɒlənd/  
 syllable 4 /'sɪləbəl/  
 symptom 54 /'sɪmptəm/  
 synonym 4 /'sɪnənɪm/  
  
 T-shirt 11  
 table tennis 11, 70 /'teɪbl/  
 tabloid 74 /'tæbloɪd/  
 take 22, 90 /teɪk/  
 take a bus/train/taxi 19  
 take a decision 2, 19  
 take a photograph 2, 19  
 take a shower 2, 19  
 take an exam 19  
 take control (of) 84  
 take it in turns 18  
 take notes 79  
 take off (leave the ground)  
     16, 17, 86  
 take off (remove) 16, 56  
 take over 65  
 take photographs 88  
 take place 82  
 take the first/second turning  
     on the left/right 61  
 take time 2  
 take up (a hobby) 69  
 take-off (n) 86 /'teɪkɒf/  
 talks 74 /tɔ:ks/  
 tall 43, 92 /tɔ:l/  
 tan 89 /tæn/  
 tartan 93 /'tɑ:tən/  
 taste (n, v) 10, 95 /teɪst/  
 tastes + adj; tastes like +  
     noun 95  
 tasty 59 /'teɪsti/  
 tax cut 67  
 taxi (v) 86 /'tæksi/  
 taxi rank 62  
 team 70 /ti:m/  
 teenager 47 /'ti:neɪdʒə/  
 telephone directory 76  
     /'telɪfəʊn dɪ'rektəri/  
 tell 29 /tel/

tell a joke/story 13  
 tell the truth 13  
 telly 100 /'teli/  
 temperature 38 /'temprəʃə/  
 temple 88 /'tempəl/  
 ten-pound note 53  
 ten-year-old (boy) 12  
 tender 59 /'tendə/  
 tennis 70 /'tenɪs/  
 tense 44 /tens/  
 tent 89 /tent/  
 term 78 /tɜ:m/  
 terminal building 86  
     /'tɜ:mɪnəl bɪldɪŋ/  
 terrible (pain) 54 /'terəbəl/  
 terribly (sorry) 13 /terɪbli/  
 terrific 30, 99 /tə'rɪfɪk/  
 terrified/terrifying 30  
     /terɪfaɪd/ /terɪfaɪɪŋ/  
 territory 84 /'terɪtəri/  
 terrorism 84 /'terərɪzəm/  
 terrorist 84 /'terərɪst/  
 text book 6  
 Thai 41 /taɪ/  
 Thailand 41 /'taɪlənd/  
 thank you (very much) 23  
 thanks 23 /θæŋks/  
 that's a good idea 24  
 that's to say (i.e.) 100  
 that's true 25  
 that's very kind of you 23  
 theft 81 /θeft/  
 therefore 36 /'ðeəfɔ:/  
 thick (stupid) 44, 99 /θɪk/  
 thick 92 /θɪk/  
 thief 81 /θi:f/  
 thin 43, 92 /θɪn/  
 thing(s) 97  
 third 91 /θɜ:d/  
 though 34 /ðəʊ/  
 thoughtful 9 /'θɔ:tfʊl/  
 thoughtless 9 /'θɔ:tləs/  
 thousand 91 /'θaʊzənd/  
 three-quarters 91  
     /θri:'kwɔ:təz/  
 thriller 72 /'θrɪlə/  
 through 5, 31 /θru:/  
 throughout 90 /θru:'aʊt/  
 throw 70 /θrəʊ/  
 throw away 85





volcano 37 /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/	what size do you take? 92
volleyball 70 /'vɒlibɔ:l/	what do you do for a
vomit 54 /'vɒmɪt/	living? 63
vote (for) 82 /vəʊt/	what's on? 75
	what's the difference
waist 42 /weɪst/	between X and Y? 6
wait (for) 14 /weɪt/	what's the height/width of
waiting room 11	...? 92
wake up 16, 17, 48	what's up? 18, 99
want 28, 29 /wɒnt/	what's more 34
war /wɔ:/ ~ zone 84	when 33 /wen/
war film 72	whereas 34 /weə'reɪz/
wardrobe 51 /'wɔ:drəʊb/	while 33 /waɪl/
warehouse 66 /'weəhaʊs/	whisper (n, v) 45 /'hwɪspə/
warn 29 /wɔ:n/	who's calling? 76
warning 96 /'wɔ:nɪŋ/	why don't we ...? 24
wash 48 /wɒʃ/	wide 92 /waɪd/
washable 9 /wɒʃəbəl/	wide range 60
washbasin 51 /'wɒʃbeɪsən/	widow 46 /'wɪdəʊ/
washing machine 11, 50	widower 46 /'wɪdəʊə/
washing-up 48	width 92 /wɪθ/
waste 53, 85 /weɪst/	win 71 /wɪn/
wastepaper basket 66	wind 38 /wɪnd/
watch 95 /wɒʃ/	window shopping 57
watch out 26	windy 38 /'wɪndi/
water (v) 39 /'wɔ:tə/	wonderful 30 /'wʌndəfəl/
wave 45 /weɪv/	wood 60 /wʊd/
waves 89 /weɪvz/	word processing 77
wavy 43 /'weɪvi/	word processor 77
weak 8, 44 /wi:k/	work (function) 87 /wɜ:k/
weakness 8 /'wi:knəs/	work 63
weapon 55, 81 /'wepən/	work out (calculate) 91
weather 27 /'weðə/	work overtime 63
weather forecast 74	working hours 63
weekly 74 /'wi:kli/	worry (about) 14 /'wʌri/
weigh 86 /weɪ/	worth (+ -ing) 53, 88 /wɜ:θ/
well done 26 /wi:l/	would you like to ...? 24
well-directed/known/made/	wound 55, 84 /wu:nd/
off/written 12	wrist 2, 42 /rɪst/
well-done (meat) 59	write (sth. down) 6 /raɪt/
western 72 /'westən/	writer 73 /'raɪtə/
whale 40 /weɪl/	writing paper 11
what about ...? 24	wrong 5, 14, 76 /rɒŋ/
what do you do? 63	wrong number 76
what do you think of ...?	
25	yacht 89 /jɒt/
what does he/she look like?	yawn 42 /jɔ:n/
43	
what does X mean? 6	zebra 40 /'zebrə/
what shall we do? 24	zero 91 /'zɪərəʊ/
what size are you?	zoo 40 /zəʊ/

## Acknowledgements

I owe a great debt to Gillian Lazar for the extremely meticulous and valuable comments she has made on every single unit in the book, and also for her continued support and encouragement. Others have reported on parts of the manuscript, and for their valuable and supportive feedback I would also like to thank: Phillip N. Hewitt, Mike McCarthy, Geraldine Mark, Karl E. Schuhmacher, Roy Sprenger, Liz Walter.

Much of the material has been piloted in different parts of the world. I would like to thank Mark Appleby (Barcelona, Spain), Helen Barnes (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Frank Carney (British Council, Pozan, Poland), Cliff Parry (British Council, Athens, Greece), Chris Powell (International House, Pisa, Italy), Sean Power (ELCRA Bell S.A., Geneva, Switzerland), Pat Rich (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Karen Williams (British Council, Barcelona, Spain). Sean Power and Mark Appleby have not only given me very useful feedback but also valuable suggestions for improving the material.

Geraldine Mark has not only commented on the material, she has also edited it, and with remarkable incisiveness, efficiency, and constant good humour. My thanks to her.

At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank Jeanne McCarten for the inspiration behind this project; Nóirín Burke for all her work in organising reports and piloting; and Isabella Wigan for her work in collating the final stages of the project.

On the production side, I would like to thank Randell Harris and Nick Newton for their design, Peter Byatt for his illustrations, and the rest of the team at Cambridge University Press.

Finally my thanks, as always, to Ruth Gairns for her support, advice and encouragement.